

# FORD **MONDEO** Owner's Manual



The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2014

All rights reserved.

Part Number: CG3633en 10/2014 20141010180034

# Table of Contents

---

## Introduction

About This Manual.....	7
Symbols Glossary.....	7
Data Recording.....	9
Replacement Parts Recommendation.....	10
Mobile Communications Equipment.....	10

## At a Glance

Front Exterior Overview.....	11
Rear Exterior Overview.....	12
Vehicle Interior Overview.....	13
Instrument Panel Overview - LHD.....	14
Instrument Panel Overview - RHD.....	15

## Child Safety

Installing Child Seats.....	17
Child Seat Positioning.....	20
Child Safety Locks - Vehicles With: Remote Child Proof Locks.....	24
Child Safety Locks - Vehicles With: Mechanical Child Proof Locks.....	24

## Safety Belts

Fastening the Safety Belts.....	25
Safety Belt Height Adjustment.....	26
Safety Belt Minder.....	26

## Supplementary Restraints System

Principle of Operation.....	27
Driver Airbag.....	27
Passenger Airbag.....	28
Side Airbags.....	29
Driver Knee Airbag.....	29
Side Curtain Airbags.....	29
Inflatable Safety Belts.....	30

## Keys and Remote Controls

General Information on Radio Frequencies.....	32
Remote Control.....	32
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control.....	37

## MyKey™

Principle of Operation.....	38
Creating a MyKey.....	38
Clearing All MyKeys.....	39
Checking MyKey System Status.....	41
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems.....	42
MyKey Troubleshooting.....	42

## Locks

Locking and Unlocking.....	44
Manual Liftgate.....	46
Power Liftgate.....	46
Keyless Entry.....	48

## Security

Passive Anti-Theft System.....	51
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Interior Sensor.....	51
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Integral Battery.....	53

## Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Manual Adjustable Steering Column.....	56
Adjusting the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Power Adjustable Steering Column.....	56
Audio Control.....	57
Voice Control.....	58
Cruise Control.....	58
Information Display Control.....	58
Heated Steering Wheel.....	59

# Table of Contents

---

## Wipers and Washers

Windshield Wipers.....	60
Autowipers.....	60
Windshield Washers.....	61
Rear Window Wiper and Washers.....	62

## Lighting

General Information.....	63
Lighting Control.....	63
Autolamps.....	64
Instrument Lighting Dimmer.....	65
Headlamp Exit Delay.....	65
Daytime Running Lamps.....	65
Automatic High Beam Control.....	65
Front Fog Lamps.....	67
Rear Fog Lamps.....	67
Headlamp Leveling.....	67
Adaptive Headlamps.....	68
Cornering Lamps.....	69
Direction Indicators.....	69
Interior Lamps.....	70
Ambient Lighting.....	71

## Windows and Mirrors

Power Windows.....	72
Global Opening and Closing.....	73
Exterior Mirrors.....	73
Interior Mirror.....	75
Sun Visors.....	76
Moonroof.....	76

## Instrument Cluster

Gauges.....	78
Warning Lamps and Indicators.....	81
Audible Warnings and Indicators.....	85

## Information Displays

General Information.....	86
Information Messages.....	96

## Climate Control

Principle of Operation.....	111
Air Vents.....	111
Manual Climate Control.....	112
Automatic Climate Control - Vehicles With: Heated Windshield.....	114
Automatic Climate Control - Vehicles Without: Heated Windshield.....	116
Automatic Climate Control - Vehicles With: Sony Audio System.....	117
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate.....	119
Heated Windows and Mirrors.....	121
Heated Windshield.....	122
Auxiliary Heater.....	122

## Seats

Sitting in the Correct Position.....	126
Head Restraints.....	126
Manual Seats.....	128
Power Seats - Vehicles Without: Multi-Contour Seats.....	128
Power Seats - Vehicles With: Multi-Contour Seats.....	129
Memory Function.....	131
Heated Seats.....	133
Climate Controlled Seats.....	133
Rear Seat Armrest.....	134

## Auxiliary Power Points

Auxiliary Power Points.....	135
Cigar Lighter.....	136

## Storage Compartments

Cup Holders.....	137
Center Console.....	137
Overhead Console.....	137
Ashtray.....	137



# Table of Contents

## Starting and Stopping the Engine

General Information.....	138
Ignition Switch.....	138
Keyless Starting.....	138
Steering Wheel Lock - Vehicles Without: Keyless Entry and Push Button Start.....	139
Steering Wheel Lock - Vehicles With: Keyless Entry and Push Button Start.....	139
Starting a Gasoline Engine.....	140
Starting a Diesel Engine.....	143
Diesel Particulate Filter.....	143
Switching Off the Engine.....	144
Engine Block Heater.....	144

## Unique Driving Characteristics

Auto-Start-Stop.....	146
----------------------	-----

## Fuel and Refueling

Safety Precautions.....	148
Fuel Quality - Gasoline.....	149
Fuel Quality - Diesel.....	149
Fuel Filler Funnel Location.....	150
Running Out of Fuel.....	150
Catalytic Converter.....	152
Refueling.....	152
Fuel Consumption.....	154

## Transmission

Manual Transmission.....	155
Automatic Transmission.....	155

## Brakes

General Information.....	160
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....	160
Electric Parking Brake.....	160

Hill Start Assist.....	163
------------------------	-----

## Traction Control

Principle of Operation.....	165
Using Traction Control.....	165

## Stability Control

Principle of Operation.....	166
Using Stability Control.....	166

## Parking Aids

Principle of Operation.....	167
Rear Parking Aid.....	167
Front Parking Aid.....	168
Side Sensing System.....	170
Active Park Assist.....	172
Rear View Camera.....	177

## Cruise Control

Principle of Operation.....	181
Using Cruise Control.....	181
Using Adaptive Cruise Control.....	182

## Driving Aids

Speed Limiter.....	189
Driver Alert.....	189
Lane Keeping System.....	191
Blind Spot Information System.....	194
Traffic Sign Recognition.....	198
Active City Stop.....	200
Collision Warning System.....	201
Drive Control.....	205

## Load Carrying

General Information.....	207
Luggage Anchor Points.....	207
Rear Under Floor Storage.....	208
Cargo Nets.....	208
Luggage Covers.....	209

# Table of Contents

Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....	210
Load Retaining Fixtures.....	211
Dog Guard.....	212

## Towing

Towing a Trailer.....	215
Trailer Sway Control.....	216
Tow Ball.....	216
Towing Points.....	217
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - Manual Transmission.....	219
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - Automatic Transmission.....	219

## Driving Hints

Breaking-In.....	221
Reduced Engine Performance.....	221
Economical Driving.....	221
Cold Weather Precautions.....	222
Driving Through Water.....	222
Floor Mats.....	222

## Roadside Emergencies

Hazard Warning Flashers.....	224
First Aid Kit.....	224
Warning Triangle.....	224
Fuel Shutoff.....	224
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	225
Post-Crash Alert System.....	226
Spinout Detection.....	226

## Fuses

Fuse Specification Chart.....	227
Changing a Fuse.....	236

## Maintenance

General Information.....	237
Opening and Closing the Hood.....	237
Under Hood Overview - 1.0L EcoBoost™.....	239

Under Hood Overview - 1.5L EcoBoost™.....	240
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	241
Under Hood Overview - 2.5L.....	242
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel/1.6L Diesel.....	243
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L Diesel.....	244
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.0L EcoBoost™.....	245
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.5L EcoBoost™.....	245
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	245
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.5L.....	245
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel.....	246
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.6L Diesel.....	246
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L Diesel.....	246
Engine Oil Check.....	246
Engine Coolant Check.....	247
Automatic Transmission Fluid Check.....	248
Brake and Clutch Fluid Check.....	248
Washer Fluid Check.....	248
Changing the 12V Battery.....	249
Checking the Wiper Blades.....	249
Changing the Wiper Blades.....	249
Removing a Headlamp.....	250
Changing a Bulb.....	252
Bulb Specification Chart.....	255

## Vehicle Care

Cleaning the Exterior.....	257
Cleaning the Windows and Wiper Blades.....	257
Cleaning the Interior.....	258
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	258
Cleaning the Alloy Wheels.....	258

# Table of Contents

## Wheels and Tires

General Information.....	260
Temporary Mobility Kit.....	260
Tire Care.....	263
Using Winter Tires.....	264
Using Snow Chains.....	264
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	264
Changing a Road Wheel.....	268
Tire Pressures.....	273
Lug Nuts.....	276

## Capacities and Specifications

Vehicle Dimensions.....	277
Towbar Dimensions.....	278
Vehicle Identification Plate.....	280
Vehicle Identification Number.....	281
Capacities and Specifications - 1.0L EcoBoost™.....	281
Capacities and Specifications - 1.5L EcoBoost™.....	283
Capacities and Specifications - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	284
Capacities and Specifications - 2.5L.....	285
Capacities and Specifications - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel.....	287
Capacities and Specifications - 1.6L Diesel.....	288
Capacities and Specifications - 2.0L Diesel.....	289
Fuel Consumption Figures.....	291

## Audio System

General Information.....	292
Audio Unit.....	293
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/CD/SYNC.....	296
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: Sony AM/FM/CD.....	297
Digital Radio.....	301
Audio Input Jack.....	303

USB Port.....	304
Media Hub.....	304

## SYNC™

General Information.....	305
Using Voice Recognition.....	306
Using SYNC™ With Your Phone.....	309
SYNC™ Applications and Services.....	320
Using SYNC™ With Your Media Player.....	327
SYNC™ Troubleshooting.....	333

## SYNC™ 2

General Information.....	343
Settings.....	352
Entertainment.....	366
Phone.....	375
Information.....	383
Climate.....	388
Navigation.....	390
SYNC™ Troubleshooting.....	400

## Appendices

Electromagnetic Compatibility.....	408
End User License Agreement.....	409



# Introduction

## ABOUT THIS MANUAL

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this manual. The more that you know about it, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.

### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

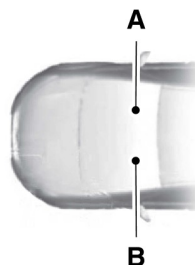
**Note:** This manual describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options not fitted to the vehicle you have purchased.

**Note:** Some of the illustrations in this manual may show features as used in different models, so may appear different to you on your vehicle.

**Note:** Always use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.

**Note:** Pass on this manual when selling your vehicle. It is an integral part of your vehicle.

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



E154903

- A Right-hand side.  
B Left-hand side.

## SYMBOLS GLOSSARY

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.



Safety alert



See Owner's Manual



Air conditioning system



Anti-lock braking system



Avoid smoking, flames or sparks



Battery



Battery acid



Brake fluid - non petroleum based

# Introduction



Brake system



Cabin air filter



Check fuel cap



Child safety door lock or unlock



Child seat lower anchor



Child seat tether anchor



Cruise control



Do not open when hot



Engine air filter



Engine coolant



Engine coolant temperature



Engine oil



Explosive gas



Fan warning



Fasten safety belt



Front airbag



Front fog lamps



Fuel pump reset



Fuse compartment



Hazard warning flashers



Heated rear window



Heated windshield



Interior luggage compartment release



Jack



Keep out of reach of children



Lighting control



Low tire pressure warning



Maintain correct fluid level



Note operating instructions



Panic alarm

# Introduction



Parking aid



Parking brake



Power steering fluid



Power windows front/rear



Power window lockout



Service engine soon



Side airbag



Shield the eyes



Stability control



Windshield wash and wipe

## DATA RECORDING

A large number of electronic components of your vehicle contain data storage modules temporarily or permanently storing technical data about the condition of the vehicle, events and errors.

In general, this technical information documents the condition of parts, modules, systems or the environment:

- Operating conditions of system components (e.g. filling levels).
- Status messages of the vehicle and its individual components (e.g. number of wheel revolutions/rotational speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration).
- Malfunction and defects in important system components (e.g. lighting and brake system).
- Vehicle reactions in particular driving situations (e.g. inflation of an airbag, activation of the stability regulation system).
- Environmental conditions (e.g. temperature).

These data are exclusively technical and help identification and correction of errors as well as optimisation of vehicle functions. Motion profiles indicating travelled routes cannot be created with these data.

If services are used (e.g. repair works, service processes, warranty cases, quality assurance), employees of the service network (including manufacturers) are able to read out this technical information from the event and error data storage modules using special diagnostic devices. If required, you will receive further information. After an error has been corrected, these data are deleted from the error storage module or they are constantly overwritten.

When using the vehicle, situations may occur in which these technical data related to other information (accident report, damages on the vehicle, witness statements etc.) may be associated with a specific person - possibly, with the assistance of an expert.



# Introduction

---

Additional functions contractually agreed upon with the client (e.g. vehicle location in emergency cases) allow the transmission of particular vehicle data from the vehicle.

## REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

Your vehicle has been built to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

### Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual. Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

### Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents do happen. Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

## Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty. Damage caused to your vehicle as a result of the failure of non-Ford parts may not be covered by the Ford Warranty. For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

## MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

### WARNING

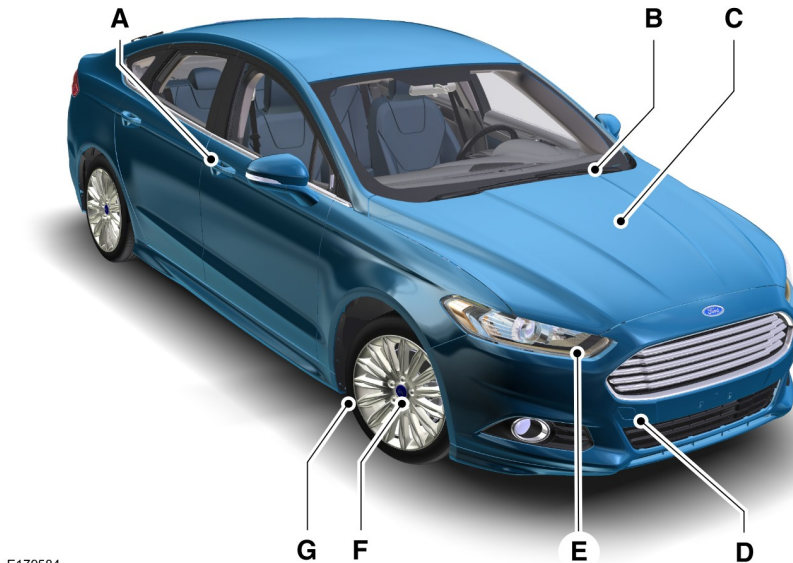


Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

---

# At a Glance

## FRONT EXTERIOR OVERVIEW

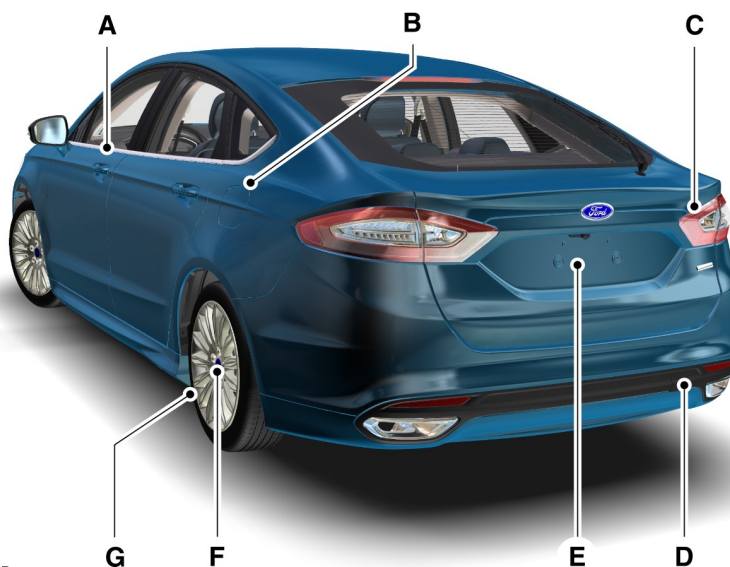


E179584

- A See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 44).
- B See **Changing the Wiper Blades** (page 249).
- C See **Maintenance** (page 237).
- D See **Towing Points** (page 217).
- E See **Changing a Bulb** (page 252).
- F See **Lug Nuts** (page 276).
- G See **Wheels and Tires** (page 260).

# At a Glance

## REAR EXTERIOR OVERVIEW



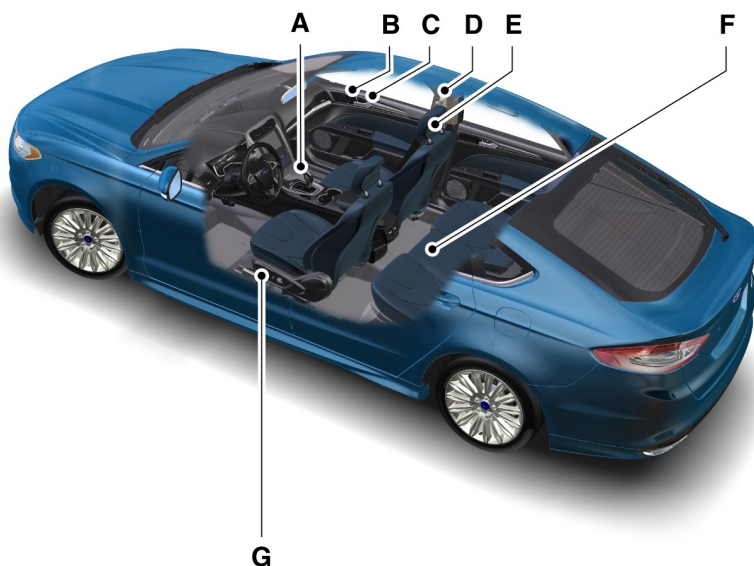
E179587

- A. See **Locks** (page 44).
- B. See **Refueling** (page 152).
- C. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 252).
- D. See **Towing Points** (page 217).

- E. See **Changing a Road Wheel** (page 268). See **Temporary Mobility Kit** (page 260).
- F. See **Lug Nuts** (page 276).
- G. See **Wheels and Tires** (page 260).

# At a Glance

## VEHICLE INTERIOR OVERVIEW

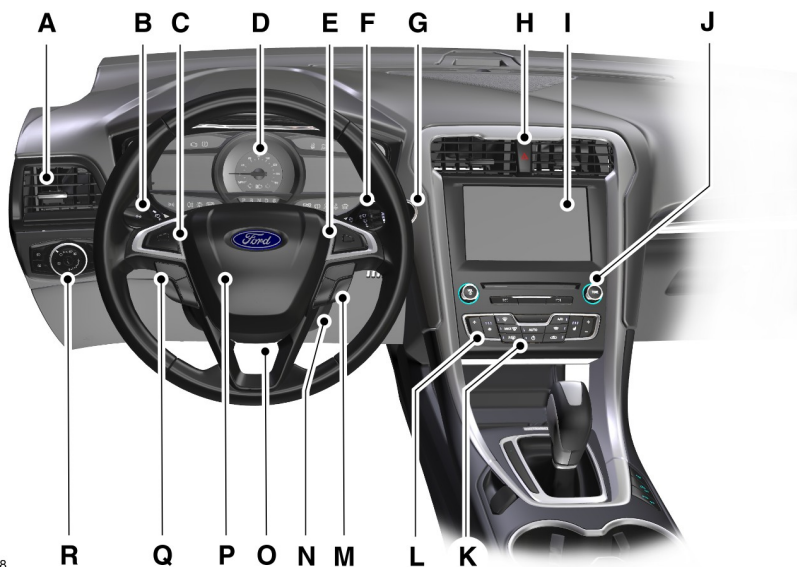


E179590

- A See **Automatic Transmission** (page 155).
- B See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 44).
- C See **Power Windows** (page 72).
- D See **Fastening the Safety Belts** (page 25).
- E See **Head Restraints** (page 126).
- F See **Rear Seat Armrest** (page 134).
- G See **Power Seats** (page 128).

# At a Glance

## INSTRUMENT PANEL OVERVIEW - LHD



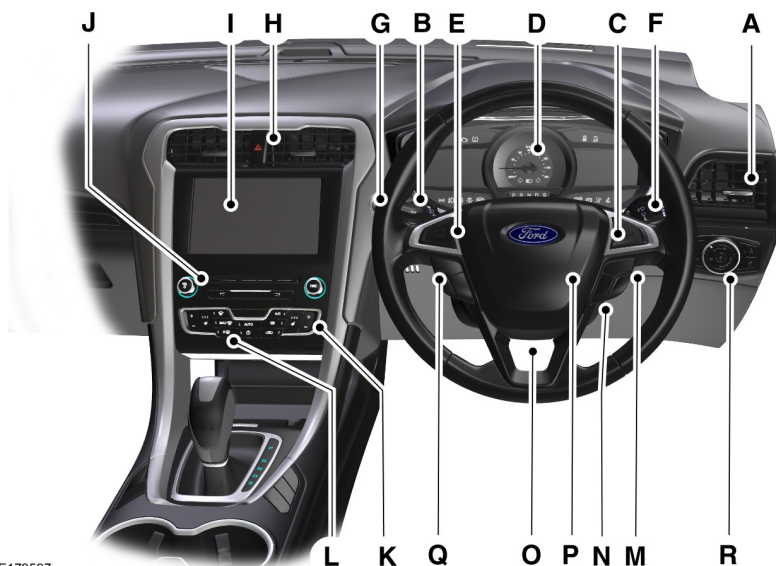
E179598

- A See **Air Vents** (page 111).
- B See **Direction Indicators** (page 69).
- C See **Information Display Control** (page 58).
- D See **Instrument Cluster** (page 78).
- E See **Information Display Control** (page 58).
- F See **Wipers and Washers** (page 60).
- G See **Keyless Starting** (page 138).
- H See **Hazard Warning Flashers** (page 224).
- I Information and entertainment display
- J See **Audio System** (page 292).
- K See **Climate Control** (page 111).
- L See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 121).
- M See **Audio Control** (page 57). See **Voice Control** (page 58).

## At a Glance

- N See **Ignition Switch** (page 138).
- O See **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** (page 56).
- P Horn
- Q See **Cruise Control** (page 181).
- R See **Lighting** (page 63).

## INSTRUMENT PANEL OVERVIEW - RHD



E179597

- A See **Air Vents** (page 111).
- B See **Direction Indicators** (page 69).
- C See **Information Display Control** (page 58).
- D See **Instrument Cluster** (page 78).
- E See **Information Display Control** (page 58).
- F See **Wipers and Washers** (page 60).
- G See **Keyless Starting** (page 138).

## At a Glance

---

- H See **Hazard Warning Flashers** (page 224).
- I Information and entertainment display
- J See **Audio System** (page 292).
- K See **Climate Control** (page 111).
- L See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 121).
- M See **Audio Control** (page 57). See **Voice Control** (page 58).
- N See **Ignition Switch** (page 138).
- O See **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** (page 56).
- P Horn
- Q See **Cruise Control** (page 181).
- R See **Lighting** (page 63).



# Child Safety

## INSTALLING CHILD SEATS





E161855





E68916

### WARNINGS


 Use an approved child seat to secure children less than 59 in (150 cm) tall in the rear seat.


 **Extreme Hazard!** Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur. You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child seat on the front seat. See **Passenger Airbag** (page 28).


 You must switch the passenger airbag on following the removal of the child seat. See **Passenger Airbag** (page 28).


 Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are installing a child seat.

### WARNINGS

 Do not modify child seats in any way.

 Do not hold a child on your lap when the vehicle is moving.

 Do not leave unattended children in your vehicle.

 If your vehicle has been involved in an accident, have the child seats checked by an authorized dealer.

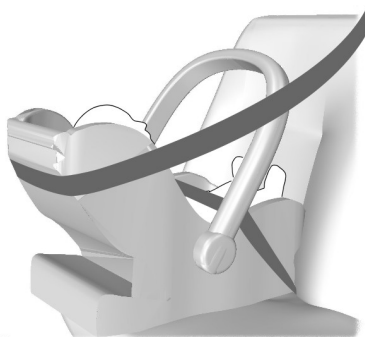
**Note:** *Mandatory use of child seats varies from country to country.*

Only child seats certified to ECE-R129 or ECE-R44.03 (or later) have been tested and approved for use in your vehicle. A choice of these are available from an authorized dealer.

## Child Seats for Different Mass Groups

Use the correct child seat as follows:

### Baby Safety Seat



E68918

Secure children that weigh less than 29 lb (13 kg) in a rearward facing baby safety seat (Group 0+) on the rear seat.

# Child Safety

## Child Safety Seat



E68920

Secure children that weigh between 29 lb (13 kg) and 40 lb (18 kg) in a child safety seat (Group 1) on the rear seat.

## Booster Seats

### WARNINGS



Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with only the lap strap of the safety belt.



Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with a safety belt that is slack or twisted.



Do not put the safety belt under your child's arm or behind its back.



Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height.



Make sure that your children sit in an upright position.



When using a child seat on a rear seat, the child seat must rest tightly against the vehicle seat. It must not touch the head restraint. If necessary remove the head restraint. See **Head Restraints** (page 126).

### WARNINGS



You must reinstall the head restraint following the removal of the child seat. See **Head Restraints** (page 126).

**Note:** When using a child seat on a rear seat, adjust the front seat in a position to prevent contact with the rear passenger, child feet or child legs.

## Booster Seat (Group 2)



E70710

Secure children that weigh more than 33 lb (15 kg) but are less than 59 in (150 cm) tall in a booster seat or a booster cushion.

We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only. The raised seating position will allow you to position the shoulder strap of the adult safety belt over the center of your child's shoulder and the lap strap tightly across its hips.

# Child Safety

## Booster Cushion (Group 3)



E68924

## ISOFIX Anchor Points

### WARNING



Use an anti-rotation device when using the ISOFIX system. We recommend the use of a top tether or support leg.

**Note:** When you are purchasing an ISOFIX seat, make sure that you know the correct mass group and ISOFIX size class for the intended seating locations. See **Child Seat Positioning** (page 20).



E174928

Your vehicle has ISOFIX anchor points that accommodate universally approved ISOFIX child seats.

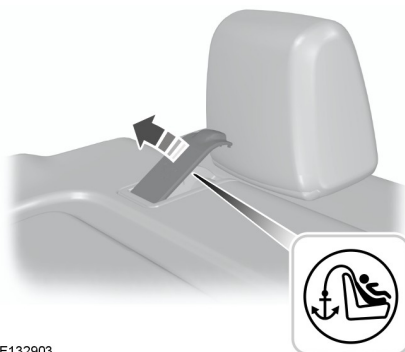
The ISOFIX system comprises two rigid attachment arms on the child seat that attach to anchor points on the outboard rear seats, where the cushion and backrest meet. Tether anchor points are located behind the outboard rear seats for child seats with a top tether.

## Top Tether Anchor Points



E87146

**5-door**





E132903

**4-door**

# Child Safety

## Attaching a Child Seat with Top Tethers

### WARNINGS

-  Do not attach a tether strap to anything other than the correct tether anchor point.
-  Make sure that the top tether strap is not slack or twisted and is properly located on the anchor point.

**Note:** Where applicable, remove the luggage cover to ease installation.

1. Route the tether strap to the anchor point.




E87145

2. Push the child seat back firmly to engage the ISOFIX lower anchor points.

3. Tighten the tether strap in line with the child seat manufacturer's instructions.

## CHILD SEAT POSITIONING

### WARNINGS

-  See an authorized dealer for the latest details relating to our recommended child seats.
-  Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.
-  When using a child seat with a support leg, the support leg must rest securely on the floor.
-  When using a child seat with a safety belt, make sure that the safety belt is not slack or twisted.
-  The child seat must rest tightly against the vehicle seat. It must not touch the head restraint. If necessary remove the head restraint. See **Head Restraints** (page 126).
-  You must reinstall the head restraint following the removal of the child seat. See **Head Restraints** (page 126).

# Child Safety

Seating positions	Mass group categories				
	0	0+	1	2	3
	Up to 22 lbs (10 kg)	Up to 29 lbs (13 kg)	20 - 40 lbs (9 - 18 kg)	33 - 55 lbs (15 - 25 kg)	46 - 79 lbs (22 - 36 kg)
Front passenger seat with airbag <b>ON</b>	X	X	UF <sup>1</sup>	UF <sup>1</sup>	UF <sup>1</sup>
Front passenger seat with airbag <b>OFF</b>	U <sup>1</sup>	U <sup>1</sup>	U <sup>1</sup>	U <sup>1</sup>	U <sup>1</sup>
Rear seats with standard belts	U	U	U	U	U
Rear seats with inflatable belts	X	X	X	U <sup>2</sup>	U

X Not suitable for children in this mass group.

U Suitable for universal category child seats approved for use in this mass group.

U<sup>1</sup> Suitable for universal category child seats approved for use in this mass group. However, we recommend that you secure children in a government approved child seat, on the rear seat.

UF<sup>1</sup> Suitable for universal category forward facing child seats approved for use in this mass group. However, we recommend that you secure children in a government approved child seat, on the rear seat.

U<sup>2</sup> Suitable for universal child seats approved for use in this mass group where the child is restrained by the adult seat belt (for example, where the child is not restrained by an integral harness).

**Note:** When using a child seat on a front seat, the following longitudinal seat positioning guideline should be followed: The child seat must not be in contact with the instrument panel. The passenger seat should be positioned as far rearwards as possible by having a seat belt routing (from B-Pillar ring to child seat) in a vehicle forward direction. If it proves difficult to tighten the lap section of the safety belt without slack remaining, adjust the seatback to the fully upright position and raise the height of the seat. See **Seats** (page 126).

**Note:** When using a child seat on a rear seat, adjust the front seat in a position to prevent contact with the rear passenger, child feet or child legs.

# Child Safety

## ISOFIX Child Seats

Seating positions		Mass group categories		
		0	0+	1
		Rear facing		Forward facing
		Up to 29 lbs (13 kg)		Rear facing
Front passenger seat	Size class	Not ISOFIX equipped		
	Seat type			
Rear outboard seat ISOFIX	Size class	C, D, E <sup>1</sup>	A, B, B <sup>1</sup>	C, D <sup>1</sup>
	Seat type	IL <sup>2</sup>	IL <sup>2</sup> , IUF <sup>3</sup>	IL <sup>2</sup>
Rear center seat	Size class	Not ISOFIX equipped		
	Seat type			

IL Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraints systems of the semi-universal category. Please consult child restraints systems suppliers' vehicle recommendation lists.

IUF Suitable for ISOFIX forward facing child restraints systems of universal category approved for use in this mass group and ISOFIX size class.

<sup>1</sup>The ISOFIX size class for both universal and semi-universal child seat systems is defined by the capital letters A to G. These identification letters are displayed on the ISOFIX child seat.

<sup>2</sup>At time of publishing the recommended Group 0+ ISOFIX baby safety seat is the Britax Romer Baby Safe. See an authorized dealer for the latest details relating to our recommended child seats.

<sup>3</sup>At time of publishing the recommended Group 1 ISOFIX child seat is the Britax Romer Duo. See an authorized dealer for the latest details relating to our recommended child seats.

# Child Safety

---

## I-Size Child Seats

-	Front passenger seat	Rear outboard seats	Rear center seat
I-Size child restraint systems	X	I-U	X

I-U Suitable for use with forward and rearward facing I-Size child restraint systems.

X Not suitable for use with I-Size child restraint systems.



# Child Safety

## CHILD SAFETY LOCKS - VEHICLES WITH: REMOTE CHILD PROOF LOCKS



E124779

Press the switch to turn them on.

**Note:** You cannot use the rear power window switches with the child safety locks on.

Press the switch again to turn them off.

## CHILD SAFETY LOCKS - VEHICLES WITH: MECHANICAL CHILD PROOF LOCKS

When these locks are set, the rear doors cannot be opened from the inside.



E112197

The childproof locks are located on the rear edge of each rear door and must be set separately for each door.

### Left-Hand Side

Turn counterclockwise to lock and clockwise to unlock.


### Right-Hand Side


Turn clockwise to lock and counterclockwise to unlock.

# Safety Belts

## FASTENING THE SAFETY BELTS

### WARNINGS

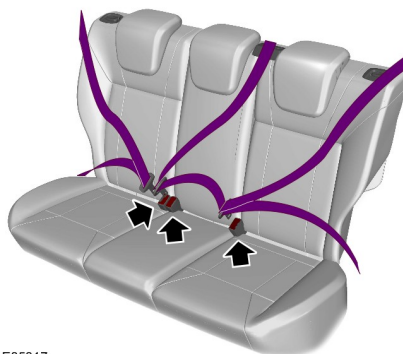
 Insert the tongue into the buckle until you hear a distinct click. You have not fastened the safety belt correctly if you do not hear a click.

 Make sure that your safety belt is securely stored away and is not outside your vehicle when closing the door.

Standard belts shown, inflatable belts similar



E74124

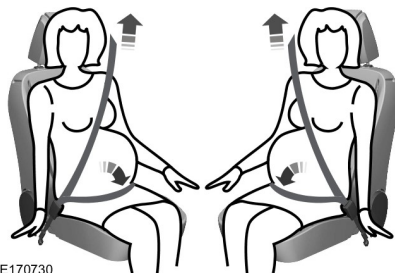


E85817

Pull the belt out steadily. It may lock if you pull it sharply or if your vehicle is on a slope.


Press the red button on the buckle to release the belt. Hold the tongue and let it retract completely and smoothly to its stowed position.

### Using Safety Belts During Pregnancy



E170730

### WARNING

 Position the safety belt correctly for your safety and that of your unborn child. Do not use only the lap strap or the shoulder strap.

# Safety Belts

Pregnant women should always wear their safety belt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

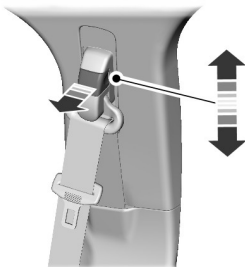
## SAFETY BELT HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT

### WARNING



Position the safety belt height adjuster so that the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the safety belt properly could reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt and increase the risk of injury in a crash.

Adjust the height of the shoulder belt so the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder.



E145664

To adjust the shoulder belt height:

1. Pull the button and slide the height adjuster up or down.
2. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

## SAFETY BELT MINDER

### WARNING



The system will only provide protection when you use the safety belt correctly.

The warning lamp illuminates and an audible warning will sound when the following conditions have been met:

- The front safety belts have not been fastened.
- Your vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

It will also illuminate and sound if a front safety belt is unfastened when your vehicle is moving.

If you do not fasten your safety belt the warning switches off automatically after approximately five minutes.


### Turning the Safety Belt Minder Off


Contact an authorized dealer.


# Supplementary Restraints System


## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION


### WARNINGS


 Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

 Do not modify the front of your vehicle in any way. This could adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

 Wear a safety belt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the safety belt correctly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 126). Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

 Repairs to the steering wheel, steering column, seats, airbags and safety belts must be carried out by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

 Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. In the event of a crash, hard objects could cause serious personal injury or death.

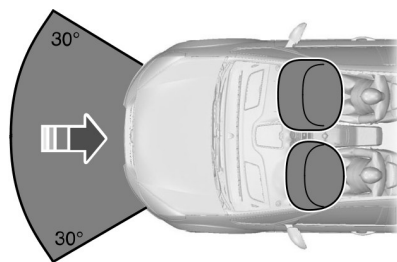
 Do not puncture the seat with sharp objects. This could damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

 Use seat covers designed for seats with side airbags. Have these fitted by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

**Note:** You will hear a loud bang and see a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.

**Note:** Only wipe airbag covers with a damp cloth.

## DRIVER AIRBAG

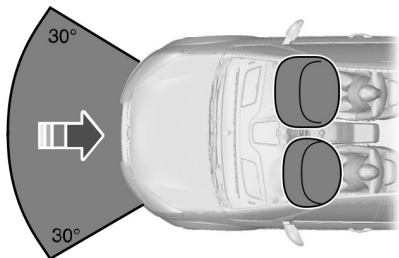


E74302

The airbag will deploy during significant frontal collisions or collisions that are up to 30 degrees from the left or the right. The airbag will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupant, thus cushioning forward body movement. During minor frontal collisions, overturns, rear collisions and side collisions, the airbag will not deploy.

# Supplementary Restraints System

## PASSENGER AIRBAG



E74302

The airbag will deploy during a significant frontal crash or crashes that are up to 30 degrees from the left or the right. The airbag will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupant cushioning forward body movement. During minor frontal crashes, sideways crashes, rear crashes or overturns, the airbag will not deploy.

### Switching the Passenger Airbag Off

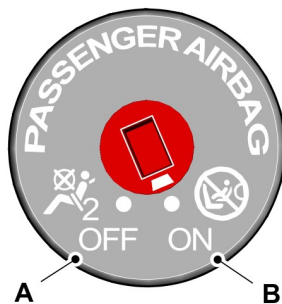
#### WARNING



You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat. Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.



E71313



E190566

- A Switch off
- B Switch on

Turn the switch to position A.

PASS AIRBAG OFF

E157152


When you switch the ignition on, check that the airbag deactivation warning lamp illuminates.

# Supplementary Restraints System

**Note:** The key switch is located on the end of the instrument panel on the passenger side with the airbag deactivation warning lamp in the center console.

## Switching the Passenger Airbag On

### WARNING


 You must switch the passenger airbag on when you are not using a rearward child seat on the front passenger seat. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Turn the switch to position B.

When you switch the ignition on, check that the airbag deactivation warning lamp does not illuminate.

## SIDE AIRBAGS

### WARNING

 Use seat covers designed for seats with side airbags. Have these fitted by an authorized dealer.




E72658

The airbags are located inside the seatback of the front seats. There is a label attached to the side of the seatback to indicate this.

The airbag will deploy during significant lateral collisions. The airbag will not deploy in minor lateral and frontal collisions, rear collisions, or overturns.

## DRIVER KNEE AIRBAG

### WARNING

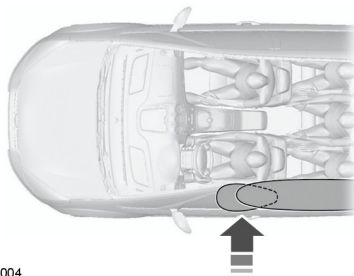
 Do not attempt to open the airbag cover.

The airbag will deploy during frontal collisions or collisions that are up to 30 degrees from the left or the right. The airbag will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupants, thus providing a cushion between the driver's knees and the steering column. During overturns, rear collisions and side collisions, the knee airbag will not deploy.

For item location: See **Instrument Panel Overview** (page 15).

**Note:** The airbag has a lower deployment threshold than the front airbags. During a minor collision, it is possible that only the knee airbag will deploy.

## SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAGS



E75004

The airbags are located over the front and rear side windows.

# Supplementary Restraints System

The airbag will deploy during significant lateral collisions. It will also deploy during significant frontal angled collisions. The curtain airbag will not deploy in minor lateral and frontal collisions, rear collisions, or overturns.

## INFLATABLE SAFETY BELTS

### Rear Inflatable Safety Belt (if

Equipped)

#### WARNINGS



Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the rear inflatable safety belt.



If the rear inflatable safety belt has deployed, it will not function again.

The rear inflatable safety belt system must be replaced by an authorized dealer.

The rear inflatable safety belts are fitted in the shoulder portion of the safety belts of the second-row outboard seating positions.

**Note:** The rear inflatable safety belts are only compatible with belt positioning booster seats of Group 2 and 3 when properly installed. See **Installing Child Seats** (page 17). This is because they are designed to fill with a cooled gas at a lower pressure and at a slower rate than traditional airbags. After inflation, the shoulder portion of the safety belt remains cool to the touch.

The rear inflatable safety belt consists of the following:

- An inflatable bag located in the shoulder safety belt webbing.
- Lap safety belt webbing with automatic locking mode.

- The same warning light, electronic control and diagnostic unit as used for the front safety belts.
- Impact sensors located in various parts of the vehicle.

How does the rear inflatable safety belt system work?

The rear inflatable safety belts will function like standard restraints in everyday usage.



E146364

During a crash of sufficient force, the inflatable belt will inflate from inside the webbing.



E146365



## Supplementary Restraints System

---

The fully inflated belt's increased diameter more effectively holds the occupant in the appropriate seating position, and spreads crash forces over more area of the body than regular safety belts. This helps reduce pressure on the chest and helps control head and neck motion for passengers.

The rear inflatable safety belts are designed to inflate in frontal or near-frontal crashes and some side impact crashes. The fact that the rear inflatable safety belt did not inflate in a crash does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the forces were not of the type sufficient to cause activation.

# Keys and Remote Controls

## GENERAL INFORMATION ON RADIO FREQUENCIES

**Note:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

The typical operating range for your transmitter is approximately 33 ft (10 m).

A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- weather conditions
- nearby radio towers
- structures around your vehicle
- other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other short distance radio transmissions (e.g. amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, remote controls and alarm systems). If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

**Note:** Make sure your vehicle is locked before leaving it unattended.

**Note:** If you are in range, the remote control will operate if you press any button unintentionally.

**Note:** The remote control contains sensitive electrical components. Exposure to moisture or impact may cause permanent damage.

## REMOTE CONTROL

### Integrated Keyhead Transmitters

(If Equipped)

Use the key blade to start your vehicle and unlock or lock the driver door from outside your vehicle. The transmitter portion functions as the remote control.



E186181

Press the button to release the key. Press and hold the button to fold the key back in when not in use.



E151795

**Note:** Your vehicle's keys came with a security tag that provides important vehicle key cut information. Keep the tag in a safe place for future reference.

### Intelligent Access Key (If Equipped)



E186183

# Keys and Remote Controls

Your intelligent access keys operate the power locks and the remote start system. The key must be in your vehicle to activate the push-button start system.

## Removable Key Blade

The intelligent access key also contains a removable mechanical key blade that you can use to unlock the driver door.



E151796

Slide the release on the back of the remote control and pivot the cover off to access the key blade.



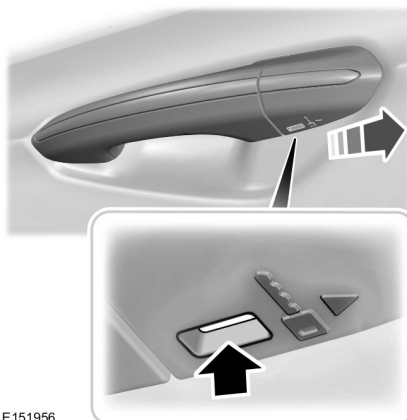
E151795

**Note:** Your vehicle's backup keys came with a security tag that provides important vehicle key cut information. Keep the tag in a safe place for future reference.

## Using the Key Blade

The key cylinder is under a cap on the driver door handle.

To remove the cap:



E151956

1. Insert the key blade into the slot on the bottom of the handle and press up.
2. While maintaining upward pressure, move the cap rearward to release it. Gently remove the key while doing so.

To install the cap:



E151957

1. Place the cap just rearward of the key cylinder.
2. While applying pressure to the cap, move it forward until it is in place. You may hear a snap as it engages.

Make sure you have properly installed the cap by trying to move it rearward.

# Keys and Remote Controls

## Changing the Remote Control Battery

**Note:** Refer to local regulations when disposing of transmitter batteries.

**Note:** Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

**Note:** You do not need to reprogram the remote control after you have replaced its battery, it should operate normally.

A message will appear in the information display when the remote control battery is low. See **Information Messages** (page 96).

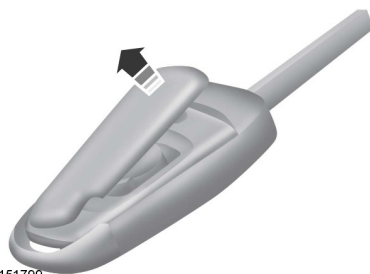
### Integrated Keyhead Transmitter

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.

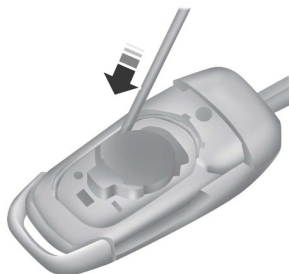
Press the button to release the key before beginning the procedure.



1. Insert a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, in the position shown and gently push the clip.
2. Press the clip down to release the battery cover.

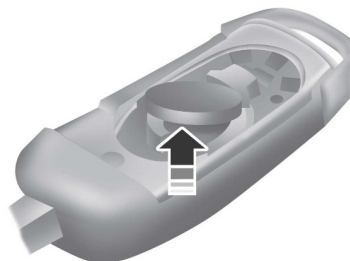


3. Carefully remove the cover.



**Note:** Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.

4. Insert a screwdriver as shown to release the battery.



5. Remove the battery.

## Keys and Remote Controls

6. Install a new battery with the **+** facing upward.
7. Replace the battery cover.

### Intelligent Access Transmitter

The remote control uses two coin-type three-volt lithium batteries CR2025 or equivalent.



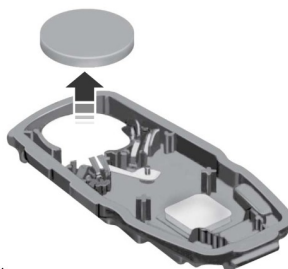
E151796

1. Slide the release on the back of the remote control and pivot the cover off.



E153890

2. Insert a coin into the slot and twist to separate the housing.



E153891

3. Remove the batteries.
4. Install new batteries with the **+** facing each other.

**Note:** Make sure to replace the label between the two batteries.

5. Reinstall the housing and cover.

### Remote Start (If Equipped)

#### WARNING



To avoid exhaust fumes, do not use remote start if your vehicle is parked indoors or in areas that are not well ventilated.

**Note:** Do not use remote start if your vehicle is low on fuel.



The remote start button is on the transmitter.

This feature allows you to start your vehicle from outside the vehicle. The transmitter has an extended operating range.

If your vehicle has automatic climate control, you can configure it to operate when you remote start your vehicle. See **Climate Control** (page 111). A manual climate control system will run at the setting it was set to when you switched the vehicle off.

# Keys and Remote Controls

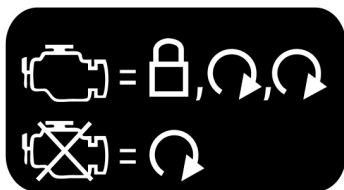
Many states and provinces have restrictions for the use of remote start. Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements regarding remote start systems.

The remote start system will not work if:

- The ignition is on.
- The alarm system triggered.
- You disable the feature.
- The hood is open.
- The transmission is not in park (P).
- The vehicle battery voltage is too low.
- The service engine soon light is on.

## Remote Starting the Vehicle

**Note:** You must press each button within three seconds of each other. Your vehicle will not remote start if you do not follow this sequence.



E138626

The tag with your transmitter details the starting procedure.

To remote start your vehicle:

1. Press the lock button to lock all the doors.
2. Press the remote start button twice. The exterior lamps flash twice.

The horn sounds if the system fails to start, unless quiet start is on. Quiet start will run the blower fan at a slower speed to reduce noise. It can be switched on or off in the information display. See **General Information** (page 86).

**Note:** If you remote start the vehicle with an integrated keyhead transmitter, you must switch the ignition on before driving your vehicle. With an intelligent access transmitter, you must press the **START/STOP** button on the instrument panel once while applying the brake pedal before driving your vehicle.

The power windows will not work during the remote start and the radio will not turn on automatically.

The parking lamps will remain on and the vehicle will run for 5, 10 or 15 minutes, depending on the setting.

## Extending the Vehicle Run Time

Repeat Steps 1 and 2 with the vehicle still running to extend the run time for another remote start duration. If you programmed the duration to last 10 minutes, the second 10 minutes will begin after what is left of the first activation time. For example, if the vehicle had been running from the first remote start for five minutes, the vehicle will continue to run now for a total of 15 minutes. You can extend the remote start up to a maximum of 35 minutes.

Wait at least five seconds before remote starting after a vehicle shutdown.

## Turning the Vehicle Off After Remote Starting



Press the button once. The vehicle and parking lamps will turn off.

You may have to be closer to the vehicle than when starting due to ground reflection and the added noise of the running vehicle.

You can disable or enable the remote start system through the information display. See **General Information** (page 86).

# Keys and Remote Controls

---

## **Memory Feature**

Your intelligent access key will recall your seat and mirror position each time you enter your vehicle, if linked to a pre-set position. See **Memory Function** (page 131).

## **REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL**

Replacement keys or remote controls can be purchased from an authorized dealer. Authorized dealers can program remote controls for your vehicle. See **Passive Anti-Theft System** (page 51).

To re-program the passive anti-theft system see an authorized dealer.

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The system allows you to program keys with restricted driving modes to promote good driving habits. You can use all but one of the keys programmed to your vehicle with these restricted modes.

Any keys that have not been programmed are referred to as an administrator key or admin key. These can be used to:

- create a MyKey
- program optional MyKey settings
- clear all MyKey features.

When you have programmed a MyKey, you can access the following information using the information display:

- How many admin keys and MyKeys are programmed to your vehicle.
- The total distance your vehicle has traveled using a MyKey.

**Note:** Switch the ignition on to use the system.

**Note:** All MyKeys are programmed to the same settings. You cannot program them individually.

## Standard Settings

The following settings cannot be changed:

- Safety belt minder. You cannot disable this feature. The audio system will mute when this feature is activated.
- Early low fuel or charge. The low-fuel or low charge warning activates earlier, giving the MyKey user more time to refuel or recharge.
- Driver assist features, for example navigation, parking aids and Blind Spot Information System (BLIS) with cross traffic alert. These systems turn on automatically whenever you switch the ignition on.

## Optional Settings

You can configure MyKey settings when you first create a MyKey. You can also change the settings afterward with an admin key.

The following settings can be configured using an admin key:

- Various vehicle speed limits can be set. Warnings will be shown in the display followed by an audible tone when your vehicle reaches the set speed. You cannot override the set speed by fully depressing the accelerator pedal or by setting cruise control.
- Various vehicle speed reminders can be set. Warnings will be shown in the display followed by an audible tone when the set vehicle speed is exceeded.
- Audio system maximum volume of 45%. A message will be shown in the display when you attempt to exceed the limited volume. Automatic volume control will be disabled.
- Always on setting. When this is selected you will not be able to switch off Advance Trac, traction control, emergency assistance or the do not disturb feature.

## Vehicles with Keyless Entry

If a MyKey and an admin key are present, your vehicle will recognize the admin key only.

## CREATING A MYKEY

Use the information display to create a MyKey:



1. Insert the key you want to program into the ignition. If your vehicle is equipped with a push-button start, place the intelligent access key fob into the backup slot. The location of your backup slot is in another chapter. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine** (page 138).

2. Switch the ignition on.

3. Access the main menu on the information display controls, and select **Settings** then **MyKey** by pressing **OK** or the **>** button.

4. Press **OK** or the **>** button to select **Create MyKey**.

5. When prompted, hold the **OK** button until you see a message informing you to label this key as a MyKey. The key will be restricted at the next start.

MyKey is successfully created. Make sure you label it so you can distinguish it from the admin keys.

You can also program configurable settings for the key(s). See **Programming/Changing Configurable Settings**.

## Programming/Changing Configurable Settings

Use the information display to access your configurable MyKey settings.

1. Switch the ignition on using an admin key or fob.
2. Access the main menu on the information display controls, and select **Settings**, then **MyKey** by pressing **OK** or **>** button.
3. Use the arrow buttons to get to a feature.
4. Press **OK** or **>** to make a selection.

**Note:** *You can clear or change your MyKey settings at any time during the same key cycle as you created the MyKey. Once you have switched the vehicle off, however, you will need an admin key to change or clear your MyKey settings.*

## CLEARING ALL MYKEYS

You can clear or change your MyKey settings using the information display control on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 86).

Switch the ignition on using an admin key or fob.

**To clear all MyKeys of all MyKey settings, press the left arrow button to access the main menu and scroll to:**

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
MyKey	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Clear MyKey	Press and hold the <b>OK</b> button until the following message displays.

# MyKey™

---

Message	Action and Description
All MyKeys Cleared	

**Note:** *When you clear your MyKeys, you remove all restrictions and return all MyKeys to their original admin key status.*

## CHECKING MYKEY SYSTEM STATUS

You can find information on programmed MyKey(s) using the information display control on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 86).

**To find information on a programmed MyKey(s), press the left arrow button to access the main menu and scroll to:**

Message	Description
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
MyKey	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
<b>Select one of the following:</b>	
MyKey Dist.	Tracks the distance when drivers use a MyKey. The only way to delete the accumulated distance is by using an admin key to clear your MyKey. If the distance does not accumulate as expected, then the intended user is not using the MyKey, or an admin key user recently cleared and then recreated a MyKey.
{0} MyKeys	Indicates the number of MyKeys programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to detect how many MyKeys you have for your vehicle and determine when a MyKey has been deleted.
{0} Admin Keys	Indicates how many admin keys are programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to determine how many unrestricted keys you have for your vehicle, and detect if an additional MyKey has been programmed.

## USING MYKEY WITH REMOTE START SYSTEMS

MyKey is not compatible with non

Ford-approved, aftermarket remote start systems. If you choose to install a remote start system, see an authorized dealer for a Ford-approved remote start system.

## MYKEY TROUBLESHOOTING

Condition	Potential Causes
I cannot create a MyKey.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The key or transmitter used to start the vehicle does not have admin privileges.</li><li>• The key or transmitter used to start the vehicle is the only admin key (there always has to be at least one admin key).</li><li>• Vehicles with keyless start: The keyless start transmitter is not placed in the backup slot, located in the center console. See <b>General Information</b> (page 138).</li><li>• SecuriLock passive anti-theft system is disabled or in unlimited mode.</li></ul>
I cannot program the configurable settings.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The key or transmitter used to start your vehicle does not have admin privileges.</li><li>• No MyKeys are created. See <b>Creating a MyKey</b> (page 38).</li></ul>
I cannot clear the MyKeys.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The key or transmitter used to start your vehicle does not have admin privileges.</li><li>• No MyKeys are created. See <b>Creating a MyKey</b> (page 38).</li></ul>
I lost the only admin key.	Purchase a new key from an authorized dealer.

# MyKey™

Condition	Potential Causes
I lost a key.	Program a spare key. See <b>Passive Anti-Theft System</b> (page 51).
MyKey distances do not accumulate.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The MyKey user is not using the MyKey.</li><li>• An admin key holder cleared the MyKeys and created new MyKeys.</li><li>• The key system has been reset.</li></ul>
No MyKey functions with the keyless entry transmitter.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• An admin transmitter is present at vehicle start.</li><li>• No MyKeys are created. See <b>Creating a MyKey</b> (page 38).</li></ul>

# Locks

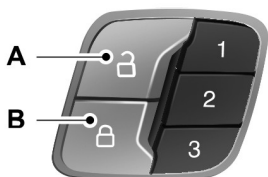
## LOCKING AND UNLOCKING

**Note:** Check your vehicle is locked before leaving it unattended.

**Note:** Do not leave your keys in your vehicle.

### Power Door Locks

The power door lock control is on the driver and front passenger door panels.



E138628

A Unlock.

B Lock.

### Door Lock Indicator

An LED on each door window trim illuminates when you lock the door. It remains on for up to 10 minutes after you switch the ignition off.

### Door Lock Switch Inhibitor

When you electronically lock your vehicle, the power door lock switch will no longer operate after 20 seconds. You must unlock your vehicle with the remote control, or switch the ignition on to restore function to these switches. You can switch this feature on or off in the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 86).

### Remote Control

You can use the remote control at any time when the ignition is off.

### Unlocking the Doors



Press the button to unlock all doors. The direction indicators will flash.

**Note:** The driver door can be unlocked with the key if the remote control is not functioning.

**Note:** When you leave your vehicle unattended for several weeks, the remote control turns off. Your vehicle must be unlocked and the engine started using the key. Unlocking and starting your vehicle once enables the remote control.

### Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

You can reprogram the unlocking function so that only the driver door is unlocked. See **Remote Control** (page 32).

### Locking the Doors



Press the button to lock all doors. The direction indicators will flash.

**Note:** If any door or the liftgate is open, or if the hood is open on vehicles that have an anti-theft alarm or remote start, the direction indicators will not flash.

### Double Locking the Doors

#### WARNING



Do not use double locking when passengers or animals are inside your vehicle. The doors cannot be unlocked or opened from the inside when double locked.

Double locking is a theft protection feature that prevents someone from opening the doors from the inside. It will only operate if all of the doors are fully closed.



Press the button twice within three seconds.

# Locks

## Automatic Relocking

The doors automatically relock if you do not open a door within 45 seconds of unlocking the doors with the remote control. The door locks and the alarm return to their previous state.

## Locking and Unlocking the Doors From Inside

Use the power door lock control located on the driver and front passenger door panels.

## Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade

### Locking with the Key Blade

Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle.

### Double Locking with the Key Blade

Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle twice within three seconds.

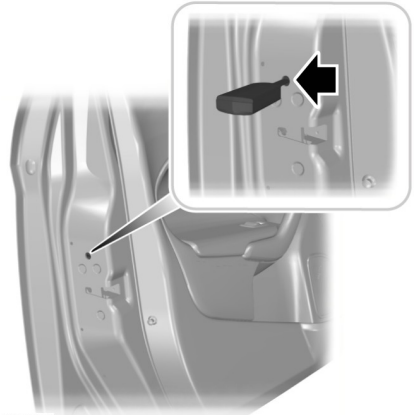
### Unlocking with the Key Blade

Turn the top of the key toward the rear of your vehicle.

**Note:** If the child safety locks are on and you pull the interior door handle, you will only switch off the emergency locking, not the child safety lock. You can only open the doors using the exterior door handle.

## Locking and Unlocking the Doors Individually with the Key Blade

### Locking



E112203

If the central locking function fails to operate, lock the doors individually using the key in the position shown.

### Left-Hand Side

Turn clockwise to lock.

### Right-Hand Side

Turn counterclockwise to lock.

### Unlocking

If the central locking function fails to operate, unlock the driver door and then unlock all other doors individually by pulling the interior door handles.

**Note:** If the doors have been unlocked using this method, the doors must be locked individually until the central locking function has been repaired.

# Locks

## MANUAL LIFTGATE

### WARNINGS



It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a safety belt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



Make sure to close and latch the liftgate to prevent drawing exhaust fumes into your vehicle. This will also prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. If you must drive with the liftgate open, keep the vents or windows open so outside air comes into your vehicle. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

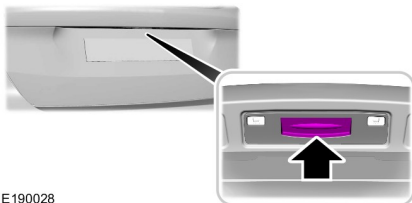
**Note:** Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

**Note:** Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

## Opening the Liftgate

### Manually



E190028

Press the release button above the license plate to unlatch the liftgate.

### With the Remote Control



Press the button twice within three seconds.

## Closing the Liftgate



E155976

A handle is located inside the liftgate to help with closing.

## POWER LIFTGATE (If Equipped)

### WARNINGS



Do not operate the liftgate unless it is free from obstruction.



Careless opening and closing of the liftgate can override the protection function and cause injuries.



# Locks

## WARNINGS



Do not place objects on the liftgate.



Make sure you fully close the liftgate after operation.



Operate the liftgate only when your vehicle is stationary.

You can operate the liftgate using the remote control, the center console switch, the liftgate switch or the liftgate release handle.

**Note:** Make sure there is enough headroom to open the liftgate.

**Note:** If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, make sure the transmission selector lever is in park.

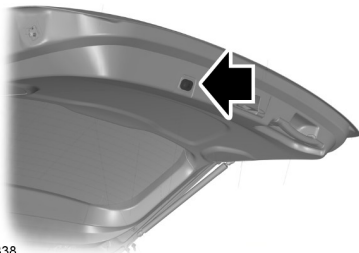
**Note:** In extreme weather conditions, automatic opening and closing will not work with the liftgate frozen to the seal.

**Note:** The liftgate will stop automatically while opening and reverse some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

**Note:** The liftgate will stop automatically while closing and fully open if there is an obstacle in the way.

**Note:** You can manually operate the liftgate.

## Liftgate Switch



E129838

## Remote Control and Center Console Switch



**Note:** Switch the ignition on to operate the liftgate using the center console switch.

You will hear three chimes when the liftgate begins to close.

Five short chimes indicate a malfunction with the open or close request. This could be caused by one of the following:

- You switch the ignition on and the transmission selector lever is not in park.
- The battery voltage is below the minimum operating voltage.
- Your vehicle speed exceeds 3 mph (5 km/h).

To open a fully closed liftgate, you can either:

- Press the button on the remote control twice within three seconds.
- Press the center console switch.
- Use the liftgate release handle.

To fully open a partially opened liftgate, you can either:

- Press the button on the remote control twice within three seconds.
- Press the center console switch or the liftgate switch.
- Use the liftgate release handle.

To stop the liftgate, you can either:

- Press the button on the remote control. A further remote control operation will be delayed for approximately three seconds.
- Press the center console switch or the liftgate switch.
- Use the liftgate release handle.

# Locks

## Closing the Liftgate

### WARNING



The bounce-back feature will not work and it will not detect obstacles when the liftgate is in contact with the vehicle body.

**Note:** Do not leave a passive key in your vehicle when closing the liftgate. A message will be shown in the display. See **Information Messages** (page 96).

**Note:** A recessed grip is located inside the liftgate to help with closing.

You can either:

- Press the button on the remote control twice within three seconds.
- Press the center console switch or the liftgate switch.
- Use the liftgate release handle.
- Manually close the liftgate



E130232

The liftgate will close automatically when it comes into contact with the vehicle body.

## Programming the Liftgate

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Manually move the liftgate to the new required position.

3. Press and hold the liftgate switch for at least three seconds. You will hear a chime.

## KEYLESS ENTRY

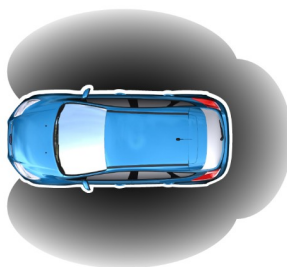
### General Information

The system will not function if:

- Your vehicle battery has no charge.
- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The passive key battery has no charge.

**Note:** If the system does not function, you will need to use the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle.

The system allows you to operate your vehicle without the use of a key or remote control.



E78276

Passive locking and unlocking requires a valid passive key to be located within one of the three external detection ranges. These are located approximately 3.3 ft (1 m) from the front door handles and the liftgate.

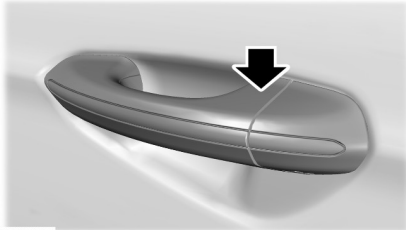
**Note:** The system may not function if the passive key is close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

# Locks

## Passive Key

Your vehicle can be locked and unlocked with the passive key. You can use the passive key as a remote control. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 44).

## Locking Your Vehicle



E157085

Locking sensors are located on each of the front doors.

For central locking and to arm the alarm, touch a locking sensor once.

For double locking and to arm the alarm, touch a locking sensor twice within three seconds.

**Note:** Your vehicle does not automatically lock. If you do not touch a locking sensor your vehicle will remain unlocked.

**Note:** When locking your vehicle, do not grip the door handle.

**Note:** Keep the door handle surface clean to make sure the system operates correctly.

**Note:** Your vehicle will remain locked for approximately three seconds. When the delay period is over, you can open the doors again, provided the passive key is within the respective detection range.

Two short flashes of the direction indicators confirms that all the doors and the liftgate have been locked and that the alarm has been armed.

## Liftgate

**Note:** The liftgate cannot be closed and will reopen if the passive key is located inside the luggage compartment with the doors locked.

**Note:** If a second valid passive key is located within the liftgate detection range, the liftgate can be closed.

## Unlocking Your Vehicle

One long flash of the direction indicators confirms that all the doors and the liftgate have been unlocked and that the alarm has been disarmed.

**Note:** When your vehicle remains locked for longer than three days, the system will enter an energy-saving mode. This is to prevent the vehicle battery running out of charge. When your vehicle is unlocked while in this mode, the reaction time of the system may be a little longer than normal. To exit the energy-saving mode, unlock your vehicle.

**Note:** A valid passive key must be located within the detection range of that door.

## Unlocking Only the Driver Door

You can program the system so that only the driver door is unlocked. See **Remote Control** (page 32).

If the unlocking function is reprogrammed so that only the driver door is unlocked the following will occur:

- If the driver door is the first door opened, all the other doors will remain locked. All the other doors can be unlocked from inside your vehicle by pressing the unlock button. The other doors can be unlocked individually by pulling the interior door handle on the respective door.
- If the front passenger door is the first door opened, all the doors will be unlocked.

# Locks

---

## Disabled Passive Keys

Any keys left inside your vehicle interior when it is locked will be disabled.

You cannot use a disabled key to switch the ignition on or start the engine.

You must enable all passive keys again in order to use them.

To enable all your passive keys, unlock your vehicle using a passive key that has not been disabled or the remote control unlocking function.

All passive keys will then be enabled if you switch the ignition on or you start your vehicle with a valid key.

## Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade



E151796

Slide the release on the back of the remote control and pivot the cover off to access the key blade.

**Note:** Only the driver door handle has a lock cylinder.

## PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

### Principle of Operation

The system prevents someone from starting the engine with an incorrectly coded key.

**Note:** *Do not leave correctly coded keys in the vehicle. Always take your keys and lock all doors when leaving the vehicle.*

### Coded Keys

If you lose a key, you can obtain a replacement from an authorized dealer. If possible, provide them with the key number from the tag provided with the original keys. You can also obtain extra keys from an authorized dealer.

**Note:** *Have all of your remaining keys erased and recoded if you lose a key. Have replacement keys coded together with recoding your remaining keys. See an authorized dealer for further information.*

**Note:** *Do not shield your keys with metal objects. This may prevent the receiver from recognizing a coded key.*

### Arming the Engine Immobilizer

When you switch the ignition off the engine immobilizer will arm automatically after a short time.

### Disarming the Engine Immobilizer

When you switch the ignition on the engine immobilizer will disarm automatically if a correctly coded key is used.

If you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

## ANTI-THEFT ALARM - VEHICLES WITH: INTERIOR SENSOR

### Alarm System

#### WARNING



Do not arm the alarm with full guard if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle.

### Perimeter Alarm

The perimeter alarm is a deterrent against unauthorized access to your vehicle through the doors and the hood. It also protects the audio unit.

### Interior Sensors

The interior lamp unit sensors are located in the overhead console.

**Note:** *Do not cover up the interior lamp unit sensors.*

The sensors act as a deterrent against unauthorized intrusion by sensing any movement inside your vehicle.

### Triggering the Alarm

Once armed, the alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a valid key or remote control.
- If someone removes the audio unit or navigation system.
- If you switch your vehicle on without a correctly coded key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement within your vehicle.

If the alarm is triggered, the alarm horn will sound for 30 seconds and the hazard warning flasher will flash for five minutes.

# Security

Any further attempts to perform one of the above will trigger the alarm again.

## Full and Reduced Guard

### Full Guard

Full guard is the standard setting.

In full guard, the interior sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

### Reduced Guard

In reduced guard, the interior sensors are off when you arm the alarm.

## Selecting Full or Reduced Guard

You can select full or reduced guard using the information display. See **General Information** (page 86).

### Ask on Exit (If Equipped)

You can set the information display to ask you each time which level of guard you wish to set.

## Using the information display controls, scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Vehicle settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Alarm	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Ask on exit	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Reduced guard	Appears in the information display each time you switch your vehicle off. If you wish to arm the alarm with reduced guard, press the <b>OK</b> button when this message appears. If you wish to arm the alarm with full guard, leave your vehicle without pressing the <b>OK</b> button.

**Note:** Selecting *reduced guard* does not set the alarm permanently to reduced guard. It sets it to reduced guard only for the current locking cycle.

## Arming the Alarm

To arm the alarm, lock your vehicle. See **Locks** (page 44).

## Disarming the Alarm

### Vehicles Without Keyless Entry

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors with the key and switching your vehicle on with a correctly coded key or unlocking the doors with the remote control.

## Vehicles with Keyless Entry

**Note:** A valid passive key must be located within the detection range of that door for keyless entry. See **Keyless Entry** (page 48).

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching your vehicle on or unlocking the doors with the remote control.

## ANTI-THEFT ALARM - VEHICLES WITH: INTEGRAL BATTERY

### Alarm System

#### WARNING



Do not arm the alarm with full guard if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle.

### Perimeter Alarm

The perimeter alarm is a deterrent against unauthorized access to your vehicle through the doors and the hood.

### Interior Sensors

The interior lamp unit sensors are located in the overhead console.

**Note:** Do not cover up the interior lamp unit sensors.

The sensors act as a deterrent against unauthorized access by sensing any movement within your vehicle.

## Battery Back-up Sounder

The battery back-up sounder is an additional alarm system, which sounds a siren if your vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder is disconnected. When you lock your vehicle the system is armed. The sounder has its own battery and will sound an alarm siren even if someone disconnects your vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder itself.

### Triggering the Alarm

Once armed, the alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a valid key or remote control.
- If someone removes the audio or navigation system.
- If you switch your vehicle on without a correctly coded key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement within your vehicle.
- On vehicles with a battery back-up sounder, if someone disconnects your vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder itself.

If the alarm is triggered, the alarm horn will sound for 30 seconds and the hazard warning flasher will flash for five minutes.

Any further attempts to perform one of the above sounds the alarm again.

## Full and Reduced Guard

### Full Guard

Full guard is the standard setting.

In full guard, the interior sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

### Reduced Guard

In reduced guard, the interior sensors are off when you arm the alarm.

# Security

## Selecting Full or Reduced Guard

You can select full or reduced guard using the information display. See **General Information** (page 86).

## Ask on Exit (If Equipped)

You can set the information display to ask you each time which level of guard you wish to set.

### Using the information display controls, scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Vehicle settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Alarm	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Ask on exit	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Reduced	Appears in the information display each time you switch your vehicle off. If you wish to arm the alarm with reduced guard, press the <b>OK</b> button when this message appears. If you wish to arm the alarm with full guard, leave your vehicle without pressing the <b>OK</b> button.

**Note:** Selecting reduced guard does not set the alarm permanently to reduced guard. It sets it to reduced guard only for the current locking cycle.

## Arming the Alarm

To arm the alarm, lock your vehicle. See **Locks** (page 44).

## Disarming the Alarm

### Vehicles Without Keyless Entry

#### Perimeter Alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors with the key and switching your vehicle on with a correctly coded key or unlocking the doors with the remote control.

### Category One Alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors with the key and switching your vehicle on with a correctly coded key within 12 seconds or unlocking the doors with the remote control.

### Vehicles with Keyless Entry

**Note:** A valid passive key must be located within the detection range of that door for keyless entry. See **Keyless Entry** (page 48).

#### Perimeter Alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching your vehicle on or unlocking the doors with the remote control.



# Security

---

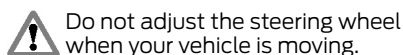
## ***Category One Alarm***

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching your vehicle on within 12 seconds or unlocking the doors or the liftgate with the remote control.

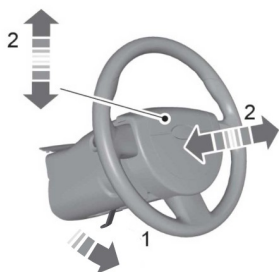
# Steering Wheel

## ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL - VEHICLES WITH: MANUAL ADJUSTABLE STEERING COLUMN

### WARNING



**Note:** Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 126).



E157083

1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



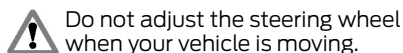
E157084

3. Lock the steering column.

## ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL - VEHICLES WITH: POWER ADJUSTABLE STEERING COLUMN

**Note:** Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 126).

### WARNING



E161834

Use the control on the side of the steering column to adjust the position.

To adjust:

- Tilt: Press the top or bottom of the control.
- Telescope: Press the front or rear of the control.

The steering column sets a stopping position just short of the end of the column position to prevent damage to the steering column. A new stopping position sets if the steering column encounters an object when tilting or telescoping.

# Steering Wheel

To reset the steering column to its normal stopping position:

1. Press the steering column control again after encountering the new stopping position.
2. Continue pressing the control until it reaches the end of the column position.

A new stopping position is set. The next time you tilt or telescope the steering column, it will stop just short of the end of the column position.

## Memory Feature

You can save and recall the steering column position with the memory function. See **Memory Function** (page 131).

**Note:** *Pressing the adjustment control during memory recall cancels the operation. The column responds to the adjustment control.*

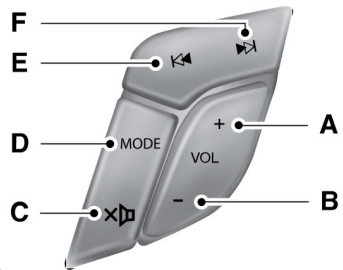
## Easy Entry and Exit Feature (if Equipped)

When you switch the ignition off, the steering column will move to the full up position to allow extra room to exit your vehicle. The column will return to the previous setting when you switch the ignition on. You can enable or disable this feature in the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 86).

## AUDIO CONTROL

Select the required source on the audio unit.

Operate the following functions with the control:



E191234

- A Volume up.
- B Volume down.
- C Mute.
- D Mode.
- E Seek down or previous.
- F Seek up or next.

## MODE

Press repeatedly to scroll through available audio sources.

## Seek, Next or Previous

Press the seek button to:

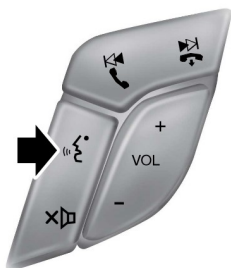
- tune the radio to the next or previous stored preset.
- play the next or the previous track.

Press and hold the seek button to:

- tune the radio to the next station up or down the frequency band.
- seek through a track.

# Steering Wheel

## VOICE CONTROL



E168194

Push the control to select or deselect voice control. See **SYNCTM 2** (page 343).

## Type 2

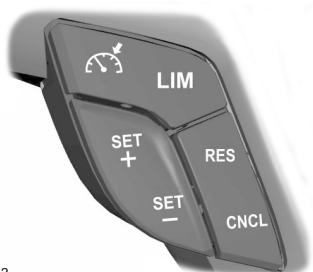


E191233

See **Cruise Control** (page 181).

## CRUISE CONTROL

### Type 1



E191232

## INFORMATION DISPLAY CONTROL



E144636

See **Information Displays** (page 86).

# Steering Wheel

---

## Information Display Control Features



E144811

This control functions the same as the center control on the faceplate. See **Audio Unit** (page 296).

Use this control to adjust the right side of the information display. Navigate through the screen and press **OK** to select.

## HEATED STEERING WHEEL

See **SYNC™ 2** (page 343).

# Wipers and Washers

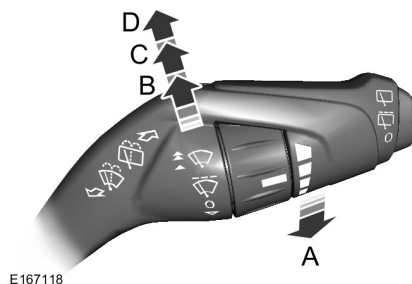
## WINDSHIELD WIPERS

**Note:** Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

**Note:** Make sure you switch the windshield wipers and vehicle power off before using an automatic car wash.

**Note:** If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 249). If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades. See **Changing the Wiper Blades** (page ?).

**Note:** Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades or cause the wiper motor to burn out. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.

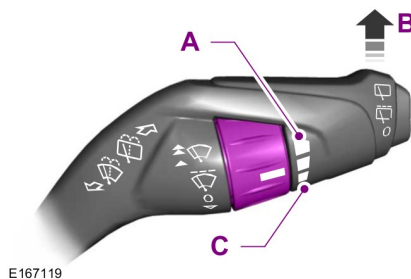


E167118

- A Single wipe.
- B Intermittent wipe.
- C Normal wipe.
- D High-speed wipe.

**Note:** Move to position **O** marked on the wiper lever to switch off.

## Intermittent Wipe



E167119

- A Short-wipe interval.
- B Intermittent wipe.
- C Long-wipe interval.

Push the wiper lever up to switch the wipers on, and then use the rotary control to adjust the intermittent wipe interval.

## Speed Dependent Wipers (If Equipped)

When your vehicle speed increases, the interval between wipes decreases.

## AUTOWIPERS

**Note:** Fully defrost the windshield before switching on the windshield wipers.

**Note:** Make sure you switch off the windshield wipers before entering a car wash.

**Note:** Clean the windshield and wiper blades if they begin to leave streaks or smears. If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades.

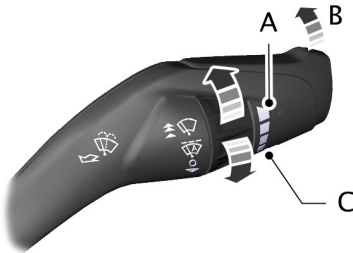
**Note:** If you switch autolamps on in conjunction with autowipers, your low beam headlights will illuminate automatically when the rain sensor activates the windshield wipers continuously.

# Wipers and Washers

**Note:** Wet or winter driving conditions with ice, snow or salty road mist can cause inconsistent and unexpected wiping or smearing.

In these conditions, you can do the following to help keep your windshield clear:

- Lower the sensitivity of the autowipers to reduce the amount of smearing.
- Switch to normal or high-speed wipe.
- Switch the autowipers off.



E169315

- A Highest sensitivity
- B On
- C Lowest sensitivity

The autowipers feature uses a rain sensor. You will find it in the area around the interior mirror. The rain sensor monitors the amount of moisture on the windshield and automatically turns on the wipers. It will adjust the wiper speed by the amount of moisture that the sensor detects on the windshield.

**Note:** This autowiper feature is automatically set to on and remains on until you switch it off in the information display. You can also switch the feature back on at any time. See (page 86).

Use the rotary control to adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor. Set the control to low sensitivity, and the wipers will turn on when the rain sensor detects a large amount of moisture on the windshield. Set the control to high sensitivity, and the wipers will turn on when the rain sensor detects a small amount of moisture on the windshield.

**Note:** When you set the wiper system to intermittent wipe and the autowiper system is on, the autowiper sensitivity setting adjusts the wiper speed according to the moisture on the windshield only. Use the wiper lever to wipe the windshield on-demand.

Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive. If the area around the mirror is dirty, then the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

## WINDSHIELD WASHERS

**Note:** Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat.



E169316

To operate the washers and spray the windshield, pull the lever toward you.

# Wipers and Washers

A wipe will occur a few seconds after washing to clear any remaining washer fluid. This feature can be switched on or off in the information display. See **General Information** (page 86).

## REAR WINDOW WIPER AND WASHERS

### Rear Window Wiper

**Note:** Make sure you switch the rear window wiper and ignition off before using an automatic car wash.



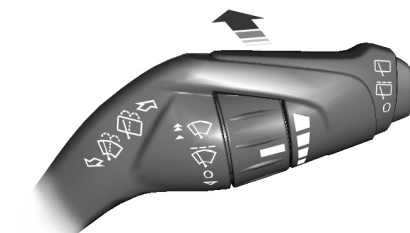
E171615

- A Intermittent wipe.
- B Low speed wipe.
- C Off.

Press the top of the button to switch intermittent wipe on. Press the top of the button again to switch low speed wipe on. Press the bottom of the button to switch the rear window wiper off.

When you switch on the front wipers and move the gearshift lever to reverse (R), rear intermittent wipe automatically turns on.

### Rear Window Washer



E167407

Push the lever away from you to operate the rear window washer. When you release the lever, wiping continues for a short period of time.



# Lighting

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### Condensation in Lamp Assemblies

Exterior lamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure.

Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

- The presence of a fine mist (no streaks, drip marks or large droplets).
- A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

Examples of unacceptable condensation are:

- A water puddle inside the lamp.
- Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

If you see any unacceptable condensation, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

## LIGHTING CONTROL



E142449

- A Off
- B Parking lamps, instrument panel lamps, license plate lamps and tail lamps
- C Headlamps

### High Beams



E162679

Push the lever forward to switch the high beams on.

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

## Headlamp Flasher



E162680

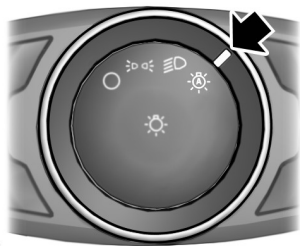
Pull the lever toward you slightly and release it to flash the headlamps.

## AUTOLAMPS

### WARNING



The autolamps switch position may not activate the headlamps in all low visibility conditions, such as daytime fog. Always ensure that your headlamps are switched to auto or on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a collision.



E142451

When the lighting control is in the autolamps position, the headlamps automatically turn on in low light situations or when the wipers activate.

If equipped, the following also activate when the lighting control is in the autolamps position and you switch them on in the information display:

- Configurable daytime running lamps.
- Automatic high beam control.
- Adaptive headlamp control.

The headlamps will remain on for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. Use the information display controls to adjust the period of time that the headlamps will remain on. See **Information Displays** (page 86).

**Note:** *If you have autolamps switched on you can only switch the high beam headlamps on once the system has turned the headlamps on.*

## Windshield Wiper Activated Headlamps

When the headlamp switch is in the Autolamps position, the windshield wiper activated exterior lamps will turn on within 10 seconds when you switch the windshield wipers on. They turn off approximately 60 seconds after you switch the windshield wipers off.

This feature does not turn on the exterior lamps:

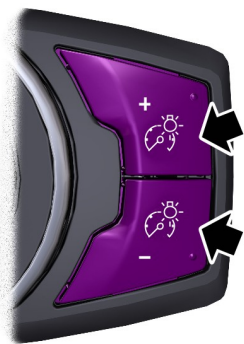
- During a single wipe.
- While the wipers are on to clear washer fluid during a wash condition.
- If the wipers are in automatic or intermittent modes.

**Note:** *If you have autolamps and autowipers switched on the low beam headlamps will turn on automatically when the windshield wipers operate continuously.*

## INSTRUMENT LIGHTING DIMMER

**Note:** You disable the manual dimmer when you adjust the setting to Auto Dimming in the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 86).

**Note:** If you disconnect the battery or it becomes discharged, the illuminated components will switch to the maximum setting.



E161902


Press repeatedly or press and hold until you reach the desired level.

## HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY

After you switch the ignition off, you can switch the headlamps on by pulling the direction indicator lever toward you. You will hear a short tone. The headlamps will switch off automatically after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door has been closed. You can cancel this feature by pulling the direction indicator toward you again or switching the ignition on.

## DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS

### WARNING


 Always remember to switch your headlamps on in low light situations or during inclement weather. The system does not activate the tail lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during these conditions. Failure to activate your headlamps under these conditions may result in a collision.


To switch the system on:


1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Switch the lighting control to the off or autolamp position.


## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL (If Equipped)


### WARNINGS

 The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. A manual override may be necessary if the system fails to switch the high beam on or off.

 A manual override may be required when approaching other road users such as cyclists.

 Do not use the system in fog.

 In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. A manual override may be necessary in these cases.

 The system may not deactivate the high beam if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles (for example guard rails).

# Lighting

## WARNINGS



Check and replace wiper blades regularly to ensure the camera sensor has a clear view through the windscreen. Replacement wiper blades must be the correct length.

**Note:** Keep the windscreen free from obstructions such as bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.

**Note:** Reflective road signs may be detected as oncoming traffic and the headlamps will be switched to low beam.

**Note:** Always fit Ford Original Parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs may reduce system performance.

The system will automatically switch on high beams if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. If it detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps, or street lighting ahead the system will switch off high beam before it can distract other road users. Low beam will remain on.

A camera sensor is centrally mounted behind the windshield of your vehicle. This monitors conditions continuously to decide when to switch the high beams on and off.

Once the system is active the high beam will switch on if:

- It is dark enough to require the use of high beams and
- there is no traffic or street lighting ahead and
- vehicle speed is greater than 25 mph (40 km/h).

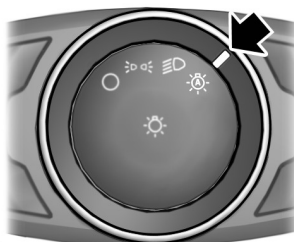
The high beam will switch off if:

- The ambient light is high enough that high beam is not required.
- An approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps are detected.
- Street lighting is detected.

- Vehicle speed falls below 19 mph (30 km/h).
- The camera sensor is too hot or becomes blocked.

## Activating the System

Switch the system on using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 86). Turn the switch to the autolamps position. See **Autolamps** (page 64).



E142451

The indicator will illuminate to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

## Manually Overriding the System



E169254

Push or pull the lever to switch between high and low beam.

**Note:** This is a temporary override and the system will return to automatic operation after a short period.

# Lighting

To permanently switch the system off, use the information display menu or turn the lighting control switch to the headlamps position.

## FRONT FOG LAMPS



E132709

Press the control to switch the fog lamps on or off.

You can switch the fog lamps on when the lighting control is in any position except off.

**Note:** Only use fog lamps during reduced visibility, for example, fog, snow or heavy rain.

**Note:** If you switch autolamps on, you can only switch the fog lamps on once autolamps has turned the headlamps on.

## REAR FOG LAMPS



E132710

Press the control to switch the fog lamps on or off.

You can only switch the rear fog lamps on when either the front fog lamps or low beam headlamps are on.

**Note:** Only use the rear fog lamps when visibility is less than 164 feet (50 meters).

**Note:** Do not use the rear fog lamps when it is raining or snowing.

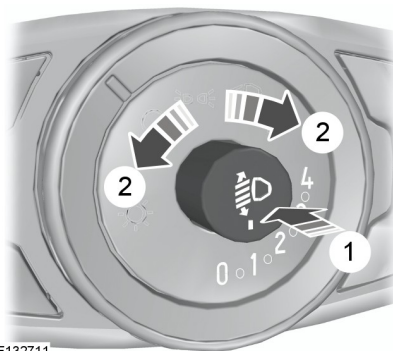
**Note:** If you switch autolamps on, you can only switch the fog lamps on once autolamps has turned the headlamps on.

## HEADLAMP LEVELING

Adjust the level of the headlamp beams according to your vehicle load.

Set the headlamp leveling control to zero when your vehicle is unloaded. Set the headlamp beams to give between 115–328 ft (35–100 m) of road surface illumination when your vehicle is partially or fully loaded.

To adjust the level of the headlamp beams:



E132711

1. Press to release the control.
2. Rotate the control to the required setting.

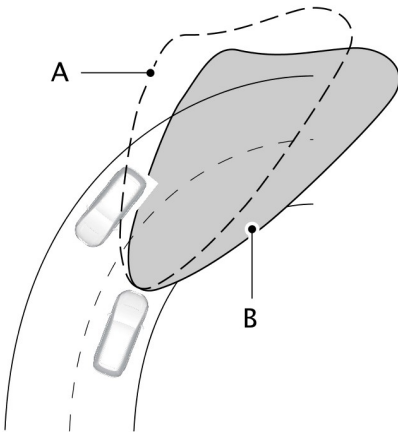
# Lighting

3. Press to close the control.

## ADAPTIVE HEADLAMPS

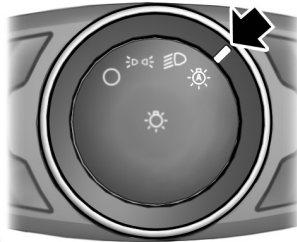
The headlamp beams move in the same direction as the steering wheel. This provides more visibility when driving around curves.

- A. Without adaptive headlamps  
B. With adaptive headlamps



E161714

The system will only work with the lighting control switch in the autolamp position.



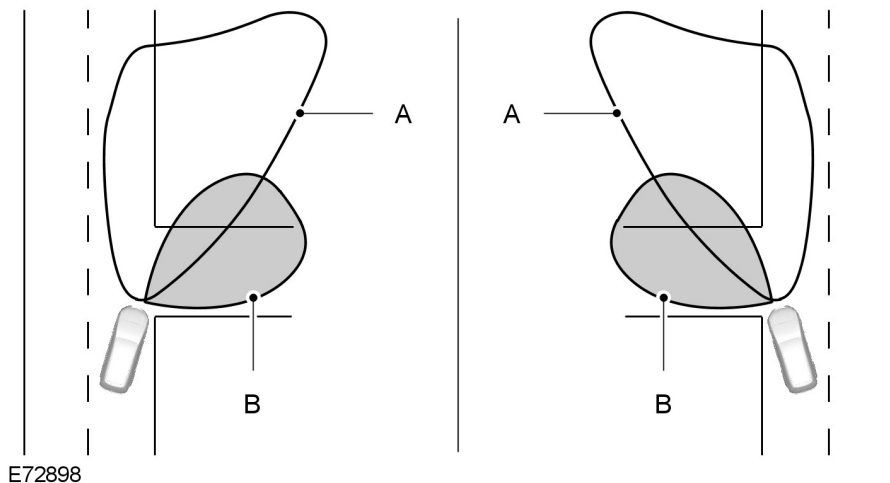
E142451

**Note:** There is a delay of two to five seconds before the system will operate when the vehicle is driven.

**Note:** The system is only active at speeds above 3 mph (5 km/h).

The system has a power-up movement check feature. When the vehicle is started, the lamps track left to right, then back to center to alert the driver that the system is working properly.

## CORNERING LAMPS



- A Headlamp beam
- B Cornering lamp beam

The cornering lamps illuminate the inside of a corner when you are turning.

## DIRECTION INDICATORS



E169255

Push the lever up or down to use the direction indicators.

# Lighting

**Note:** Tap the lever up or down to make the direction indicators flash three times to indicate a lane change.

## INTERIOR LAMPS

The lamps will turn on when you have met one of the following conditions:

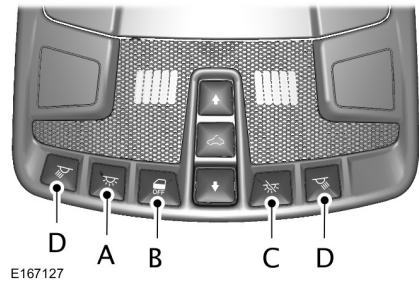
- You open any door.
- You press a remote control button.
- You press button A on the front interior lamp.

### Front Interior Lamp

**Note:** The front interior lamp buttons are on the overhead console. The exact location of each button on the overhead console depends upon which roof, moonroof, and window shade features are equipped on the vehicle.

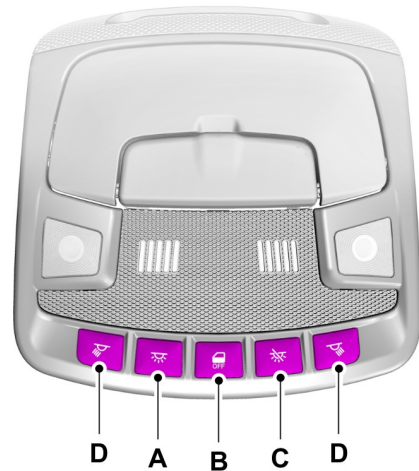
**Note:** Press button C to switch the door function off when you open any door. The indicator lamp will light amber when the door function is off. When the door function is off and you open a door, the courtesy and door lamps will stay off. Press button C again to switch the door function back on. The indicator lamp will light blue when the door function is on. When the door function is on and you open a door, the courtesy and door lamps will light.

### Type 1



- A All lamps on button
- B Door function button
- C All lamps off button
- D Individual dome lamps

### Type 2



- A All lamps on button
- B Door function button



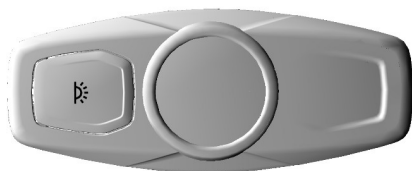
# Lighting

---

- C All lamps off button
- D Individual dome lamps

You can switch individual map lamps on independently by pressing a map lens.

## **Rear Interior Lamp (If Equipped)**



E169470

You can switch dome lamps on by pressing the button.

## **AMBIENT LIGHTING**

The ambient lighting system is adjusted with the touchscreen system. See **SYNC™ 2** (page 343). See **SYNC™ 2** (page 343).

# Windows and Mirrors

## POWER WINDOWS

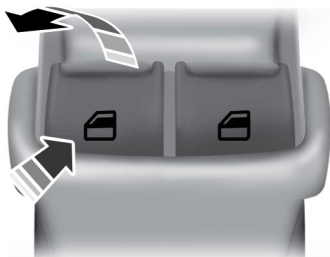
### WARNINGS



Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. They may seriously injure themselves.



When closing the power windows, you should verify they are free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.



E146043

**Note:** You may hear a pulsing noise when just one of the windows is open. Lower the opposite window slightly to reduce this noise.

Press the switch to open the window.

Lift the switch to close the window.

### One-Touch Down

Press the switch fully and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

### One-Touch Up

Lift the switch fully and release it. Press or lift it again to stop the window.

## Bounce-Back

The window will stop automatically while closing. It reverses some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

### Overriding the Bounce-Back Feature

#### WARNING



When you override the bounce-back feature the window will not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

Pull up the window switch and hold within a few seconds of the window reaching the bounce-back position. The window travels up with no bounce-back protection. The window stops if you release the switch before the window closes fully.

## Window Lock



E195228

Press the control to lock or unlock the rear window controls. It will illuminate when you lock the rear window controls.

## Accessory Delay

You can use the window switches for several minutes after you switch the ignition off or until you open either front door.

# Windows and Mirrors

## GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

You can use the remote control to operate the windows with the ignition off.

**Note:** You can enable or disable this feature in the information display or see an authorized dealer. See (page 86).

**Note:** To operate this feature, accessory delay must not be active.

## Opening the Windows

You can only open the windows for a short time after you unlock your vehicle with the remote control. After you unlock your vehicle, press and hold the remote control unlock button to open the windows and vent the moonroof. Release the button once movement starts. Press the lock or unlock button to stop movement.

## Closing the Windows

### WARNING



When closing the windows and moonroof, you should verify they are free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.

To close the windows and moonroof, press and hold the remote control lock button. Release the button once movement starts. Press the lock or unlock button to stop movement.

## EXTERIOR MIRRORS

### Power Exterior Mirrors

### WARNING



Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving.



E 195229

- A Left-hand mirror.
- B Adjustment control.
- C Right-hand mirror.

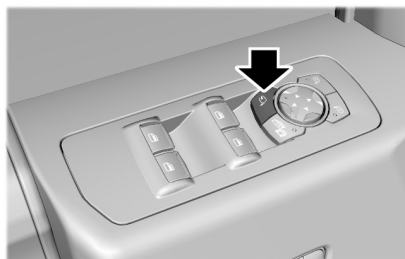
To adjust a mirror:

1. Press A or C to select the mirror you want to adjust. The control lights.
2. Press B to adjust the mirror's position.
3. Press the mirror control again. The light turns off.

## Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors

Push the mirror toward the door window glass. Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

## Power-Folding Mirrors (If Equipped)



E 195334

# Windows and Mirrors

To fold both mirrors, make sure you switch your vehicle on (with the ignition in accessory mode or the engine running) and then:

1. Press the control to fold the mirrors.
2. Press the control again to unfold.

**Note:** *Once you press the control, you cannot stop the mirrors midway through their movement. Wait until the mirrors stop moving and press the control again.*

## Auto-Folding Mirrors

**Note:** *The auto-fold mirrors operate only if they are in an unfolded position. If you folded the mirrors using the power-folding control, then you must unfold the mirrors using the power-folding control so the auto-fold feature can work.*

The mirrors fold automatically when you lock the vehicle. The mirrors unfold when you unlock the vehicle.

## Loose Mirror

If your power-folding mirrors are manually folded, they may not work properly even after you re-position them. You need to reset them if they:

- Vibrate while driving or feel loose.
- Do not stay in the folded or unfolded position.

To reset the power-fold feature:

1. Use the power-folding mirror control to fold and unfold the mirrors.
2. When you hear one or both of the mirrors make a loud noise, it means that you reset the mirrors successfully. This noise is normal.
3. Repeat this process each time the mirrors are manually folded.

Even though the power-folding mirrors typically operate electronically, you can still fold and unfold them manually. After any manual adjustment, however, the power-folding mirrors become unsynchronized, even after repositioning them.

An unsynchronized mirror may:

- Not fold or unfold normally.
- Not stay in its set position.
- Feel loose or even vibrate at normal driving speeds.

You can reset the mirrors by doing the following:

1. Use the power-folding mirror control to fold and unfold the mirrors.
2. When you hear one or both of the mirrors make a loud noise, it means that you reset the mirrors successfully. This noise is normal.
3. Repeat this process each time the power-folding mirrors fold or unfold manually.

## Reverse Mirror Dipping

One of your exterior mirrors automatically dips down when you place your vehicle into reverse (R). This feature gives you a view of the curb.

To use, do the following:

1. Select a mirror using the power mirror control.
2. When you place your vehicle into reverse (R), the mirror automatically dips.

The exterior mirror automatically returns to its original position when:

- Your vehicle speed exceeds 5 mph (10 km/h).
- Your vehicle is no longer in reverse (R).
- You switched the power mirror control off.

# Windows and Mirrors

The mirror automatically adjusts to a set position, but you can change the position by doing the following:

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Select the mirror you want to re-position.
3. Put your vehicle into reverse (R) and let the mirror automatically dip to its set position.
4. When the mirror is in its dipped position and is no longer moving, re-position it to your preference.
5. Put your vehicle into park (P).
6. Use the memory preset control to save the position. See **Memory Function** (page 131).

## Heated Exterior Mirrors (If Equipped)

See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 121).

## Memory Mirrors (If Equipped)

You can save and recall the mirror positions through the memory function. See **Memory Function** (page 131).

## Auto-Dimming Feature (If Equipped)

The driver exterior mirror automatically dims when the interior auto-dimming mirror turns on.

## Direction Indicator Mirrors (If Equipped)

The outer portion of the appropriate mirror housing blinks when you switch on the direction indicator.

## Blind Spot Monitor (If Equipped)

See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 194).

## INTERIOR MIRROR

### WARNING



Do not adjust the mirror when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum or ammonia-based cleaning products.

You can adjust the interior mirror to your preference. Some mirrors also have a second pivot point. This lets you move the mirror head up or down and from side to side.

Pull the tab below the mirror toward you to reduce glare at night.

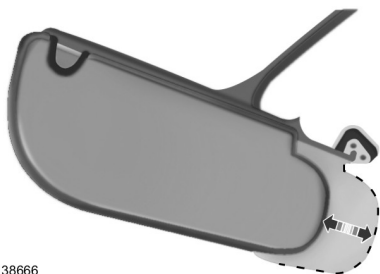
## Auto-Dimming Mirror (If Equipped)

**Note:** Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror. Mirror performance may be affected. A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint may also block light from reaching the sensor.

The mirror will dim automatically to reduce glare when bright lights are detected from behind your vehicle. It will automatically return to normal reflection when you select reverse gear to make sure you have a clear view when backing up.

# Windows and Mirrors

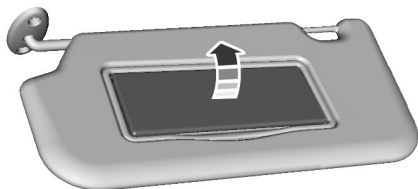
## SUN VISORS



E138666

Rotate the sun visor toward the side window and extend it rearward for extra shade.

## Illuminated Vanity Mirror



E162197

Lift the cover to switch the lamp on.

## MOONROOF

### WARNINGS



Do not let children play with the moonroof or leave them unattended in the vehicle. They may seriously hurt themselves.

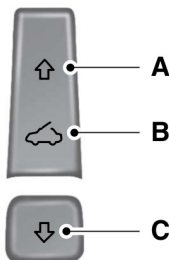
### WARNINGS



When closing the moonroof, you should verify that it is free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the roof opening.

The sliding shade can be manually opened or closed when the moonroof is closed. Pull the shade toward the front of the vehicle to close it.

The moonroof controls are located on the overhead console and have a one-touch open and close feature. To stop it during one-touch operation, touch the control a second time.



E144499

- A Open
- B Vent
- C Close

## Opening and Closing the Moonroof

Touch (A) to open the moonroof. It will stop short of the fully opened position.

**Note:** *This position helps to reduce wind noise or rumbling which may happen with the moonroof fully open. Touch (A) again to fully open the moonroof.*

Touch (C) to close the moonroof.

# Windows and Mirrors

---

## **Bounce-Back**

The moonroof will stop automatically and reverse some distance if an obstacle is detected while closing.

Touch and hold (C) within two seconds of a bounce-back event to override this function.

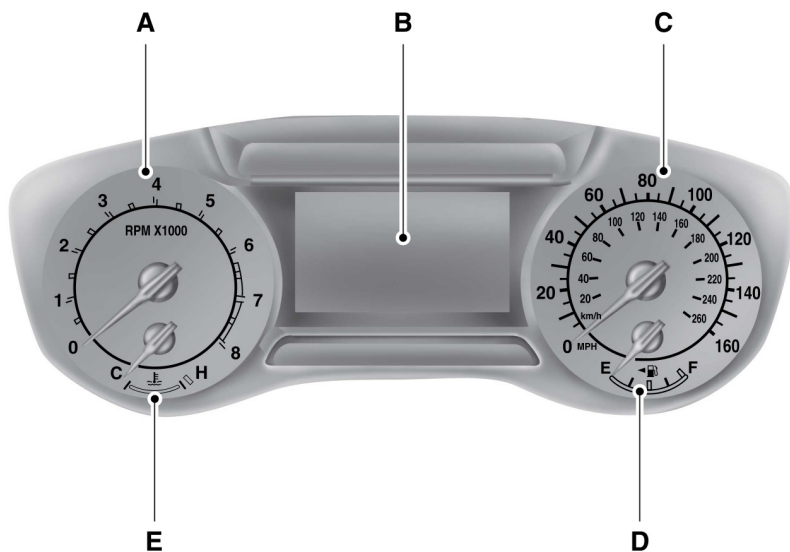
## **Venting the Moonroof**

Touch (B) to vent the moonroof. Touch (C) to close it.

# Instrument Cluster

## GAUGES

### Type 1 and 2



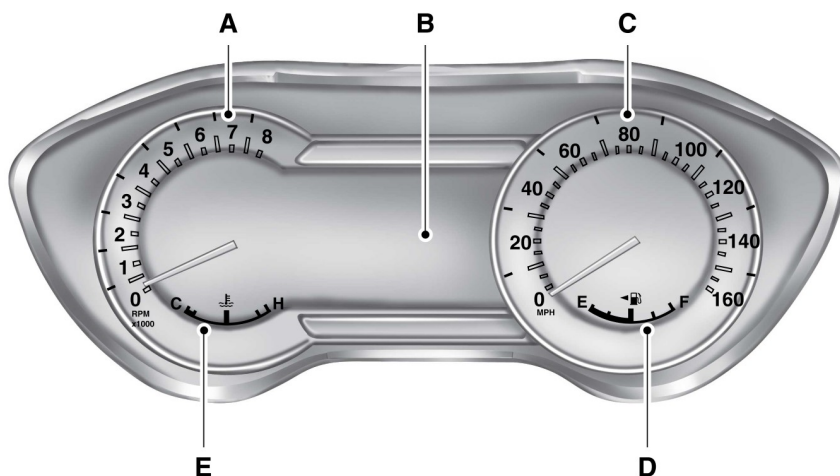
E144485

- A Tachometer
- B Information Display
- C Speedometer
- D Fuel Gauge
- E Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge



# Instrument Cluster

## Type 3



E152749

- A Tachometer
- B Information Display
- C Speedometer
- D Fuel Gauge
- E Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

## Information Display

### Odometer

Located in the bottom of the information display Registers the accumulated distance your vehicle has traveled.

### Outside Air Temperature

Shows the outside air temperature.

## Compass

Displays the vehicle's heading direction.

## Trip Computer

See **General Information** (page 86).

## Vehicle Settings and Personalization

See **General Information** (page 86).

# Instrument Cluster

## Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

Shows the temperature of the engine coolant. At normal operating temperature, the needle will remain in the center section. If the needle enters the red section, the engine is overheating. Stop the engine, switch the ignition off and determine the cause once the engine has cooled down.

**Note:** *Do not restart the engine until the cause of overheating has been resolved.*

### WARNING



Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

## Fuel Gauge

**Note:** *The fuel gauge may vary slightly when your vehicle is moving or on a gradient.*

Switch the ignition on. The fuel gauge will indicate approximately how much fuel is left in the fuel tank. The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

### Variations:

Driving type (fuel economy conditions)	Fuel gauge position	Distance-to-empty
Highway driving	1/16th	35 miles to 80 miles (56 km to 129 km)
Severe duty driving (trailer towing, extended idle)	1/16th	35 miles (56km)

The needle should move toward F when you refuel your vehicle. If the needle points to E after adding fuel, this indicates your vehicle needs service soon.

After refueling some variability in needle position is normal:

- It may take a short time for the needle to reach F after leaving the gas station. This is normal and depends upon the slope of pavement at the gas station.
- The fuel amount dispensed into the tank is a little less or more than the gauge indicated. This is normal and depends upon the slope of pavement at the gas station.
- If the gas station nozzle shuts off before the tank is full, try a different gas pump nozzle.

### Low Fuel Reminder

A low fuel reminder triggers when the fuel gauge needle is at 1/16th.

# Instrument Cluster

## WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

The following warning lamps and indicators alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious. Some lamps illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

**Note:** Some warning indicators appear in the information display and operate the same as a warning lamp but do not illuminate when you start your vehicle.

### Adaptive Cruise Control Lamp



The speed control system indicator light changes color to indicate what mode the system is in: See **Using Cruise Control** (page 181).

**On (white light):** Illuminates when the adaptive cruise control system is turned on. Turns off when the speed control system is turned off.

**Engaged (green light):** Illuminates when the adaptive cruise control system is engaged. Turns off when the speed control system is disengaged.

### Anti-Lock Braking System Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. You will continue to have the normal braking system (without anti-lock braking system) unless the brake system warning lamp is also illuminated. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

### Automatic High Beam Lamp



It will illuminate when this feature is on. See **Automatic High Beam Control** (page 65).

### Auto Start-stop Lamp



It will illuminate to inform you when the engine shuts down or in conjunction with a message.

### Battery Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when driving, this indicates a malfunction. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

### Blind Spot Monitor Indicator



It will illuminate when you switch this feature off or in conjunction with a message. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 194). See **Information Messages** (page 96).

### Brake System Warning Lamp



It will illuminate when you engage the parking brake with the ignition on.

If it illuminates when you are driving, check that the parking brake is not engaged. If the parking brake is not engaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

# Instrument Cluster

## WARNING



Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It will take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.

## Cruise Control Indicator



It will illuminate when you switch this feature on. See **Using Cruise Control** (page 181).

## Decklid Ajar Indicator



It will illuminate when the ignition is on and the decklid is not completely closed.

## Direction Indicator



Illuminates when the left or right direction indicator or the hazard warning flasher is turned on. If the indicators stay on or flash faster, check for a burnt out bulb. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 252).

## Door Ajar Indicator



It will illuminate when the ignition is on and any door is not completely closed.

## Electric Park Brake Warning Lamp



It will illuminate when the electric parking brake has a malfunction.

## Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Lamp



It will illuminate when the engine or motor coolant temperature is high. Stop your vehicle as soon as possible and contact your authorized dealer.

## Engine Oil Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving do not continue your journey, even if the oil level is correct. Have your vehicle checked.



If it illuminates with the engine running or when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 246).

## Fasten Safety Belt Warning Lamp



It will illuminate and a chime will sound to remind you to fasten your safety belt. See **Safety Belt Minder** (page 26).

## Front Airbag Warning Lamp



If the warning lamp does not illuminate during start up, remains on or flashes, the system may be disabled.

Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

## Front Fog Lamps Indicator



It will illuminate when you switch the front fog lamps on.

# Instrument Cluster

## Frost Warning Lamp

### WARNING



Even if the temperature rises to above 39°F (4°C) there is no guarantee that the road is free of hazards caused by inclement weather.



It will illuminate when the outside air temperature is 39°F (4°C) or below.

## Fuel Operated Heater Enabled Indicator



It will illuminate when you switch the fuel operated heater on.

## Fuel Operated Heater Operating Indicator



It will illuminate to inform you the fuel operated heater is currently in operation.

## Glow Plug Indicator



With the key in the on position, illuminates when the glow plug heat is necessary as a starting aid. Wait until the light goes off before starting.

After you start the engine, the light should turn off. When the engine is cold, the light should always illuminate for a short period.

## Heads Up Display (If Equipped)



A red beam of lights will illuminate on the windshield in certain instances when using adaptive cruise control or the pre-collision warning system. It will also light momentarily when you start your vehicle to make sure the display works.

## High Beam Indicator



It will illuminate when you switch the high beam headlamps on. It will flash when you use the headlamp flasher.

## Hood Ajar Warning Lamp



It will illuminate when the ignition is on and the hood is not completely closed.

## Lane Keeping Aid Indicator



It will illuminate when you activate the lane keeping system.

## Liftgate Ajar Warning Lamp



It will illuminate when the liftgate is not completely closed.

## Low Beam Malfunction Warning Lamp



It will illuminate when there is a malfunction with the low beam headlamp bulb.

## Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

## Low Tire Pressure Warning Lamp



It will illuminate when your tire pressure is low. If the lamp remains on with the engine running or when driving, check your tire pressure as soon as possible.

# Instrument Cluster

It will also illuminate momentarily when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

## Parking Lamps Indicator



It will illuminate when you switch the parking lamps on.

## Powertrain Fault



It will illuminate when a powertrain or an all-wheel drive fault has been detected. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

## Rear Fog Lamps Indicator



It will illuminate when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

## Service Engine Soon



If the service engine soon indicator light stays illuminated after the engine is started, it indicates that the On Board Diagnostics system (OBD) has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emissions control system. Refer to On board diagnostics (OBD) in the Fuel and Refueling chapter for more information about having your vehicle serviced.

If the light is blinking, engine misfire is occurring which could damage your catalytic converter. Drive in a moderate fashion (avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration) and have your vehicle serviced immediately.

## WARNING



Under engine misfire conditions, excessive exhaust temperatures could damage the catalytic converter, the fuel system, interior floor coverings or other vehicle components, possibly causing a fire. Have an authorized dealer service your vehicle immediately.

The service engine soon indicator light illuminates when the ignition is first turned on prior to engine start to check the bulb and to indicate whether the vehicle is ready for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) testing.

Normally, the service engine soon light will stay on until the engine is cranked, then turn itself off if no malfunctions are present. However, if after 15 seconds the service engine soon light blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing.

## Shift Indicator



It will illuminate to inform you that shifting to a higher or lower gear as indicated may give better fuel economy and lower CO2 emissions. It will not illuminate during periods of high acceleration, braking or when the clutch pedal is pressed.



## Speed Limiter



It will illuminate when you switch on the speed limiter system. See **Speed Limiter** (page 189).

# Instrument Cluster

## Stability Control Warning Lamp



It will flash when the system is active. If it remains illuminated or does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, this indicates a malfunction. During a malfunction the system will switch off. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately. See **Using Stability Control** (page 166).

## Stability Control Off Indicator



It will illuminate when you switch the system off. It will go out when you switch the system back on or when you switch the ignition off. See **Using Stability Control** (page 166).

## Traffic Sign Recognition Road Condition Indicator



It will illuminate when the road condition is prohibiting traffic sign recognition.

## Traffic Sign Recognition Speed Limit Indicator



It will illuminate when you have exceeded the speed limit for traffic sign recognition.

## Water-In-Fuel Warning Lamp



It will illuminate when there is excess water in the fuel filter. Drain off the water immediately. See **Fuel Quality** (page 149).

## AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS

### Key in Ignition Warning Chime

Sounds when you open the driver's door and you have left the key in the ignition with it in the off or accessory position.

### Keyless Warning Alert (If Equipped)

Sounds the horn twice when you exit your vehicle with the intelligent access key, after the last door is closed and your keyless vehicle is in RUN, indicating your vehicle is still on.

### Headlamps On Warning Chime

Sounds when you remove the key from the ignition and open the driver's door and you have left the headlamps or parking lamps on.

### Parking Brake On Warning Chime

Sounds when you have left the parking brake on and drive your vehicle. If the warning chime remains on after you have released the parking brake, have the system checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

# Information Displays

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### WARNING

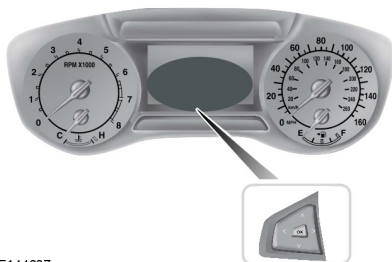


Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

You can control various systems on your vehicle using the information display controls on the steering wheel.

The information display shows the corresponding information.

## Information Display Controls (Type 1 and 2)



E144637

- Press the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through and highlight the options within a menu.
- Press the right arrow button to enter a submenu.
- Press the left arrow button to exit a submenu.
- Press and hold the left arrow button at any time to return to the main menu display (escape button).
- Press the **OK** button to choose and confirm settings or messages.

### Menu

You can access the menu using the information display control.

**Note:** It may describe options not fitted to the vehicle you have purchased.

### Trip 1 and 2

Digital Speedo

Distance to E

Trip Odometer

Trip Timer

Fuel Used



## Information Displays

<b>Trip 1 and 2</b>
Average Fuel
Outside Temp
All Values <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Type 2

- Resetting the Trip Computer — Press and hold OK on the current screen to reset the respective trip, distance, time and fuel information.
- Digital Speedo - Shows a digital display of your vehicle speed.
- Distance to E - Shows the approximate distance your vehicle can travel before running out of fuel.
- Trip Odometer — Registers the distance of individual journeys.
- Trip Timer — The timer stops when you turn your vehicle off and restarts when you restart your vehicle.
- Fuel Used — Shows the amount of fuel used for a given trip.
- Average Fuel — Shows the average fuel economy for a given trip.
- Outside Temp — Shows the outside air temperature.
- All Values — Shows the Distance to E, Trip Odometer, Trip Timer and Average Fuel.

**Note:** Press and hold **OK** on the current screen to reset the respective trip, distance, time and fuel information.

<b>Fuel Economy</b>
Distance to E
Inst Fuel Economy Avg MPG <sup>1</sup>
Average Fuel
Fuel History <sup>1</sup>
Average Speed

# Information Displays

Fuel Economy
All Values <sup>1</sup>
Auto StartStop

<sup>1</sup> Type 2

- Distance to Empty - Shows the approximate distance your vehicle can travel before running out of fuel.
- Inst Fuel Economy - Shows a visual graph of your instantaneous fuel economy along with your Avg MPG since the function was last reset.
- Long Term Fuel Economy - Shows your long term fuel economy.
- Fuel History - Shows a bar chart of your fuel history.
- Average Speed - Shows your vehicles average speed since the function was last reset.
- All Values — Shows all fuel economy values (DTE, Inst Fuel Econ, Long Term Fuel, Avg Speed).
- Auto StartStop - Available Auto Start-Stop messaging will provide details about what is happening with your system. See **Information Messages** (page 96).

**Note:** You can reset your average fuel economy by pressing and holding the OK button on the left hand steering wheel controls.

Driver Assist		
Traction Ctrl - check enabled or uncheck disabled		
Active City Stop - check enabled or uncheck disabled		
Blind Spot - check enabled or uncheck disabled <sup>1</sup>		
Cross Traffic - check enabled or uncheck disabled <sup>1</sup>		
Cruise Control <sup>1</sup>	Adaptive or Normal	
Driver Alert <sup>1</sup>	Driver Alert or Driver Alert Display	
Driver Select Suspension <sup>1</sup>	Sport, Normal or Comfort	
Hill Start Assist - check enabled or uncheck disabled		
Intelligent AWD <sup>1</sup>		
Lane Keeping System <sup>1</sup>	Mode	Alert, Aid or Both
	Intensity	High, Normal or Low

# Information Displays

Driver Assist		
Pre-Collision	Alert Sensitivity	High, Normal or Low
	Dist. Indication - check enabled or uncheck disabled	
	Active Braking - check enabled or uncheck disabled	
Front Park Aid - check enabled or uncheck disabled		
Rear Park Aid - check enabled or uncheck disabled		
Traffic Signs <sup>1</sup>	Display	
	Always shown - check enabled or uncheck disabled	
	Speed Warning	Limits up to 65km/h or Limits above 65km/h
		Chime
Tire Monitor	Tire Pressure	
Trailer Sway - check enabled or uncheck disabled		

<sup>1</sup> Type 2

Settings		
Vehicle	Alarm	All Sensors Active or Perimeter Sensing
		Ask on Exit - check enabled or uncheck disabled
	Auto Engine Off - check enabled or uncheck disabled	
	Chimes	Park Slot found - check enabled or uncheck disabled
		Information - check enabled or uncheck disabled
	DTE calculation	Normal or Towing
	Easy Entry/Exit - check enabled or uncheck disabled	
	Lighting	Adaptive Headlamps <sup>1</sup>
		Adaptive Headlamps - check enabled or uncheck disabled

# Information Displays

Settings					
			Traffic (R/L)		Right or Left Hand Traffic
		Auto Highbeam - check enabled or uncheck disabled			
		Autolamp delay		Off or XX Seconds	
		Daytime Lights - check enabled or uncheck disabled			
	Locks	Autolock - check enabled or uncheck disabled			
		Autounlock - check enabled or uncheck disabled			
		Relock - check enabled or uncheck disabled			
		Mislock - check enabled or uncheck disabled			
		Remote Unlock		All Doors or Driver First	
		Switch Inhibit - check enabled or uncheck disabled			
	Power Mirror	Autofold - check enabled or uncheck disabled			
		Reverse Tilt - check enabled or uncheck disabled			
	Oil Life Reset	XXX% - Hold OK to Reset			
	Park Heater	Continue Heat - check enabled or uncheck disabled			
		Programming	One Time	Select day of the week	
			Time 1 or Time 2		
	Park Lock Control - check enabled or uncheck disabled				
	Power Liftgate	Enable or Disable Switch			
	Seatbelts				
	Silent Mode - check enabled or uncheck disabled <sup>1</sup>				
	Windows	Remote Open or Remote Close			
	Wipers	Courtesy Wipe, Rain Sensing or Reverse Wiper			
MyKey	Create MyKey	Hold OK to Create MyKey			

# Information Displays

Settings		
	911 Assist	Always On or User Selectable
	Do Not Disturb	On or Off
	Traction Ctrl	Always On or User Selectable
	Max Speed	Choose desired speed or Off
	Speed Minder	Choose desired speed or Off
	Volume Limiter - check enabled or uncheck disabled	
	Clear MyKeys	Hold OK to Clear All MyKeys
Display	Distance	Miles & Gallons, l/100km or km/l
	Temperature	°Fahrenheit or °Celsius
	Tire Pressure	psi, kPa or bar
	Language	Choose your applicable setting

<sup>1</sup> Type 2

# Information Displays

## Information Display Controls (Type 3)



E182848

- Press the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through and highlight the options within a menu.
- Press the right arrow button to enter a submenu.
- Press the left arrow button to exit a submenu.
- Press and hold the left arrow button at any time to return to the main menu display (escape button).
- Press the **OK** button to choose and confirm settings or messages.

### Menu

You can access the menu using the information display control.

**Note:** *It may describe options not fitted to the vehicle you have purchased.*

### Trip 1 and 2

All Values

All Values — shows all trip values (Trip Timer, Odometer and Average Fuel).

**Note:** *You can reset your trip information by pressing and holding the OK button on the left hand steering wheel controls.*

### Fuel Economy

Instant Fuel Economy

Fuel History

Average Speed

Auto StartStop

- Inst Fuel Economy - shows a visual graph of your instantaneous fuel economy.
- Fuel History - shows a bar chart of your fuel history.
- Average Speed - shows your vehicles average speed since the function was last reset.
- Auto StartStop - available Auto Start-Stop messaging will provide details about what is happening with your system. See **Information Messages** (page 96).

**Note:** *You can reset your average fuel economy by pressing and holding the OK button on the left hand steering wheel controls.*

# Information Displays

Driver Assist		
Traction Control - check enabled or uncheck disabled		
Active City Stop - check enabled or uncheck disabled		
Adaptive Steering	Steering in "D"	Sport or Normal
	Steering in "S"	Sport or Normal
Blind Spot - check enabled or uncheck disabled		
Cross Traffic Alert - check enabled or uncheck disabled		
Cruise Control	Adaptive or Normal	
Driver Alert	Driver Alert or Driver Alert Display	
Hill Start Assist - check enabled or uncheck disabled		
Intelligent AWD		
Lane Keeping Sys	Mode	Alert, Aid or Both
	Intensity	High, Normal or Low
Pre-Collision	Alert Sensitivity	High, Normal or Low
	Dist. Indication - check enabled or uncheck disabled	
	Active Braking - check enabled or uncheck disabled	
Front Park Aid - check enabled or uncheck disabled		
Rear Park Aid - check enabled or uncheck disabled		
Traffic Signs	Display	
	Always shown - check enabled or uncheck disabled	
	Visual Warning	Limits up to 65km/h or Limits above 65km/h
		Chime
Tire Monitor	Tire Pressure	
Trailer Sway - check enabled or uncheck disabled		

# Information Displays

Settings					
Vehicle	Alarm	All Sensors Active or Perimeter Sensing			
		Ask on Exit - check enabled or uncheck disabled			
	Auto Engine Off - check enabled or uncheck disabled				
	Chimes	Park Slot found - check enabled or uncheck disabled			
		Information - check enabled or uncheck disabled			
	Driver Suspension	Sport, Normal or Comfort			
	DTE Calculation	Normal or Towing			
	Easy Entry/Exit - check enabled or uncheck disabled				
	Lighting	Adaptive Headlamps	Adaptive Headlamps - check enabled or uncheck disabled		
			Traffic Setup	Right or Left Hand Traffic	
	Auto Highbeam - check enabled or uncheck disabled				
	Autolamp Delay		Off or XX Seconds		
	Daytime Lights - check enabled or uncheck disabled				
	Locks	Autolock - check enabled or uncheck disabled			
		Autounlock - check enabled or uncheck disabled			
		Relock - check enabled or uncheck disabled			
		Mislock - check enabled or uncheck disabled			
		Remote Unlock		All Doors or Driver First	
		Switch Inhibit - check enabled or uncheck disabled			
	Mirror	Autofold - check enabled or uncheck disabled			
	Oil Life	XXX% - Hold OK to Reset			
	Park Heater	Continue Heat - check enabled or uncheck disabled			
		Heater Programming	One Time	Select day of the week	



# Information Displays

Settings				
			Time 1 or Time 2	
	Park Lock Control - check enabled or uncheck disabled			
	Power Liftgate	Enable or Disable Switch		
	Seatbelts			
	Windows	Remote Open or Remote Close		
	Wipers	Courtesy Wipe, Rain Sensing or Reverse Wiper		
MyKey	Create MyKey	Hold OK to Create MyKey		
	911 Assist	Always On or User Selectable		
	Do Not Disturb	On or Off		
	Traction Control	Always On or User Selectable		
	Max Speed	Choose desired speed or Off		
	Speed Minder	Choose desired speed or Off		
	Volume Limiter - check enabled or uncheck disabled			
	Clear MyKeys	Hold OK to Clear All MyKeys		
Display	Distance Unit	Miles & Gallons, l/100km or km/l		
	Temperature Unit	°Fahrenheit or °Celsius		
	Tire Pressure	psi, kPa or bar		
	Language	Choose your applicable setting		

# Information Displays

## INFORMATION MESSAGES

**Note:** Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all of the messages will display or be available.

**Note:** The information display may abbreviate or shorten certain messages.

Press the OK button to acknowledge and remove some messages from the information display.

The information display will automatically remove other messages after a short period of time.

You need to confirm certain messages before you can access the menus.



E144636

## Active City Stop

Message	Action
Active City Stop Auto Braking	See <b>Active City Stop</b> (page 200).
Active City Stop Sensor Blocked Clean Screen	See <b>Active City Stop</b> (page 200).
Active City Stop Malfunction	See <b>Active City Stop</b> (page 200).

## Active Park

Message	Action
Active Park Fault	The system requires service due to a malfunction. Contact an authorized dealer.

# Information Displays

## Adaptive Cruise Control

Message	Action
Adaptive Cruise Malfunction	A radar malfunction is preventing the adaptive cruise control from engaging. See <b>Using Adaptive Cruise Control</b> (page 182).
Adaptive Cruise Not Available	A condition exists such that the adaptive cruise cannot function properly. See <b>Using Adaptive Cruise Control</b> (page 182).
Adaptive Cruise Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	You have a blocked sensor due to bad weather, ice, mud or water in front of the radar sensor. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve. See <b>Using Adaptive Cruise Control</b> (page 182).
Normal Cruise Active Automatic Braking Turned Off	The system has disabled the automatic braking.
Front Sensor Not Aligned	A radar malfunction is preventing the adaptive cruise control from engaging.
Adaptive Cruise - Driver Resume Control	The adaptive cruise has reinstated controls to the driver.
Adaptive Cruise Speed Too Low to Activate	Your vehicle speed is too slow to activate the adaptive cruise.
Adaptive Cruise Shift Down	The adaptive cruise is automatically adjusting the gap distance and the driver needs to shift the transmission into a lower gear.

## Airbag

Message	Action
Occupant Sensor BLOCKED Remove Objects Near Passenger Seat	The system detects a malfunction due to a blocked sensor. Remove blockage.

# Information Displays

## Alarm

Message	Action
Vehicle Alarm To Stop Alarm, Start Vehicle.	Alarm triggered due to unauthorized entry. See <b>Anti-Theft Alarm</b> (page 51).
Alarm fault Service required	Displays when the system requires service due to a malfunction. Contact an authorized dealer.

## All-Wheel Drive

Message	Action
AWD Temporarily Disabled	The all-wheel drive system temporarily turns off to protect itself from overheating.
AWD OFF	The all-wheel drive system temporarily turns off to protect itself from overheating or if you are using the temporary spare tire.
AWD Restored	The all-wheel drive system will resume normal function and clear this message after driving a short distance with the road tire re-installed or after the system cools.
AWD Malfunction Service Required	The all-wheel drive system is not operating properly. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer.

## Automatic Engine Shutdown

Message	Action
Engine Shuts Off In {seconds to shut off:#0} Seconds	The engine is getting ready to shut off.
Engine Shut Off For Fuel Economy	The engine has shut off to help increase fuel economy.
Engine Shuts Off in {seconds to shut off:#0} Seconds Press Ok to Override	The engine is getting ready to shut off. You can press OK on the left steering wheel button to override the shut down.

# Information Displays

## Automatic High Beam Control

Message	Action
Front Camera Low Visibility Clean Screen	The front camera sensor has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield.
Front Camera Malfunction Service Required	The system requires service due to a malfunction. Contact an authorized dealer.
Front Camera Temporarily Not Available	The front camera sensor has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the sensor to cool down.

## Auto Start-Stop

Message	Action
Auto StartStop Press Brake to Start Engine	The engine needs to be restarted, press the brake pedal to start.
Auto StartStop Press Brake Harder to Activate	The engine needs to be restarted, press the brake pedal harder to start.
Auto StartStop Press Clutch to Start Engine	The engine needs to be restarted, press the clutch pedal to start.
Auto StartStop Press a Pedal to Start Engine	The engine needs to be restarted, press the clutch pedal to start. See <b>Auto-Start-Stop</b> (page 146).
Auto StartStop Select Neutral To Start Engine	Select neutral for the system to restart the engine. See <b>Auto-Start-Stop</b> (page 146). Select neutral for the system to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Shift to P, then Restart Engine	Select park for the system to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Manual Restart Required	The system is not functioning. A manual restart is required.
Auto StartStop Not Available	Conditions are not met for the Auto StartStop system to function properly.

# Information Displays

## Blind Spot Information and Cross Traffic Alert System

Message	Action
Blindspot System Fault	A fault with the system has occurred. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Blindspot Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	The system sensors are blocked. See <b>Blind Spot Information System</b> (page 194).
Cross Traffic Vehicle Coming From X	Displayed when the system detects a vehicle. See <b>Blind Spot Information System</b> (page 194).
Cross Traffic Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	The blind spot information system and cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. See <b>Blind Spot Information System</b> (page 194).
Cross Traffic System Fault	A fault with the system has occurred. Contact an authorized dealer.

## Climate Control

Message	Action
Auxiliary Heater On	The system is on. See <b>Climate Control</b> (page 111).
Auxiliary Heater Off	The system is off. See <b>Climate Control</b> (page 111).

## Diesel Messages

Message	Action
Engine Warming Please Wait {seconds:00} sec	In extremely cold weather, typically below $-15^{\circ}\text{F}$ ( $-26^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) and if the engine block heater is not utilized, your engine will not respond to accelerator pedal movement for 30 seconds. This restriction allows your engine to circulate the oil properly in order to avoid engine damage.
Water in Fuel Drain Filter	The water separator has reached a predetermined capacity and needs draining.
Fuel Pressure Low	A low fuel pressure condition has occurred due to cold, low fuel level or fuel filters need to be changed.
Oil Level Low Add Oil	A low oil level condition has occurred with the oil minder system. Check your engine oil level. If the problem persists, see an authorized dealer.

# Information Displays

## Doors and Locks

Message	Action
Driver Door Ajar	The door listed is not completely closed.
Passenger Door Ajar	The door listed is not completely closed.
Rear Left Door Ajar	The door listed is not completely closed.
Rear Right Door Ajar	The door listed is not completely closed.
Liftgate Ajar	The door listed is not completely closed.
Trunk Ajar	The boot is not completely closed.
Hood Ajar	The bonnet is not completely closed.
Switches Inhibited Security Mode	The system has disabled the door switches.
Child Lock Malfunction Service Required	There is a system malfunction with the child locks. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Factory Keypad Code {X X X X X}	The factory keypad code displays in the information display after system resets the keypad. See <b>Passive Anti-Theft System</b> (page 51).

## Driver Alert

Message	Action
Driver Alert Warning Rest Now	Stop and rest as soon as it is safe to do so.
Driver Alert Warning Rest Suggested	Take a rest break soon.

# Information Displays

## Electronic Stability Control

Message	Action
Service AdvanceTrac	The system detects a malfunction due to a blocked sensor.
AdvanceTrac Off	The traction control system status.
AdvanceTrac On	The traction control system status.
AdvanceTrac SPORT MODE	The traction control system status.

## Engine

Message	Action
High engine temperature Stop safely	Displays when the engine temperature is too high. Stop your vehicle in a safe place and allow the engine to cool. If the problem persists, see an authorized dealer. See <b>Engine Coolant Check</b> (page 247).
Engine fault Service now	Engine service is required. See an authorized dealer.
Water detected in fuel Service required	Displays when water is detected in the fuel. See an authorized dealer.
Engine oil level low Check level	Check the engine oil level See <b>Engine Oil Dipstick</b> (page 245).

## Fuel

Message	Action
Fuel Level Low	An early reminder of a low fuel condition.
Check Fuel Fill Inlet	The fuel fill inlet may not be properly closed.
Fuel Door Opening	Wait for up to 15 seconds while the fuel system depressurizes.
Fuel Door Open	The fuel system has finished depressurizing and you can begin to refuel.
Close Fuel Door	A reminder to close the fuel door.
Refuel Error See Manual	There is an error in attempting to refill your vehicle.



# Information Displays

## Hill Start Assist

Message	Action
Hill Start Assist Not Available	Displays when hill start assist is not available. Contact an authorized dealer.

## Keys and Keyless Entry

Message	Action
To START Press Brake	Displayed as a reminder to press the brake while starting the vehicle.
No Key Detected	The system does not detect a key in your vehicle. See <b>Keyless Starting</b> (page 138).
Restart Now or Key is Needed	You pressed the start/stop button to switch off the engine and your vehicle does not detect your intelligent access key inside your vehicle.
Full Accessory Power Active	Your vehicle is in the run ignition state.
Starting System Fault	There is a problem with your vehicle's starting system. See an authorized dealer for service.
Key Program Successful	You have successfully programmed an intelligent access key to the system.
Key Program Failure	You have failed to program an intelligent access key to the system.
Max Number of Keys Learned	You have programmed the maximum number of keys to the system.
Not Enough Keys Learned	You have not programmed enough keys to the system.
Key Battery Low Replace Soon	Displays when the key battery is low. Change the battery as soon as possible. See <b>Remote Control</b> (page 32).
Engine ON	Informs you that they you are exiting your vehicle and the engine is on.

# Information Displays

## Lane Keeping System

Message	Action
Lane Keeping Sys. Malfunction Service Required	The system has malfunctioned. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Front Camera Temporarily Not Available	The system has detected a condition that has caused the system to be temporarily unavailable.
Front Camera Low Visibility Clean Screen	The system has detected a condition that requires you to clean the windshield in order for it to operate properly.
Front Camera Malfunction Service Required	The system has malfunctioned. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Keep Hands on Steering Wheel	The system requests you to keep your hands on the steering wheel.

## Maintenance

Message	Action
Low Engine Oil Pressure	Stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible and turn off the engine. Check the oil level. If the warning stays on or continues to come on with your engine running, contact an authorized dealer.
Change Engine Oil Soon	The engine oil life remaining is 10% or less. See <b>Engine Oil Dipstick</b> (page 245).
Oil Change Required	Displays when the engine oil life is depleted and requires a change. See <b>Engine Oil Check</b> (page 246).
Brake Fluid Level Low	Indicates the brake fluid level is low and the brake system should be inspected immediately. See <b>Brake and Clutch Fluid Check</b> (page 248).
Check Brake System	The brake system needs servicing. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Contact an authorized dealer.
Engine Coolant Over Temperature	The engine coolant temperature is excessively high.

## Information Displays

Message	Action
Power Reduced to Lower Engine Temp	The engine has reduced power to help reduce high engine temperature.
Transport / Factory Mode	Your vehicle is still in Transport or Factory mode. This may not allow some features to operate properly. Contact an authorized dealer.
See Manual	The powertrain needs service due to a powertrain malfunction.

### MyKey

Message	Action
MyKey not Created	You cannot program a MyKey.
MyKey Active Drive Safely	Displays when MyKey is active.
Speed Limited to XX MPH/km/h	When switching on your vehicle and MyKey is in use, displays that the MyKey speed limit is on.
Near Vehicle Top Speed	Displays when a MyKey is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on and the vehicle speed is approaching 80 mph (130 km/h).
Vehicle at Top Speed of MyKey Setting	Displays when a MyKey is in use and the MyKey speed limit is reached.
Check Speed Drive Safely	Displays when MyKey is active.
Buckle Up to Unmute Audio	Displays when a MyKey is in use and Belt-Minder is activated.
AdvanceTrac On - MyKey Setting	With a MyKey in use, AdvanceTrac turns on.
Traction Control On - MyKey Setting	With a MyKey in use, traction control turns on.
MyKey Park Aid Cannot be Deactivated	Displays when a MyKey is in use and park aid is activated.
Lane Keeping Alert On MyKey Setting	With a MyKey in use, lane keeping alert turns on.

## Information Displays

### Park Aid

Message	Action
Check Front Park Aid	The system has detected a condition that requires service. Contact an authorized dealer. See <b>Rear Parking Aid</b> (page 167).
Check Rear Park Aid	The system has detected a condition that requires service. Contact an authorized dealer. See <b>Rear Parking Aid</b> (page 167).
Front Park Aid On Off	Displays the park aid status.
Rear Park Aid On Off	Displays the park aid status.

### Park Brake

Message	Action
Park Brake Engaged	Displays when the parking brake is set, the engine is running and the vehicle is driven more than 3 mph (5 km/h). If the warning stays on after the parking brake is released, contact an authorized dealer.
Park Brake Malfunction Service Now	The electric parking brake system has detected a condition that requires service. See an authorized dealer.
Park Brake Not Applied	The electric parking brake is not set.
Park Brake Maintenance Mode	The electric parking brake is running a diagnostic check.
Park Brake Use Switch to Release	The electric parking brake is set but you have not released it.
To Release: Press Brake and Switch	The electric parking brake is set but you have not released it and your vehicle is moving.
Park Brake Limited Function Service Required	The electric park brake system has detected a condition that requires service. See an authorized dealer.
Park Brake System Overheated	You have not released the electric parking brake causing it to overheat.

## Information Displays

Message	Action
Park Brake Not Released	The electric parking brake is set and you have started your vehicle.
Park Brake Applied	The electric parking brake is set.
Park Brake Released	You have released the electric parking brake.

### Power Steering

Message	Action
Steering Lock Fault Service Now	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service. See an authorized dealer.
Steering Loss Stop Safely	The power steering system is not working. Stop the vehicle a safe place. Contact an authorized dealer.
Steering Assist Fault Service Required	The power steering system is not working. Stop the vehicle a safe place. Contact an authorized dealer.

### Pre-Collision Warning System

Message	Action
Collision Warning Malfunction	A fault with the system has occurred. Contact an authorized dealer.
Collision Warning Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	You have a blocked sensor due to bad weather, ice, mud or water in front of the radar sensor. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve. See <b>Collision Warning System</b> (page 201).
Collision Warning Not Available	A fault with the system has occurred. Contact an authorized dealer.

### Seats

Message	Action
Memory Recall Not Permitted While Driving	A reminder that memory seats are not available while driving.
Memory {0} Saved	Shows where you have saved your memory setting.

# Information Displays

## Starting System

Message	Action
To START Press Brake	Displays when starting the vehicle as a reminder to apply the brake.
Cranking Time Exceeded	Displays when the vehicle fails to start.
Engine Start Pending Please Wait	The starter is attempting to start your vehicle.
Pending Start Cancelled	The system has cancelled the pending start.

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Message	Action
Tire Pressure Low	One or more tires on your vehicle has low tire pressure. See <b>Tire Pressure Monitoring System</b> (page 264).
Tire Pressure Monitor Fault	The tire pressure monitoring system is malfunctioning. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer. See <b>Tire Pressure Monitoring System</b> (page 264).
Tire Pressure Sensor Fault	A tire pressure sensor is malfunctioning or your spare tire is in use. See <b>Tire Pressure Monitoring System</b> (page 264). If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer.

## Towing

Message	Action
Trailer Sway Reduce Speed	Your trailer sway control has detected trailer sway so you need to reduce your speed.

# Information Displays

## Traction Control

Message	Action
Traction Control Off	The status of the traction control system. See <b>Using Traction Control</b> (page 165).
Traction Control On	The status of the traction control system. See <b>Using Traction Control</b> (page 165).
Spinout Detected Hazards Activated	A spinout has occurred and the hazards are on.

## Transmission

Message	Action
Transmission Malfunction Service Now	See an authorized dealer.
Transmission Over Temperature Stop Safely	The transmission is overheating and needs to cool. Stop in a safe place as soon as it's possible.
Transmission Overheating Stop Safely	Transmission is getting hot. Stop to let it cool or speed up.
Transmission Service Required	See an authorized dealer.
Transmission Too Hot Press Brake	The transmission is getting hot. Stop to let it cool.
Transmission Limited Function See Manual	The transmission has overheated and has limited functionality. See <b>Automatic Transmission</b> (page 155).
Transmission Warming Up Please Wait	The transmission is too cold. Wait for it to warm up before you drive.
Transmission Not in Park	Displays as a reminder to shift into park.
Press Brake Pedal	Displays to request the operator to apply the brake as needed by the transmission.
Transmission Adjusted	The transmission has adjusted the shift strategy.

## Information Displays

---

Message	Action
Transmission Adapt-Mode	The transmission is adjusting the shift strategy.
Transmission Indicat-Mode Lockup On	The transmission is locked and unable to select gears.
Transmission Indicat-Mode Lockup Off	The transmission is unlocked and free to select gears.



# Climate Control

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### Outside Air

Keep the air intakes in front of the windshield free from obstruction (such as snow or leaves) to allow the climate control system to function effectively.

### Recirculated Air

#### WARNING



Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to mist up. If the windows mist up, follow the settings for demisting the windshield.

The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. Outside air does not enter your vehicle.

### Heating

Heating performance depends on the temperature of the engine coolant.

### General Information on Controlling the Interior Climate

Fully close all the windows.

### Warming the Interior

Direct the air toward your feet. In cold or humid weather conditions, direct some of the air toward the windshield and the door windows.

### Cooling the Interior

Direct the air toward your face.

## Air Conditioning

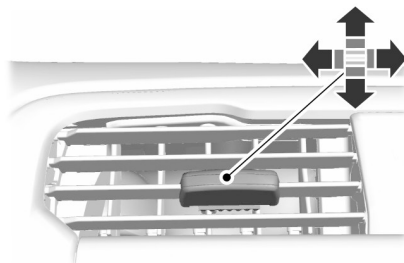
The system directs air through the evaporator for cooling. The evaporator extracts humidity from the air to help keep the windows free of mist. The system directs the resulting condensation to the outside of your vehicle, which may cause a small pool to form under your vehicle. This is normal.

**Note:** The air conditioning operates only when the temperature is above 39°F (4°C).

**Note:** When you use air conditioning, your vehicle uses more fuel.

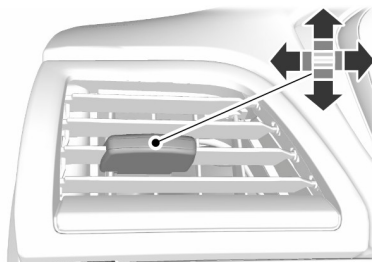
## AIR VENTS

### Center Air Vents



E179688

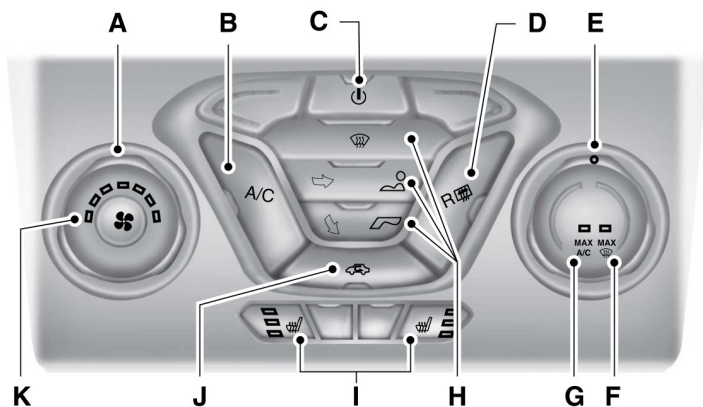
### Side Air Vents



E179687

# Climate Control

## MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL



E144491

- A **Fan speed control:** Adjust the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.
- B **A/C:** Press the button to switch the air conditioning on or off. Air conditioning cools your vehicle using outside air. To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.
- Note:** In certain conditions (for example, maximum defrost), the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though the air conditioning is switched off.
- C **Power:** Press the button to switch the system on and off. When the system is off, it prevents outside air from entering the vehicle.
- D **Heated rear window:** Press the button to switch the heated rear window on and off. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 121).
- E **Temperature control:** Controls the temperature of the air circulated in your vehicle.
- F **MAX Defrost:** Adjust the control to turn on defrost. Outside air flows through the windshield vents, air conditioning automatically turns on, and fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice. The heated rear window also automatically turns on when you select maximum defrost.
- Note:** To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

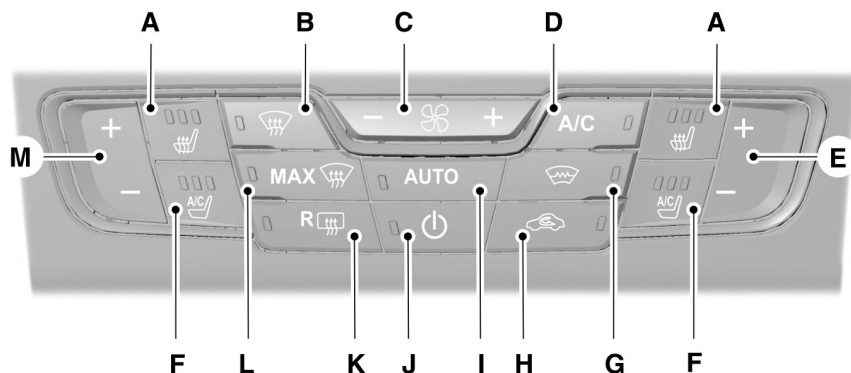
# Climate Control

---

- G **MAX A/C:** Adjust the control for maximum cooling. Recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents, air conditioning automatically turns on, and the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed.
- H **Air distribution control:** Adjust the control to turn airflow from the windshield, instrument panel, or footwell vents on or off. You can distribute air through any combination of these vents.  
**Note:** At least one of these buttons illuminates on when the system is on.
- I **Heated seats (if equipped):** Press the button to switch the heated seats on and off. See **Heated Seats** (page 133).
- J **Recirculated air:** Press the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air. The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This can reduce the time needed to cool the interior and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.  
**Note:** Recirculated air may also turn on and off automatically in instrument panel or instrument panel and floor airflow modes during hot weather to improve cooling efficiency.
- K **Fan speed indicator:** Illuminates to indicate fan speed.

# Climate Control

## AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: HEATED WINDSHIELD



E186188

- A **Heated seats (if equipped):** Press the button to switch the heated seats on and off. See **Heated Seats** (page 133).
- B **Defrost:** Select to distribute air through the windshield air vents. Air distribution to the instrument panel and footwell vents turns off. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.
- C **Fan speed control:** Adjust the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.
- D **A/C:** Press the button to switch the air conditioning on or off. Air conditioning cools your vehicle using outside air. To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.  
**Note:** In certain conditions (for example, maximum defrost), the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though the air conditioning is switched off.
- E **Passenger temperature control:** Adjust the temperature on the passenger side.

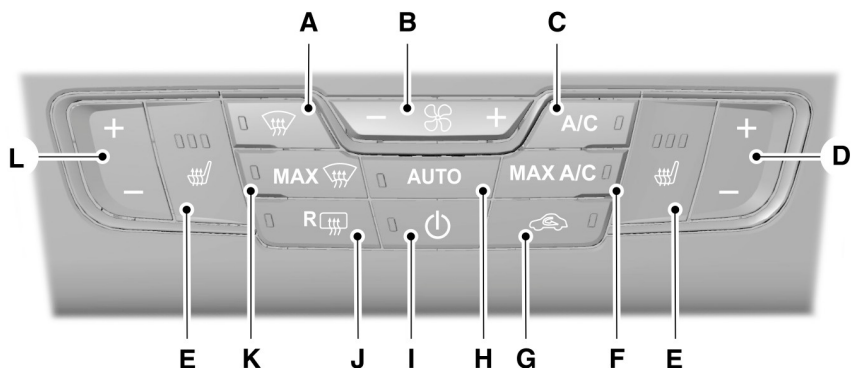
# Climate Control

---

- F **Climate controlled seats:** Press the button to switch the climate controlled seats on and off. See **Climate Controlled Seats** (page 133).
- G **Heated windshield (if equipped):** Press the button to clear the heated windshield of thin ice and fog. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 121).
- H **Recirculated air:** Press the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air. The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This can reduce the time needed to cool the interior and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.
- Note:** Recirculated air may also turn on and off automatically in instrument panel or instrument panel and floor airflow modes during hot weather to improve cooling efficiency.
- I **AUTO:** Press the button to switch on automatic operation. Adjust to select the desired temperature. Fan speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and outside or recirculated air are automatically adjusted to heat or cool the vehicle to maintain the desired temperature. You can also switch off dual zone mode by pressing and holding the button for more than two seconds.
- J **Power:** Press the button to switch the system on and off. When the system is off, it prevents outside air from entering the vehicle.
- K **Heated rear window:** Press the button to switch the heated rear window on and off. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 121).
- L **MAX Defrost:** Press the button to switch on defrost. Outside air flows through the windshield vents, air conditioning automatically turns on, and fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice. The heated rear window also automatically turns on when you select maximum defrost.
- Note:** To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.
- M **Driver temperature control:** Adjust the temperature setting using the control on the driver side.

# Climate Control

## AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITHOUT HEATED WINDSHIELD



E186189

- A **Defrost:** Select to distribute air through the windshield air vents. Air distribution to the instrument panel and footwell vents turns off. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.
- B **Fan speed control:** Adjust the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.
- C **A/C:** Press the button to switch the air conditioning on or off. Air conditioning cools your vehicle using outside air. To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.  
**Note:** In certain conditions (for example, maximum defrost), the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though the air conditioning is switched off.
- D **Passenger temperature control:** Adjust the temperature on the passenger side.
- E **Heated seats (if equipped):** Press the button to switch the heated seats on and off. See **Heated Seats** (page 133).

# Climate Control

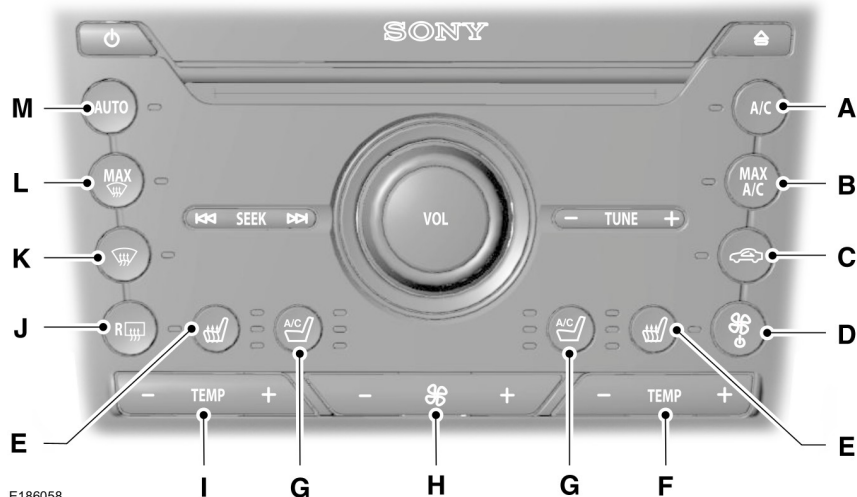
---

- F **MAX A/C:** Press the button for maximum cooling. Recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents, air conditioning automatically turns on and the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed.
- G **Recirculated air:** Press the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air. The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This can reduce the time needed to cool the interior and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.
- Note:** Recirculated air may also turn on and off automatically in instrument panel or instrument panel and floor airflow modes during hot weather to improve cooling efficiency.
- H **AUTO:** Press the button to switch on automatic operation. Adjust to select the desired temperature. Fan speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and outside or recirculated air are automatically adjusted to heat or cool the vehicle to maintain the desired temperature. You can also switch off dual zone mode by pressing and holding the button for more than two seconds.
- I **Power:** Press the button to switch the system on and off. When the system is off, it prevents outside air from entering the vehicle.
- J **Heated rear window:** Press the button to switch the heated rear window on and off. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 121).
- K **MAX Defrost:** Press the button to switch on defrost. Outside air flows through the windshield vents, air conditioning automatically turns on, and fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice. The heated rear window also automatically turns on when you select maximum defrost.
- Note:** To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.
- L **Driver temperature control:** Adjust the temperature setting using the control on the driver side.

## AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: SONY AUDIO SYSTEM

**Note:** You can switch temperature units between Fahrenheit and Celsius. See **Settings** (page 352).

# Climate Control



- A **A/C:** Press the button to switch the air conditioning on or off. Air conditioning cools your vehicle using outside air. To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

**Note:** In certain conditions (for example, maximum defrost), the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though the air conditioning is switched off.

- B **MAX A/C:** Press the button for maximum cooling. Recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents, air conditioning automatically turns on, and the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed.
- C **Recirculated air:** Press the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air. The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This can reduce the time needed to cool the interior and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

**Note:** Recirculated air may also turn on and off automatically in instrument panel or instrument panel and floor airflow modes during hot weather to improve cooling efficiency.

- D **Power:** Press the button to switch the system on and off. When the system is off, it prevents outside air from entering the vehicle.



# Climate Control

- E Heated seats (if equipped):** Press the button to switch the heated seats on and off. See **Heated Seats** (page 133).
- F Passenger temperature control:** Adjust the temperature on the passenger side.
- Note:** The maximum difference between driver and passenger settings may be limited. Whenever you make an adjustment that would result in a larger difference, both settings will change together.
- G Climate controlled seats:** Press the button to switch the climate controlled seats on and off. See **Climate Controlled Seats** (page 133).
- H Fan speed control:** Adjust the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.
- I Driver temperature control:** Adjust the temperature setting using the control on the driver side. This control also adjusts the passenger side temperature when you switch off dual zone mode.
- J Heated rear window:** Press the button to switch the heated rear window on and off. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 121).
- K Defrost:** Select to distribute air through the windshield air vents. Air distribution to the instrument panel and footwell vents turns off. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.
- L MAX Defrost:** Press the button to switch on defrost. Outside air flows through the windshield vents, air conditioning automatically turns on, and fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice. The heated rear window also automatically turns on when you select maximum defrost.
- Note:** To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.
- M AUTO:** Press the button to switch on automatic operation. Adjust to select the desired temperature. Fan speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and outside or recirculated air are automatically adjusted to heat or cool the vehicle to maintain the desired temperature. You can also turn off dual zone mode by pressing and holding the button for greater than two seconds.

## HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE

### General Hints

**Note:** Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.

**Note:** To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.

**Note:** Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.

**Note:** Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.

# Climate Control

**Note:** To improve air conditioning when starting your vehicle, drive with the windows slightly open for two to three minutes.

## Manual Climate Control

**Note:** To reduce fogging of the windshield during humid weather, adjust the air distribution control to the windshield air vents position.

## Automatic Climate Control

**Note:** Do not adjust the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold. The system automatically adjusts to the previously stored settings. For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.

**Note:** At low ambient temperatures with **AUTO** selected, the air stream is directed toward the windshield and side windows for as long as the engine remains cold.

**Note:** When the system is in **AUTO** mode, and the interior and exterior temperatures are high, the system automatically selects recirculated air to maximize cooling of the interior. When the selected air temperature is reached, the system automatically selects outside air.

## Heating the Interior Quickly

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the fan speed to the highest speed setting.	Press the high fan speed button control.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the highest setting.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.
3	Adjust the air distribution control to the footwell air vents position.	

## Recommended Settings for Heating

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the fan speed to the second speed setting.	Press the <b>AUTO</b> button.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the hot settings.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.
3	Adjust the air distribution control to the footwell and windshield air vents position.	

# Climate Control

## Cooling the Interior Quickly

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the temperature control to the <b>MAX A/C</b> position.	Press the <b>MAX A/C</b> button.

## Recommended Settings for Cooling

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the fan speed to the second speed setting.	Press the <b>AUTO</b> button.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the cold settings.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.
3	Adjust the air distribution control to the instrument panel air vents position.	

## Side Window Defogging in Cold Weather

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Select the windshield air vents using the air distribution buttons.	Press the windshield defrosting and defogging button.
2	Press the <b>A/C</b> button.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.
3	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.	
4	Adjust the fan speed to the highest setting.	

## HEATED WINDOWS AND MIRRORS

### Heated Rear Window

**Note:** Make sure the engine is running before operating the heated windows.



Press the button to clear the heated rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window will automatically turn off after a short period of time. Start the engine before you switch the heated rear window on.

# Climate Control

**Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. The vehicle warranty does not cover damage caused to the heated rear window grid lines.**

## Heated Exterior Mirror (If Equipped)

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors will automatically turn on.

**Note:** Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

**Note:** Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.

## HEATED WINDSHIELD



Press the button to clear the heated windshield of thin ice and fog. The heated windshield will automatically turn off after a short period of time. Start the engine before you switch the heated windshield on.

## AUXILIARY HEATER

### Fuel Operated Parking Heater

#### WARNING



Do not use the fuel operated parking heater at fuel filling stations or near sources of combustible vapors, dust or in enclosed spaces. This could result in serious personal injury or death.

The system warms the engine and the vehicle interior; it uses fuel from the vehicle fuel tank. The system only operates when your vehicle is stationary with the engine switched off.

Used correctly the system:

- Warms the engine and the vehicle interior.
- Keeps the windows clear of ice in the event of frost and prevents condensation.
- Avoids cold starts to assist the engine to reach operating temperature sooner.

Following a heating cycle, if you do not start the engine the system will not turn on the next programmed heating cycle.

Following a heating cycle, we recommend that you drive your vehicle for at least the same period of time as the heating cycle. This prevents the vehicle battery from running out of charge.

We recommend you switch the system on for approximately 10 minutes every month to prevent the water pump or heater motor seizing.

The system only operates if there is a minimum of 16 liters (3.5 gallons) of fuel in the vehicle fuel tank and the outside air temperature is below 59°F (15°C). The system does not operate if the battery charge level is low.

**Note:** When the system is operating, exhaust fumes will come from under your vehicle. This is normal.

**Note:** On vehicles with manual climate control, heating the vehicle interior depends on the heater control settings. See **Climate Control** (page 111).

### Programming the Fuel Operated Parking Heater

Use the information display controls on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 86).

**Note:** The time and date on your vehicle's clock must be set correctly. See **SYNCTM 2** (page 343).

# Climate Control

**Note:** You must program the time at least 70 minutes before the time you wish to set.

**Note:** The programmed time is when you want your vehicle to be warm and ready to drive, not when the heater turns on.

## To program the fuel operated parking heater, scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Convenience	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Park heater	Press the <b>OK</b> button.

### Select one of the following:

Time 1	Allows you to program a heating cycle for each day of the week. These times remain stored and the system warms up your vehicle at the programmed times.
Time 2	Allows you to program a second heating cycle for each day of the week. These times remain stored and the system warms up your vehicle at the programmed times. Select to set a second heating cycle, for example different times on different days or twice on the same day.
Once	Allows you to program one heating cycle for a specific day.
Heat now	Switches the system on immediately.

## Programming the Time Functions

Set the time you want your vehicle to be warm and ready to drive. Use the information display controls on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 86).

1. Select the desired days you want the system to warm up your vehicle. Highlight each desired day and press the **OK** button.
2. Highlight the time at the top of the menu and press the **OK** button. The hours flash.
3. Set the hours using the up and down arrow buttons.

4. Press the right arrow button. The minutes flash. Set the minutes using the up and down arrow buttons. Press the **OK** button.

## Programming the Once Function

Selecting this function allows you to program one heating cycle for one specific day.

Set the time you want your vehicle to be warm and ready to drive. Use the information display controls on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 86).

1. Highlight the time at the top of the menu and press the **OK** button. The hours start to flash.
2. Set the hours using the up and down arrow buttons.

# Climate Control

3. Press the right arrow button. Set the minutes using the up and down arrow buttons. Press the **OK** button.

## Switching Programmed Functions Off

Use the information display controls on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 86).

### To switch the programmed functions off, scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Convenience	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Park heater	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
<b>Select one of the following:</b>	
Time 1	Uncheck the active programmed heating cycles as required.
Time 2	Uncheck the active programmed heating cycles as required.
Once	Uncheck the active programmed heating cycles as required.

## Switching the Heat Now Function On

### WARNING



Do not use the fuel operated parking heater at fuel filling stations or near sources of combustible vapors, dust or in enclosed spaces. This could result in serious personal injury or death.

Selecting this function allows you to switch the system on immediately.

Use the information display controls on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 86).

### To switch the heat now function on, scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Convenience	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Park heater	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Heat now	Press the <b>OK</b> button. An X appears in the box when you switch the heater on. To switch the heater off, uncheck the option.

# Climate Control

## Fuel Operated Heater

### WARNING



Do not use the fuel operated parking heater at fuel filling stations or near sources of combustible vapors, dust or in enclosed spaces. This could result in serious personal injury or death.

The heater operates by warming the engine cooling system, it uses fuel from the vehicle fuel tank. The system only operates when your vehicle is stationary with the engine switched off.

The system only operates if there is a minimum of 16 liters (3.5 gallons) of fuel in the vehicle fuel tank. The system will not operate if the battery charge level is low.

The system automatically turns on and off depending on the engine coolant temperature when the outside air temperature is below 37°F (3°C), unless you have switched it off.

**Note:** *The default setting is on.*

**Note:** *When the system is operating, exhaust fumes will come from under your vehicle. This is normal.*

**Note:** *On vehicles with manual climate control, heating the vehicle interior depends on the heater control settings. See **Climate Control** (page 111).*

Use the information display controls on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 86).

### To switch the auxiliary heater on and off, scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Convenience	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Aux heater	Press the <b>OK</b> button. An X appears in the box when you switch the system on.

# Seats

## SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION

### WARNINGS



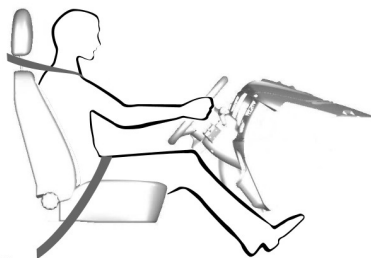
Do not recline the seat backrest too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the safety belt, resulting in serious injury in the event of a crash.



Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seat backrest reclined too far, can result in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat backrest, with your feet on the floor.



Do not place objects higher than the seat backrest to reduce the risk of serious injury in the event of a crash or during heavy braking.



E68595

When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, safety belt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seat backrest more than 30 degrees.

- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 10 inches (25 centimeters) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the safety belt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

## HEAD RESTRAINTS

### WARNINGS



Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.



Raise the rear head restraints when passengers occupy the rear seats.

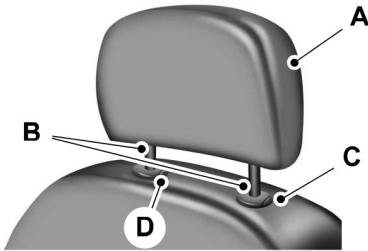


When using a forward facing child restraint on a rear seat, always remove the head restraint from that seat.



# Seats

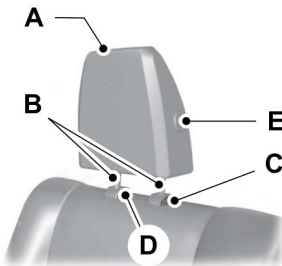
## Front seat head restraints



E138642

- C Guide sleeve adjust and unlock button.
- D Guide sleeve unlock and remove button.
- E Fold button (rear seat center only)

## Rear seat center head restraint



E166700

## Adjusting the Head Restraint

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.

## Raising the Head Restraint

Pull the head restraint up.

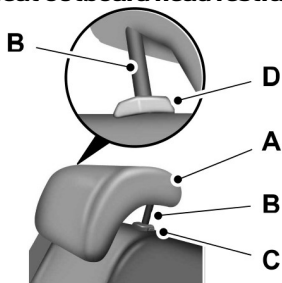
## Lowering the Head Restraint

1. Press and hold button C.
2. Push the head restraint down.

## Removing the Head Restraint

1. Pull the head restraint up until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold buttons C and D.
3. Pull the head restraint up.

## Rear seat outboard head restraints



E138645

## Folding the Head Restraint

**Note:** The rear seat center head restraint may fold forward for improved visibility.

**Note:** If your vehicle has a dog guard, make sure the folding center head restraint is in the upright position before installing the dog guard. See **Load Carrying** (page 207).

1. Press and hold button E.
2. Pull it back up to reset.

## Installing the Head Restraint

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until in locks.

The head restraints consist of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Two steel stems.

# Seats

## Tilting Head Restraints

The front head restraints tilt for extra comfort. To tilt the head restraint, do the following:






E144727

1. Adjust the seatback to an upright driving or riding position.
2. Pivot the head restraint forward toward your head to the desired position.

After the head restraint reaches the forward-most tilt position, pivoting it forward again will then release it to the rearward, un-tilted position.

## MANUAL SEATS

### WARNINGS

-  Do not adjust the driver's seat or seat back when your vehicle is moving.
-  Rock the seat backward and forward after releasing the lever to make sure that it is fully engaged.
-  Reclining the seat back can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's safety belt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a collision.

The manual front seats may consist of:





E144631

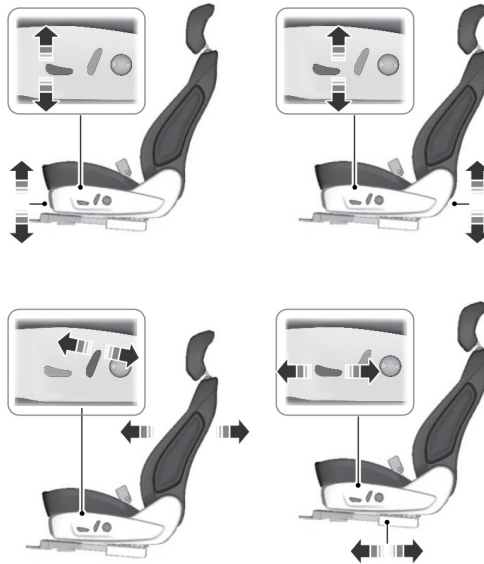
- A a bar to move the seat backward and forward
- B a control to adjust the lumbar of the seat back
- C a lever to adjust the height of the seat
- D a lever to adjust the angle of the seat back

## POWER SEATS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: MULTI-CONTOUR SEATS

### WARNINGS

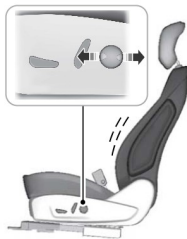
-  Do not adjust the driver's seat or seatback when your vehicle is moving.
-  Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seatback before returning it to the original position.

# Seats



E144632



## Power Lumbar (If Equipped)



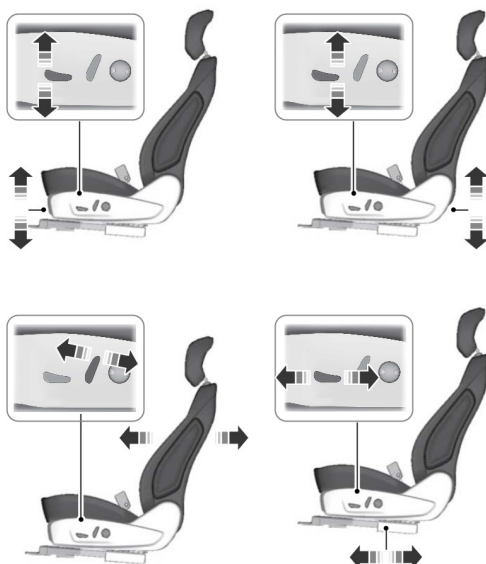
E165608

## POWER SEATS - VEHICLES WITH: MULTI-CONTOUR SEATS

### WARNINGS

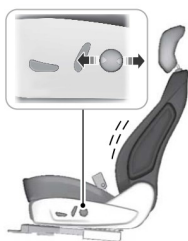
-  Do not adjust the front seat or seatback while your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.
-  Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seatback before returning it to the original position.

# Seats



E144632

## Power Lumbar



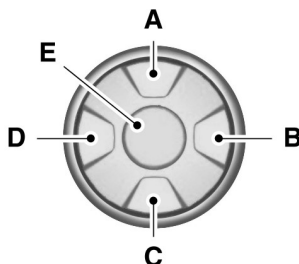
E165608

**Note:** The engine must be running or the vehicle must be in accessory mode to activate the seats.

**Note:** Allow a few seconds for any selection to activate. The seatback and cushion massage cannot function at the same time.

## Multi-Contour Front Seats With Active Motion (If Equipped)

**Note:** The massage system will turn off after 20 minutes.



E156301

# Seats

	Message mode	Lumbar and bolster mode
A	Back massage intensity adjustment	Upper lumbar
B	Massage intensity decrease and off <sup>1</sup>	Lumbar decrease
C	Cushion massage intensity adjustment	Lower lumbar <sup>2</sup>
D	Massage intensity increase	Lumbar increase
E	On and off	-

<sup>1</sup>The massage feature will default to an alternating massage mode with back massage intensity adjustment. The lumbar and bolster feature will default to the middle lumbar mode.

<sup>2</sup>Press C a second time to adjust the back bolster. Press C a third time to adjust the cushion bolster.

You can also adjust this feature through the touchscreen.



Press the Menu Settings icon, then Vehicle. Choose Multi-Contour Seats.

When switched on, the system displays directions for you to adjust the lumbar settings in your seat or to set the massage function.

To access and make adjustments to the lumbar setting:

1. Choose the desired seat to adjust.
2. Press the + or - to adjust the lumbar intensity.

To access and make adjustments to the massage setting:

1. Press the Menu Settings icon, then Vehicle. Choose Multi-Contour Seats.
2. Choose the desired seat to adjust.

3. Press OFF, LO or HI.

## MEMORY FUNCTION

### WARNINGS



Before activating the seat memory, make sure that the area immediately surrounding the seat is clear of obstructions and that all occupants are clear of moving parts.



Do not use the memory function when your vehicle is moving.

This feature automatically recalls the position of the driver seat, power mirrors and power steering column. The memory control is located on the driver door.



E142554

# Seats

## Saving a PreSet Position

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Adjust the seat, exterior mirrors and steering column to your desired position.
3. Press and hold the desired preset button until you hear a single tone.

You can save up to three preset memory positions. You can save a memory preset at any time.

## Recalling a PreSet Position

Press and release the preset button associated with your desired driving position. The seat, mirrors and steering column move to the position stored for that preset.

**Note:** *You can only recall a preset memory position when the ignition is off, or when the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N) (and your vehicle is not moving) if the ignition is on.*

You can recall a preset memory position by pressing the unlock button on your remote control or intelligent access key if it is linked to a preset position.

## Linking a PreSet Position to Your Remote Control or Intelligent Access Key

Your vehicle can save the preset memory positions for up to three remote controls or intelligent access keys.

1. With the ignition on, move the memory positions to the desired positions.
2. Press and hold the desired preset button for about five seconds. A tone sounds after about two seconds. Continue holding until a second tone is heard.
3. Within three seconds, press the lock button on the remote control you are linking.

To unlink a remote control, follow the same procedure – except in step 3, press the unlock button on the remote control.

**Note:** *Pressing any active memory feature adjustment control – power seat, mirror, or optional steering column switch or any memory button – during a memory recall cancels the operation.*

A seat recall movement will also stop if you drive your vehicle.

**Note:** *If more than one linked remote control or intelligent access key is in range, the memory function moves to the settings of the first key stored.*

## Easy Entry and Exit Function

If you enable the easy entry and exit feature, it automatically moves the driver seat position rearward up to five centimeters when the transmission is in park (P) and you remove the key or turn off the keyless start ignition.

The driver seat returns to the previous position when you put the key in the ignition or you activate the keyless start ignition.

You can switch off the easy entry and exit feature by using the driver information display.

# Seats

## HEATED SEATS

### WARNING



People who are unable to feel pain to their skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions, must exercise care when using the heated seat. The heated seat may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion. This may cause the heated seat to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles or other pointed objects. This may damage the heating element which may cause the heated seat to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid is spilled on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.
- Operate the heated seats unless the engine is running. Doing so can cause the battery to lose charge.



E146941

Press the heated seat symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. Warmer settings are indicated by more indicator lights.

## CLIMATE CONTROLLED SEATS

### Heated Seats

### WARNING



Persons who are unable to feel pain to the skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion, or other physical conditions, must exercise care when using the seat heater. The seat heater may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion, because this may cause the seat heater to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles, or other pointed objects because this may damage the heating element which may cause the seat heater to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

**Note:** Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the seat heater if water or any other liquid is spilled on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.
- Operate the heated seats unless the engine is running. Doing so can cause the battery to lose charge.



E146322

Touch the heated seat symbol on the touchscreen to cycle through the various heat settings and off. More indicator lights indicate warmer settings.

# Seats

---

## Cooled Seats (If Equipped)

The cooled seats will only function when the engine is running.



E146309

Touch the cooled seat symbol on the touchscreen to cycle through the various cool settings and off. More indicator lights indicate cooler settings.

## REAR SEAT ARMREST



E144635

Fold the armrest down to use the armrest and cupholder.



# Auxiliary Power Points

## 12 Volt DC Power Point

### WARNING



Do not plug electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket. Incorrect use of the lighter can cause damage not covered by your warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

**Note:** When you switch the ignition on, you can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 amps. After you switch the ignition off, the power supply works only for a maximum of 30 minutes.

**Note:** Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point. This damages the outlet and blows the fuse.

**Note:** Do not hang any type of accessory or accessory bracket from the plug.

**Note:** Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 volt DC 180 watt or a fuse may blow.

**Note:** Do not use the power point for operating a cigar lighter element.

**Note:** Incorrect use of the power point can cause damage not covered by your warranty.

**Note:** Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use.

Run the engine for full capacity use of the power point.

To prevent your vehicle battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when your engine is not running.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when your vehicle is in park (P) for extended periods.

## Location

Power points may be found:

- On the center console.
- Inside the center console.
- On the rear of the console.
- In the cargo area (Wagon Only).

## 230 Volt Power Point (If Equipped)

### WARNING



Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power point whenever the device is not in use. Do not use any extension cord with the 230 volt power point, since it will defeat the safety protection design. Doing so may cause the power point to overload. Powering multiple devices can reach beyond the 150 watt load limit and could result in fire or serious injury.

**Note:** Keep the vehicle running to use the power point.

You can use the power point for powering electrical devices that require up to 150 watts. It is on the rear of the center console.

The power point indicator light, located on the power point, shows when the power point is ready for use.

When the power point indicator light is:

- On — the power point is ready to supply power.
- Off — the power point power supply is off and so is the ignition.
- Flashing — the power point is in fault mode.

The power point temporarily turns off its power if the electrical load exceeds the 150 watt limit. The power point can also switch to a fault mode if it detects overloading, overheating or shorting conditions.

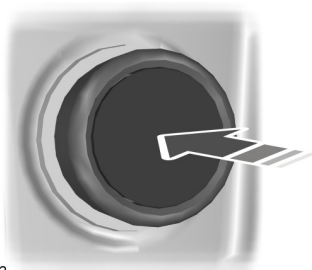
## Auxiliary Power Points

For overloading and shorting conditions, unplug your device and switch the ignition off and then on.

For an overheating condition, let the system cool first. Then, switch the ignition off and on again.

Do not use the power point for certain electric devices, including:

- Cathode ray tube type televisions.
- Motor loads, for example vacuum cleaners, electric saws and other electric power tools, or compressor-driven refrigerators.
- Measuring devices which process precise data, for example medical equipment or measuring equipment.
- Other appliances requiring an extremely stable power supply, for example microcomputer-controlled electric blankets or touch sensor lamps.



E103382

Press the element in to use the cigar lighter. It will pop out automatically.

### CIGAR LIGHTER

**Note:** Do not hold the cigar lighter element pressed in.

**Note:** If you use the socket when the engine is not running, the battery may lose charge.

**Note:** When you switch the ignition on, you can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances with a maximum current rating of 20 amps.

**Note:** After you switch the ignition off the power supply will only work for a maximum of 30 minutes.

**Note:** Use only Ford accessory connectors or connectors specified for use with SAE standard sockets.

# Storage Compartments

## CUP HOLDERS

### WARNINGS



Do not place hot drinks in the cup holders when your vehicle is moving.

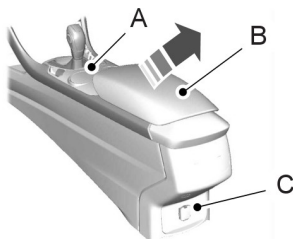


Make sure that cups placed in the holders do not obstruct your vision while driving.

## CENTER CONSOLE

Stow items in the cupholder carefully as items may become loose during hard braking, acceleration or collisions, including hot drinks which may spill.

Available console features include:



E143942

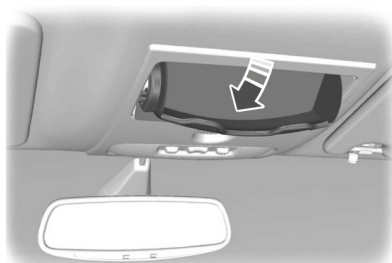
- A Cupholder.
- B Storage compartment with auxiliary power point, auxiliary input jack, USB port and media hub.
- C Auxiliary power point.

## Rear Seat Armrest



E190042

## OVERHEAD CONSOLE



E75193

Press near the rear edge of the door to open it.

## ASHTRAY

You can place the removable ashtray in any of the cup holders.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### WARNINGS



Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.



Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.



Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine.



If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately. Do not drive your vehicle if you smell exhaust fumes.

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 5 miles (8 kilometers) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

The powertrain control system meets all Canadian interference-causing equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field or radio noise.

When you start the engine, avoid pressing the accelerator pedal before and during operation. Only use the accelerator pedal when you have difficulty starting the engine.

## IGNITION SWITCH



E72128

**0 (off)** - The ignition is off.

**Note:** When you switch the ignition off and leave your vehicle, do not leave your key in the ignition. This could cause your vehicle battery to lose charge.

**I (accessory)** - Allows the electrical accessories such as the radio to operate while the engine is not running.

**Note:** Do not leave the ignition key in this position for too long to avoid your vehicle battery losing charge.

**II (on)** - All electrical circuits operational. Warning lamps and indicators are illuminated.

**III (start)** - cranks the engine. Release the key as soon as the engine starts.

## KEYLESS STARTING

**Note:** The system may not function if the remote control is close to metal objects or electronic devices such as cell phones.

**Note:** A valid passive key must be located inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## Switching the Ignition On



E144447

Press the button once without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal. It is located on the instrument panel near the steering wheel. All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

Press the button again without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal to turn your vehicle off completely.

## Starting Your Vehicle

### Manual Transmission

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Briefly press the button.

**Note:** Releasing the clutch pedal during engine start will stop the engine and return to ignition on.

### Automatic Transmission

1. Move the transmission selector lever to park.
2. Fully depress the brake pedal.
3. Briefly press the button.

**Note:** Releasing the brake pedal during engine start will stop the engine and return to ignition on.

## Diesel Engine

**Note:** Engine start will not commence until the engine glow plug cycle has been completed. This may take several seconds in extremely cold conditions.

## STEERING WHEEL LOCK - VEHICLES WITHOUT: KEYLESS ENTRY AND PUSH BUTTON START

### WARNING



Always check that the steering is unlocked before attempting to move your vehicle.

To lock the steering wheel:

1. Remove the key from the ignition switch.
2. Rotate the steering wheel slightly to engage the lock.

To unlock the steering wheel:

1. Insert the key in the ignition switch.
2. Turn the key to position **I**.

**Note:** You may need to rotate the steering wheel slightly to assist unlocking if there is a steering wheel load applied.

## STEERING WHEEL LOCK - VEHICLES WITH: KEYLESS ENTRY AND PUSH BUTTON START

Your vehicle has an electronically controlled steering wheel lock that operates automatically.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

---

The system will lock the steering wheel after a short period of time once you have parked your vehicle and the passive key is outside your vehicle, or when you lock your vehicle.

**Note:** *The system will not lock the steering wheel when the ignition is on or while your vehicle is moving.*

## Unlocking the Steering Wheel

Switch the ignition on to unlock the steering wheel.

**Note:** *You may have to rotate the steering wheel slightly to assist unlocking.*

## STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE

When you start the engine, the idle speed increases. This helps to warm up the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down automatically, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

**Note:** *You can crank the engine for a total of 60 seconds (without the engine starting) before the starting system temporarily disables. The 60 seconds does not have to be all at once. For example, if you crank the engine three times for 20 seconds each time, without the engine starting, you reached the 60-second time limit. A message appears in the information display alerting you that you exceeded the cranking time. You cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes. After 15 minutes, you are limited to a 15-second engine cranking time. You need to wait 60 minutes before you can crank the engine for 60 seconds again.*

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure all occupants have fastened their safety belts.
- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Move the transmission selector lever to a low gear (manual transmission) or park (P) (automatic transmission).
- Switch the ignition key to position **II**. If your vehicle is equipped with a keyless ignition, see the following instructions.

## Vehicles with an Ignition Key

**Note:** *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

1. Fully press the brake pedal. If your vehicle is equipped with a manual transmission, fully press the clutch pedal also.
2. Turn the key to position **III** to start the engine. Release the key when the engine starts.

**Note:** *The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.*

**Note:** *If you cannot start the engine on the first try, wait for a short period and try again.*

## Vehicles with Keyless Start

**Note:** *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

**Note:** *You must have your intelligent access key in the vehicle in order to shift the transmission out of park (P).*

1. Fully press the clutch pedal (manual transmission) or brake pedal (automatic transmission).
2. Press the button.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

**Note:** On hybrid vehicles, the green ready indicator illuminates letting you know that the vehicle is ready for driving. Since your vehicle is equipped with a silent key start, the engine may not start at the time of the vehicle start.

The system does not function if:

- The key frequencies are jammed.
- The key battery has no charge.

If you are unable to start the vehicle, do the following:



E147165

1. Locate the key backup slot in the center console utility compartment.
2. With the buttons facing the rear of the vehicle and the key ring up, place the key into the backup slot.
3. With the key in this position, press the clutch pedal (manual transmission) or brake pedal (automatic transmission), and then press the button to switch on your vehicle.

## Fast Restart

The fast restart feature allows you to restart the engine within 20 seconds of switching it off, even if a valid key is not present.

Within 20 seconds of switching the engine off, press the brake pedal and press the button. After 20 seconds have expired, you can no longer restart the vehicle without the key present inside your vehicle.

Once the vehicle has started, it remains running until you press the button, even if the system does not detect a valid key. If you open and close a door while the vehicle is running, the system searches for a valid key. You cannot restart the engine if the system does not detect a valid key within 20 seconds.

## Automatic Shutdown

This feature automatically shuts down the vehicle if it has been idling for an extended period. The Ignition also turns off in order to save battery power. Before the vehicle shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer counting down from 30 seconds. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, the vehicle shuts down. Another message appears in the information display to inform you that the vehicle has shut down in order to save fuel. Start your vehicle as you normally do.

## Automatic Shutdown Override

**Note:** You cannot permanently switch off the automatic shutdown feature. When you switch it off temporarily, it turns on at the next ignition cycle.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

You can stop the shutdown, or reset the timer, at any point before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- You can reset the timer by interacting with your vehicle (such as pressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal).
- You can temporarily switch off the shutdown feature any time the ignition is on (for the current ignition cycle only). Use the information display to do so. See **Information Displays** (page 86).
- During the countdown before shutdown, you are prompted to press OK or RESET (depending on your type of information display) to temporarily switch the feature off (for the current ignition cycle only).

## Switching Off the Vehicle When it is Stationary

### Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Move the transmission selector lever to a low gear (manual transmission) or park (P) (automatic transmission).
2. Turn the key to position **0**.
3. Apply the parking brake.

### Vehicles with Keyless Start

1. Move the transmission selector lever to a low gear (manual transmission) or park (P) (automatic transmission).
2. Press the button once.
3. Apply the parking brake.

**Note:** This switches off the ignition, all electrical circuits, warning lamps and indicators.

**Note:** If the engine is idling for 30 minutes, the ignition and engine automatically shut down.

## Switching Off the Vehicle When It Is Moving

### WARNING



Switching off the engine when the vehicle is still moving will result in a loss of brake and steering assistance. The steering will not lock, but higher effort will be required. When the ignition is switched off, some electrical circuits, including air bags, warning lamps and indicators may also be off. If the ignition was turned off accidentally, you can shift into neutral (N) and re-start the engine.

### Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Move the transmission selector lever to the neutral position (manual transmission) or neutral (N) (automatic transmission) and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
2. When your vehicle has stopped, move the transmission selector lever to a low gear (manual transmission) or park (P) (automatic transmission) and turn the key to position **0**.
3. Apply the parking brake.

### Vehicles with Keyless Start

1. Move the transmission selector lever to the neutral position (manual transmission) or neutral (N) (automatic transmission) and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
2. When your vehicle has stopped, move the transmission selector lever to a low gear (manual transmission) or park (P) (automatic transmission).
3. Press and hold the button for one second, or press it three times within two seconds.
4. Apply the parking brake.



# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes

### WARNING



If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle checked by your authorized dealer immediately. Do not drive your vehicle if you smell exhaust fumes. Carbon monoxide is present in exhaust fumes. Take precautions to avoid its dangerous effects.

## Important Ventilating Information

If you stop your vehicle and then leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 1.0 in (2.5 cm).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

## STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE

### Cold or Hot Engine



1. Switch the ignition on and wait until the glow plug indicator goes off.
2. Fully depress the clutch pedal (manual transmission) or brake pedal (automatic transmission).
3. Start the engine.

**Note:** Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

**Note:** Releasing the clutch pedal (manual transmission) or brake pedal (automatic transmission) while the engine is starting will stop the engine cranking and return to ignition on.

**Note:** When the temperature is below 50°F (-15°C), you may need to crank the engine for up to 10 seconds.

**Note:** You can only operate the starter for a limited period of time.

**Note:** After a limited number of attempts to start your engine, the system does not allow you to try again until a period of time has elapsed, for example 30 minutes.

### Failure to Start

If the engine does not crank when the clutch pedal has been fully depressed and the ignition key is turned to position **III**.

1. Fully depress the clutch and brake pedals.
2. Turn the key to position **III** until the engine starts.

## DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER

The filter forms part of the emissions reduction system on your vehicle. It filters harmful diesel particulates (soot) from the exhaust gas.

### Regeneration

#### WARNING



Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

**Note:** Avoid running out of fuel.

**Note:** During regeneration at low speed or engine idle, you may smell a hot metallic odor and could notice a clicking metallic sound. This is due to the high temperatures reached during regeneration and is normal.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

**Note:** *Changes in the engine or exhaust sound may be heard during the regeneration process.*

**Note:** *After you have switched your engine off the fans may continue to run for a short period of time.*

The diesel particulate filter on your vehicle requires periodic regeneration to maintain its correct function. Your vehicle will carry out this process automatically.

If your journeys meet one of the following conditions:

- You drive only short distances.
- You frequently switch the ignition on and off.
- Your journeys contain a high level of acceleration and deceleration.

You must carry out occasional trips with the following conditions to assist the regeneration process:

- Drive your vehicle in more favorable conditions, which you will find at higher vehicle speeds in normal driving, on a main road or freeway for a minimum of 20 minutes. This drive may include short stops that will not affect the regeneration process.
- Avoid prolonged idling and always observe speed limits and road conditions.
- Do not switch the ignition off.
- Select a suitable gear to ideally maintain engine speed between 1500 and 3000 RPM.

## SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE

### Vehicles With a Turbocharger

#### WARNING



Do not switch the engine off when it is running at high speed. If you do, the turbocharger will continue running after the engine oil pressure has dropped to zero. This will lead to premature turbocharger bearing wear.

Release the accelerator pedal. Wait until the engine has reached idle speed and then switch it off.

## ENGINE BLOCK HEATER

#### WARNINGS



Failure to follow engine block heater instructions could result in property damage or serious personal injury.



Do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two-pronged adapters. There is a risk of electrical shock.

**Note:** *The heater is most effective when outdoor temperatures are below 0°F (-18°C).*

The heater acts as a starting aid by warming the engine coolant. This allows the climate control system to respond quickly. The equipment includes a heater element (installed in the engine block) and a wire harness. You can connect the system to a grounded 220-240 volt AC electrical source.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

---

We recommend that you do the following for a safe and correct operation:

- Use an extension cord suitable for use outdoors and in cold temperatures. It should be clearly marked that it is suitable for use with outdoor appliances. Do not use an indoor extension cord outdoors. This could result in an electric shock or become a fire hazard.
- Use as short an extension cord as possible.
- Do not use multiple extension cords.
- Make sure that when in operation, the extension cord plug and heater cord plug connections are free and clear of water. This could cause an electric shock or fire.
- Make sure you park your vehicle in a clean area, clear of combustibles.
- Make sure you firmly connect the heater, heater cord and extension cord.
- Check for heat anywhere in the electrical hookup when the system has been operating for approximately 30 minutes.
- Make sure you unplug and correctly stow the system before starting and driving your vehicle. Make sure the protective cover seals the prongs of the block heater cord plug when not in use.
- Make sure you check the heater system for correct operation before winter.

The heater uses 0.4 to 1.0 kilowatt-hours of energy per hour of use. The system does not have a thermostat. It achieves maximum temperature after approximately three hours of operation. Using the heater longer than three hours does not improve system performance and unnecessarily uses electricity.

## Using the Engine Block Heater

The engine block heater plug is located in a housing in the left fog lamp bezel. Open the hinged, circular door and make sure the receptacle terminals are clean and dry prior to use. Clean them with a dry cloth if necessary.

# Unique Driving Characteristics

## AUTO-START-STOP

The system reduces fuel consumption and CO2 emissions by shutting down the engine when your vehicle is idling, for example at traffic lights.

### WARNINGS



The engine may restart automatically if required by the system.



Switch the ignition off before opening the hood or carrying out any maintenance.



Always switch the ignition off before leaving your vehicle, as the system may have shut down the engine but the ignition will still be live.



In an automatic transmission vehicle, always shift to park (P) before leaving your vehicle.



**Note:** The Start-Stop indicator will illuminate green when the engine shuts down, flashing amber (accompanied by a message) if you need to take action, and grey if start-stop is not available. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 81).

## Using Start-Stop (Manual Transmissions)

### To Stop the Engine

1. Stop your vehicle.
2. Move the transmission to neutral.
3. Release the clutch and accelerator pedals.

### To Re-Start the Engine

Press the clutch pedal.

**Note:** To obtain maximum benefit from the system, move the transmission to neutral and release the clutch pedal during any stop of longer than three seconds.

**Note:** Start-stop also comes with stall recovery. If you fully press the clutch pedal after stalling the engine, it will automatically restart the engine for you.

## Using Start-Stop (Automatic Transmissions)

### To Stop the Engine

1. Stop your vehicle in drive (D).
2. Release the accelerator pedal.
3. Keep the brake pedal pressed.

**Note:** The engine will also shut down in neutral (N) and park (P) – with or without foot on brake.

### To Re-Start the Engine

Release the brake pedal or press the accelerator pedal.

### Limitations of use:

The engine may not shut down under certain conditions, for example:

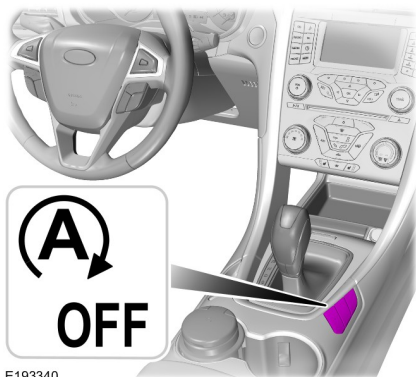
- Engine is warming up.
- To maintain climate comfort.
- Low battery charge.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The driver door has been opened.
- The driver seatbelt has been undone.
- The heated windshield is switched on.
- During regeneration of the diesel particulate filter.

# Unique Driving Characteristics

The system may also restart the engine restart under certain conditions, for example:

- To maintain climate comfort (for example, air conditioning).
- Low battery charge.
- The heated windshield is switched on.
- Your vehicle has started rolling downhill.
- The driver seatbelt is undone (automatic transmissions only).
- The driver door is opened (automatic transmissions only).

## Switching the System Off and On



E193340

The system automatically turns on every time you switch the ignition on. To switch the system off, press the switch (the word OFF will illuminate). The system will only be turned off for the current ignition cycle. To turn it on, press the switch again.

**Note:** If the system detects a malfunction, it will switch off. The OFF lamp on the switch will illuminate continuously. If this remains on after an ignition cycle, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

## Service

**Note:** The system may not function if the vehicle battery is replaced with one of a different specification to that originally fitted.

**Note:** The system may not function if you leave extra electrical loads connected when the ignition is turned off as these can drain the battery.

# Fuel and Refueling

## SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

### WARNINGS



Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.



The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler door (Easy Fuel capless fuel system), do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.



Automotive fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.



Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.



Fuel ethanol and gasoline may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.



When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the filler neck. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

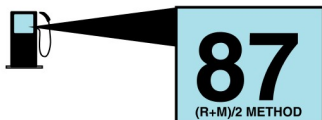
Observe the following guidelines when handling automotive fuel:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Always turn off the vehicle before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel such as gasoline is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed, call a physician immediately, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be visible for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling too much fuel vapor of any kind can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel liquid in your eyes. If fuel is splashed in the eyes, remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can also be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If fuel is splashed on the skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact with fuel liquid or vapor causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking "Antabuse" or other forms of disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing gasoline vapors, or skin contact could cause an adverse reaction. In sensitive individuals, serious personal injury or sickness may result. If fuel is splashed on the skin, promptly wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Consult a physician immediately if you experience an adverse reaction.

# Fuel and Refueling

## FUEL QUALITY - GASOLINE

### Choosing the Right Fuel



E161513

We recommend regular unleaded gasoline with a pump octane rating of 87. Some stations offer fuels posted as regular with an octane rating below 87, particularly in high altitude areas. We do not recommend fuels with an octane rating below 87. Premium unleaded gasoline will provide improved performance and is recommended for severe duty usage, for example a fully loaded vehicle.

Do not use any fuel other than those recommended because they could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

**Note:** *Use of any fuel other than those recommended can impair the emission control system and cause a loss of vehicle performance.*

Do not use:

- Diesel fuel.
- Kerosene or paraffin fuels.
- Fuel containing more than 15% ethanol or E-85 fuel.
- Fuels containing methanol.
- Fuels containing metallic-based additives, including manganese-based compounds.

- Fuels containing the octane booster additive, methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT).
- Leaded fuel (using leaded fuel is prohibited by law).

The use of fuels with metallic compounds such as methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (commonly known as MMT), which is a manganese-based fuel additive, will impair engine performance and affect the emission control system.

Do not be concerned if the engine sometimes knocks lightly. However, if it knocks heavily under most driving conditions while you are using fuel with the recommended octane rating, contact an authorized dealer to prevent any engine damage.

## FUEL QUALITY - DIESEL

### Choosing the Right Fuel



E185351

Use only Regular Diesel with a pump cetane rating of 48 or higher. We recommend using Premium Diesel with a cetane rating of 55 or higher for optimal performance of your vehicle. Premium Diesel is recommended for severe duty usage, for example fully loaded or trailer tow.

# Fuel and Refueling

The use of diesel with a cetane rating of 47 or lower could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty. Some fuel stations offer fuels posted as Regular Diesel with a cetane rating below 48, particularly in high altitude areas. Fuels with cetane rating below 48 are not recommended.

Do not use any fuel other than those recommended because they could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

**Note:** *Use of any fuel other than those recommended can impair the emission control system and cause a loss of vehicle performance.*

Do not use:

- Gasoline fuel.
- Kerosene or paraffin fuels.
- Fuel with methanol.
- Fuels containing metallic-based additives, including manganese-based compounds.

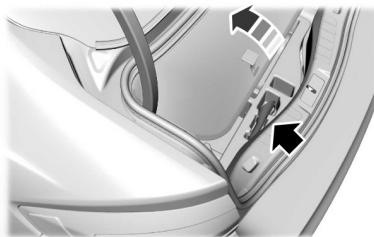
The use of fuels with metallic compounds such as methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (commonly known as MMT), which is a manganese-based fuel additive, will impair engine performance and affect the emission control system.

Do not be concerned if the engine sometimes knocks lightly. However, if it knocks heavily under most driving conditions while you are using fuel with the recommended cetane rating, contact an authorized dealer to prevent any engine damage.

## FUEL FILLER FUNNEL LOCATION

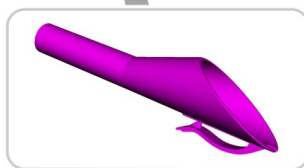
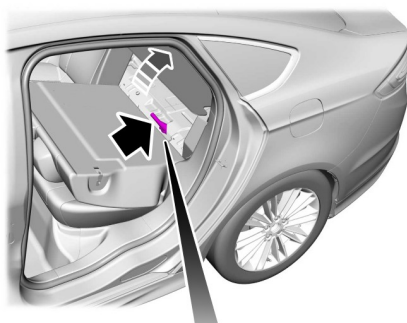
The fuel filler funnel is located under the luggage compartment floor covering.

### 4-Door



E163066

### 5-Door and Wagon



E162864

## RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

Running out of fuel can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.



# Fuel and Refueling

If your vehicle runs out of fuel:

- Add a minimum of 1.1 gal (5 L) of fuel to restart the engine. If your vehicle is out of fuel and on a steep slope, more fuel may be required.
- You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.

## Filling a Portable Fuel Container

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling it.
- Do not fill a fuel container when it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container when filling it.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

## Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container

### WARNINGS



Do not insert the nozzle of a fuel container or an aftermarket funnel into the fuel system filler neck. This may damage the fuel system filler neck or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.



Do not try to pry open or push open the capless fuel system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.

### WARNINGS



Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, use the plastic funnel included with your vehicle. See **Fuel Filler Funnel Location** (page ?).

**Note:** Do not use aftermarket funnels as they will not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it.

**Note:** Capless fuel systems do not have a fuel tank filler cap.

1. Fully open the fuel tank filler door until it engages and remove the fuel tank filler cap.



E156223

2. Insert the plastic funnel into the fuel tank filler pipe opening.
3. Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.
4. Remove the plastic funnel from the fuel tank filler pipe opening.


# Fuel and Refueling

5. Replace the fuel tank filler cap and close the fuel tank filler door.
6. Clean the plastic funnel and place it back in your vehicle or properly dispose of it.

**Note:** *Extra funnels can be purchased from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.*






## CATALYTIC CONVERTER

### WARNING

 Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during use, and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.







## Driving with a Catalytic Converter

### WARNINGS

-  Avoid running out of fuel.
-  Do not crank the engine for long periods.
-  Do not run the engine when a spark plug lead is disconnected.
-  Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 225).
-  Do not switch the ignition off when driving.

## REFUELING

### WARNINGS

-  Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with the incorrect fuel. This could damage the engine. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately.
-  Do not use any kind of flames or heat near the fuel system. The fuel system is under pressure. There is a risk of injury if the fuel system is leaking.
-  If you use a high pressure spray to wash your vehicle, only spray the fuel filler flap briefly from a distance not less than 8 inches (200 millimeters).
-  We recommend that you wait at least 10 seconds before removing the fuel nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.
-  Stop refueling after the fuel nozzle stops the second time. Additional fuel will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank which could lead to fuel overflowing. Fuel spillage could be hazardous to other road users.
-  Do not remove the fuel nozzle from its fully inserted position during the entire refueling process.

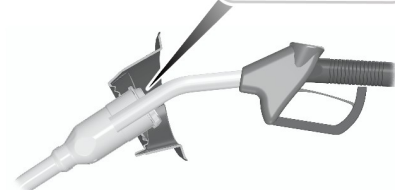
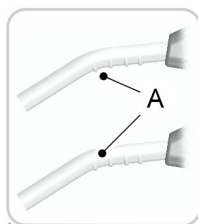
**Note:** *Your vehicle does not have a fuel filler cap.*

# Fuel and Refueling



E135934

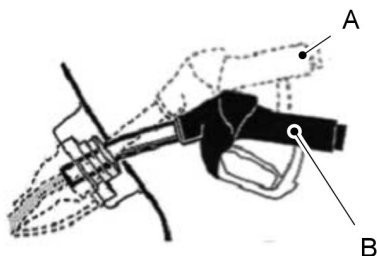
1. Press the flap to open it. Open the flap fully until it engages.



E139202

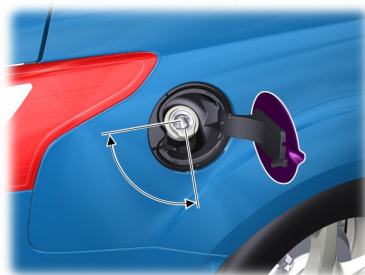
**Note:** When you insert the correct size fuel nozzle, a spring loaded inhibitor will open. This helps to avoid filling up with the incorrect fuel.

2. Insert the fuel nozzle up to and including the first notch on the fuel nozzle A. Keep it resting on the cover of the fuel pipe opening.



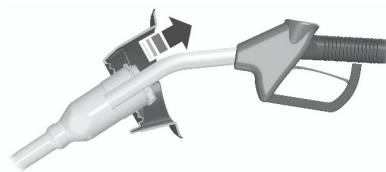
E139203

3. Hold the fuel nozzle in position B during refueling. Holding the fuel nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel nozzle before the fuel tank is full.



E152137

4. Operate the fuel nozzle within the area shown.



E119081

5. Slightly raise the fuel nozzle to remove it.

# Fuel and Refueling

---

## FUEL CONSUMPTION

We derive CO<sub>2</sub> and fuel consumption figures in laboratory tests according to Regulation (EC) 715/2007 or CR (EC) 692/2008 and subsequent amendments.

They are intended as a comparison between makes and models of vehicles. They are not intended to represent the real world fuel consumption you may get from your vehicle.

Real world fuel consumption is governed by many factors, for example driving style, high speed driving, stop-start driving, air conditioning usage, the accessories fitted, payload and towing.

The advertised capacity is the indicated capacity and the empty reserve combined. Indicated capacity is the difference in the amount of fuel in the fuel tank and when the fuel gauge indicates empty. Empty reserve is the amount of fuel in the fuel tank after the fuel gauge indicates empty.

**Note:** *The amount of fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range. When refueling your vehicle after the fuel gauge indicates empty, you might not be able to refuel the full amount of the advertised capacity due to the empty reserve still present in the fuel tank.*

## Filling the Fuel Tank

For consistent results when refueling:

- Switch the ignition off.
- Allow no more than two automatic shut-offs when refueling.

Results are most accurate when the refueling method is consistent.

## Calculating Fuel Economy

Do not measure fuel economy during the first 1000 mi (1,600 km) of driving (this is the engine break-in period). A more accurate measurement is obtained after 2500 mi (4,000 km). Also, fuel expense, frequency of fill ups or fuel gauge readings are not accurate ways to measure fuel economy.

1. Fill the fuel tank completely and record the initial odometer reading.
2. Each time you fill the fuel tank, record the amount of fuel added.
3. After at least three fill ups, fill the fuel tank and record the current odometer reading.
4. Subtract your initial odometer reading from the current odometer reading.
5. Calculate fuel economy by dividing miles traveled by gallons used (For Metric: Multiply liters used by 100, then divide by kilometers traveled).

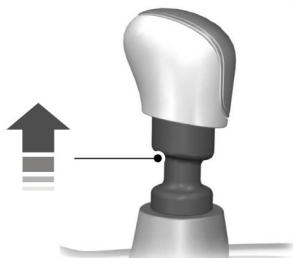
Keep a record for at least one month and record the type of driving (city or freeway). This provides an accurate estimate of your vehicle's fuel economy under current driving conditions. Additionally, keeping records during summer and winter show how temperature impacts fuel economy. In general, your vehicle will use more fuel in cold temperatures.

# Transmission

## MANUAL TRANSMISSION

### Selecting Reverse Gear

Do not engage reverse gear when your vehicle is moving. This can cause damage to the transmission.



E99067

Raise the collar when you select reverse gear.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

### WARNINGS



Always set the parking brake fully and make sure you shift the gearshift lever to park (P). Switch the ignition off and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.



Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than three seconds will limit engine rpm, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

## Selector Lever Positions



E142628

P	Park
R	Reverse
N	Neutral
D	Drive
S	Sport mode

### WARNING



Apply the brakes before shifting the gearshift lever to a forward or reverse gear. Keep the brakes applied until you are ready to move off.

Press the button on the front of the gearshift lever to shift to each position.

The gearshift lever position will be shown in the instrument cluster display.

### Park (P)

### WARNINGS



Shift the gearshift lever to park (P) only when your vehicle is stationary.



Apply the parking brake and shift the gearshift lever to park (P) before leaving your vehicle. Make sure that the gearshift lever is latched in position.

# Transmission

In this position, power is not transmitted to the driven wheels and the transmission is locked. You can start the engine with the gearshift lever in this position.

**Note:** *A warning tone sounds if you open the driver door and you have not shifted the gearshift lever to park (P).*

## Reverse (R)

### WARNINGS



Shift the gearshift lever to reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idle speed.



Always come to a complete stop before shifting the gearshift lever out of reverse (R).

Shift the gearshift lever to reverse (R) to allow your vehicle to move backward.

## Neutral (N)

In this position, power is not transmitted to the driven wheels but the transmission is not locked. You can start the engine with the gearshift lever in this position.

## Drive (D)

Shift the gearshift lever to drive (D) to allow your vehicle to move forward and shift automatically through the forward gears.

The transmission will shift to the appropriate gear for optimum performance based on ambient temperature, road gradient, vehicle load and your input.

## Grade Assist



To activate Grade Assist, press the button on the gearshift lever. The grade assist indicator light will illuminate in the instrument display.

The grade assist feature:

- Provides additional grade braking with a combination of engine motoring and high-voltage battery charging to help maintain vehicle speed when descending a grade.
- As your vehicle determines the amount of engine motoring and high-voltage battery charging, you may notice the engine speed increasing and/or decreasing to help maintain your vehicle speed while descending a grade.

To deactivate Grade Assist, press the button on the gearshift lever when Grade Assist is active. The grade assist light will deactivate.

## Sport Mode (S)

Switch on sport mode by shifting the gearshift lever to Sport (S).

**Note:** *In sport mode the transmission operates as normal but gears are selected more quickly and at higher engine speeds.*

## SelectShift Automatic™ Transmission (if Equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with a SelectShift Automatic transmission gearshift lever. The SelectShift Automatic transmission gives you the ability to change gears up or down (without a clutch) as desired.

In order to prevent the engine from running at too low an RPM, which may cause it to stall, SelectShift still automatically makes some downshifts if it has determined that you have not downshifted in time. Although SelectShift makes some downshifts for you, it still allows you to downshift at any time as long as the SelectShift determines that damage will not be caused to the engine from over-revving.

# Transmission

**Note:** Engine damage may occur if you maintain excessive engine revving without shifting.

SelectShift does not automatically upshift, even if the engine is approaching the RPM limit. It must be shifted manually by pressing the + button.

## If equipped with the toggle on the gearshift lever:

- Press the (+) button to upshift.
- Press the (-) button to downshift.



E142629

## If equipped with steering wheel paddles:

With your vehicle in drive (D), the paddle shifters provide temporary manual control. They allow you the ability to shift gears quickly, without taking your hands off the steering wheel.

You can achieve extensive manual control by moving the gearshift lever to the sport (S) position.

- Pull the right paddle (+) to upshift.
- Pull the left paddle (-) to downshift.



E144821

The system determines when temporary manual control is no longer in use and returns to automatic control.

Upshift to the recommended shift speeds according to the following chart:

Upshifts when accelerating (recommended for best fuel economy)	
Shift from:	
1 - 2	15 mph (24 km/h)
2 - 3	25 mph (40 km/h)
3 - 4	40 mph (64 km/h)
4 - 5	45 mph (72 km/h)
5 - 6	50 mph (80 km/h)

The instrument cluster displays your currently selected gear.

**Note:** The system stays in manual control until you make another shift selection (for example, drive [D]).

## Emergency Park Position Release Lever

### WARNINGS



Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the brake lamps are working.

# Transmission

## WARNINGS



This procedure requires you to shift the gearshift lever out of park (P) causing your vehicle to roll. Make sure you fully set the parking brake before attempting to release the gearshift lever.



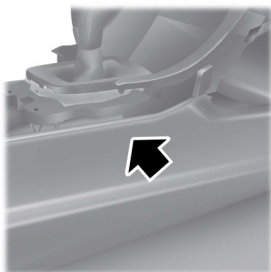
If you release the parking brake and the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working correctly. The system has detected a fault that requires service.

**Note:** For some markets this feature will be disabled.

Your vehicle is equipped with a brake-shift interlock feature that prevents moving the gearshift lever from park (P) when the ignition is in the on position and the brake pedal is not pressed.

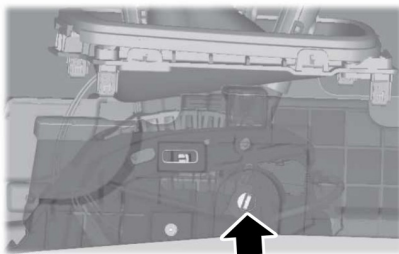
If you cannot move the gearshift lever out of park (P) position with the ignition in the on position and the brake pedal pressed, a malfunction may have occurred. It is possible that a fuse has blown or your vehicle's brake lamps are not operating properly. See **Fuse Specification Chart** (page 227).

If the fuse is not blown and the brake lamps are working properly, the following procedure will allow you to move the gearshift lever from park (P):



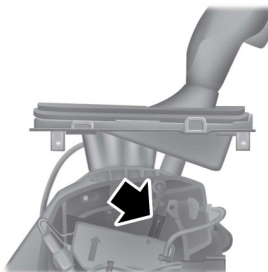
E155984

1. Remove the side panel on the right side of the gearshift lever.



E155985

2. Locate the access hole.



E155983

3. Insert the screwdriver (or similar tool) into the access hole and press the lever forward while pulling the gearshift lever out of the park (P) position and into the neutral (N) position.
4. Remove the tool and reinstall the panel.
5. Start the vehicle and release the parking brake.



# Transmission

---

## **Automatic Transmission Adaptive Learning**

This feature may increase durability and provide consistent shift feel over the life of your vehicle. A new vehicle or transmission may have firm shifts, soft shifts or both. This operation is considered normal and does not affect function or durability of the transmission. Over time, the adaptive learning process fully updates transmission operation.

## **If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow**

**Note:** *Do not rock your vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.*

**Note:** *Do not rock your vehicle for more than a minute or damage to the transmission and tires may occur, or the engine may overheat.*

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern.

Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

# Brakes

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

**Note:** Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out. If your vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

**Note:** Brake dust may accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear. See **Cleaning the Alloy Wheels** (page 258).

**Note:** Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, the brake lamps may flash during heavy braking. Following this the hazard warning flashers may also flash when your vehicle comes to a stop.

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when driving from a car wash or standing water to dry the brakes.

## Brake Assist

Brake assist detects when you brake heavily by measuring the rate at which you press the brake pedal. It provides maximum braking efficiency as long as you press the pedal. Brake assist can reduce stopping distances in critical situations.

## Anti-lock Brake System

This system helps you maintain steering control and vehicle stability during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking.

## HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ANTI-LOCK BRAKES

**Note:** When the system is operating, the brake pedal will pulse and may travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal. You may also hear a noise from the system. This is normal.

The anti-lock braking system will not eliminate the risks when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

## ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

The electric parking brake replaces the conventional handbrake. The operating switch is located in the center console.

### WARNING



Always set the parking brake and leave your vehicle with the transmission in park (P) (automatic transmission) or in first gear (1) or reverse (R) (manual transmission).

# Brakes

**Note:** When you apply the electric parking brake in certain conditions, for example, on a steep hill, the electric parking brake may reapply the brakes within three to ten minutes.

**Note:** You may notice various noises when you apply and release the electric parking brake. This is normal and no cause for concern.

## Parking On a Hill (Vehicles With a Manual Transmission)

If you park your vehicle facing uphill, move the transmission to first gear (1) and turn the steering wheel away from the curb. If you park your vehicle facing downhill, move the transmission to reverse (R) and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.

## Applying the Electric Parking brake

### WARNING



If the brake system warning lamp flashes, there could be a problem with your electric parking brake. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**Note:** The brake system warning lamp will illuminate for ten seconds, if the ignition is turned off after the electric parking brake has been applied, or the electric parking brake has been applied after the ignition has been turned off.

**Note:** The electric parking brake will not automatically apply. You must apply the electric parking brake using the electric parking brake switch.



E147230

Pull the switch up to apply the electric parking brake.

The brake system warning lamp will illuminate to confirm that the electric parking brake has been applied. See **Information Displays** (page 86).

## Apply the electric parking brake when the vehicle is moving

### WARNINGS



Applying the electric parking brake while moving will result in use of the anti-lock braking system. Do not use the electric parking brake system when the vehicle is moving unless the normal brake system is unable to stop the vehicle.



With the exception of emergency conditions (for example, the brake pedal does not work or is blocked), do not apply the electric parking brake while the vehicle is moving. On bends, or poor road surfaces or weather conditions, emergency braking can cause the vehicle to skid out of control or off the road.

If you apply the electric parking brake when your vehicle is moving, the brake system warning lamp will illuminate and a warning chime will sound. See **Information Displays** (page 86).

# Brakes

If your vehicle speed is above 4 mph (6 km/h), the braking force is applied as long as the switch is pulled. Releasing or pressing the switch or pressing the accelerator pedal will stop the braking force.

## Releasing the Electric Parking Brake



E147231

You can release the electric parking brake either manually by pressing the switch or automatically.

## Manual release

### WARNING



If the brake system warning light remains illuminated or flashes after you have released the parking brake, there could be a problem with your braking system. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

You can manually release the electric parking brake by:

1. Turning the ignition on.
2. Pressing the brake pedal.
3. Pressing the electric parking brake switch.

When the electric parking brake is released, the brake system warning lamp will turn off.

## Automatic release - drive away release

Your vehicle will automatically release the parking brake if all of the following conditions exist:

- The driver door is closed.
- The driver safety belt is fastened.
- The vehicle is accelerated.
- There are no faults detected in the parking brake system.

**Note:** If the electric parking brake warning lamp stays illuminated, the electric parking brake will not automatically release. You must release the electric parking brake using the electric parking brake switch.

**Note:** On manual transmission vehicles, if the transmission is not in neutral (N) when you release the clutch pedal and press the accelerator pedal, the electric parking brake will release automatically.

**Note:** On manual transmission vehicles, you must fully press the clutch pedal before the drive away release feature will operate. Drive as normal using the accelerator and clutch pedals and the electric parking brake will be automatically released.

The brake system warning lamp will go off to confirm that the electric parking brake has been released.

**Note:** The electric parking brake drive away release makes starting on a hill easier. This feature will release the parking brake automatically when the vehicle has sufficient drive force to move up the hill. To assure drive away release when starting uphill, press the accelerator pedal quickly.

## Driving with a Trailer

Depending on the slope and the weight of the trailer, your vehicle and trailer may roll backwards slightly when you start on a slope.

To prevent this from happening, do the following:

# Brakes

1. Pull the switch up and hold it in this position.
2. Drive your vehicle, then release the switch when you notice that the engine has developed sufficient driving force.

## Battery With No Charge

### WARNING



You will not be able to apply or release the electric parking brake if the battery is low or has no charge.

If the battery is low or has no charge, use jumper cables and a booster battery.

## HILL START ASSIST

### WARNINGS



The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake. Failure to leave your vehicle securely parked may lead to a crash or injury. See **Electric Parking Brake** (page 160).



You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



The system will turn off if a malfunction is apparent or if you rev the engine excessively. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

The system makes it easier to pull away when your vehicle is on a slope without the need to use the parking brake.

When the system is active, your vehicle remains stationary on the slope for two to three seconds after you release the brake pedal. This allows time to move your foot from the brake to the accelerator pedal. The system releases the brakes automatically once the engine has developed sufficient drive to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the slope. This is an advantage when pulling away on a slope, for example from a car park ramp, traffic lights or when reversing uphill into a parking space.

**Note:** *The system only functions when you bring your vehicle to a complete standstill. Shift the gearshift lever to reverse (R) when facing downhill and first gear (1) when facing uphill.*

**Note:** *There is no warning light to indicate the system is either on or off.*

## Using Hill Start Assist

1. Press the brake pedal to bring your vehicle to a complete standstill. Keep the brake pedal pressed.
2. If the sensors detect that your vehicle is on a slope, the system activates automatically.
3. When you remove your foot from the brake pedal, your vehicle remains on the slope without rolling away for about two to three seconds. This hold time automatically extends if you are in the process of driving off.
4. Drive off in the normal manner. The system releases the brakes automatically.

**Note:** *When you remove your foot from the brake pedal and press the pedal again when the system is active, you will experience significantly reduced brake pedal travel. This is normal.*

## Switching the System On and Off

When you switch the ignition on, the system automatically turns on.

You can switch the system on or off in the information display. See (page 86).

The system remains off until you switch the ignition off.

**Note:** *For vehicles with a manual transmission, the system can be switched on or off.*

**Note:** *For vehicles with an automatic transmission, the system cannot be switched off.*

# Traction Control

---

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The traction control system helps avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces engine power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces engine power in order to increase traction.

## USING TRACTION CONTROL

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

**Note:** *In some situations for example if your vehicle is stuck in snow or mud, turning the system off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin with full engine power.*

### Switching the System Off and On Using the Information Display Controls

Your vehicle comes with this feature already enabled. If required, you can switch this feature off using the information display controls. See **General Information** (page 86).

Stability control will remain on even when you have switched the traction control off.

### Switching the System Off and On Using the Button (If Equipped)

The button is located in the instrument panel.

Press the button. You will see a message in conjunction with an illuminated icon in the display. Press the button again to return the system to normal mode.

Stability control will remain on even when you have switched the traction control off.

# Stability Control

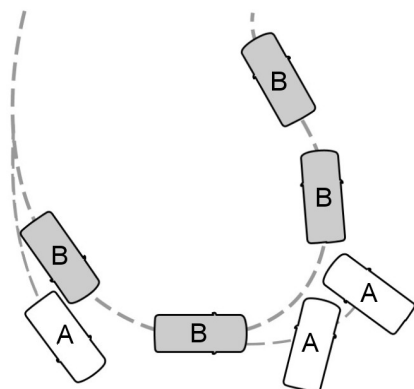
## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### Electronic Stability Program

#### WARNING



The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to do so could result in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.



E72903

- A Without ESP
- B With ESP

The system supports stability when your vehicle starts to slide away from your intended path. The system performs this by braking individual wheels and reducing engine torque as required.

The system also provides an enhanced traction control function by reducing engine torque if the wheels spin when you accelerate. This improves your ability to pull away on slippery roads or loose surfaces, and improves comfort by limiting wheel spin in hairpin bends.

### Stability Control Warning Lamp

While driving, it flashes when the system is operating. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 81).

## USING STABILITY CONTROL

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

### Switching the System Off and On Using the Information Display Controls

Your vehicle comes with this feature already enabled. If required, you can switch this feature off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 86).

Stability control will remain on even when you have switched the traction control off.

### Switching the System Off Using a Switch (If Equipped)

The switch is located in the instrument panel.

Press the switch. You will see a message in conjunction with an illuminated icon in the display. Press the switch again to return the system to normal mode.

Stability control will remain on even when you have switched the traction control off.



# Parking Aids

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### WARNINGS



The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.



If your vehicle has a non-Ford approved trailer tow module the system may not correctly detect objects.



The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause disruptive reflections.



The sensors may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves.



The system does not detect objects that are moving away from your vehicle. They will only be detected shortly after they start to move toward your vehicle.



Take particular care when reversing with a tow ball arm or a rear fitted accessory. For example, a bicycle carrier. The rear parking aid will only indicate the approximate distance from the rear bumper to an object.



If you use a high pressure spray to wash your vehicle, only spray the sensors briefly from a distance not less than eight inches (20 centimeters).

**Note:** If your vehicle has a tow ball arm, the system is turned off automatically when trailer lamps (or lighting boards) are connected to the 13-pin socket through a Ford approved trailer tow module.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from dirt, ice or snow. Do not clean with sharp objects.

**Note:** The system may emit false alerts if it detects a signal using the same frequency as the sensors or if your vehicle is fully loaded.

**Note:** The outer sensors may detect the side walls of a garage. If the distance between the outer sensors and the side wall remains constant for three seconds, the alert will turn off. As you continue the inner sensors will detect objects directly behind your vehicle.

## REAR PARKING AID

### WARNINGS



Sensing is only an aid to detect some objects when moving forward or backward at low speeds. Traffic control systems, inclement weather or an external motor and fan can affect the sensors; this may include reduced performance or false activation. To help avoid personal injury you must read and understand the limitations of the system detailed in this section.



The parking aid system may not prevent contact with small or moving objects that are close to the ground. The parking aid system gives an audible warning when it detects a large object helping to avoid damage to your vehicle. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.

## Rear Sensing System

When the parking aid system produces an audible warning, the audio system may reduce the set volume to a predetermined level.

**Note:** Some add-on equipment can cause reduced performance or false activation. For example, large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks.

**Note:** The parking aid system sensors must be kept clean and free from snow or ice to avoid reduced performance or false activation. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

# Parking Aids

**Note:** If the parking aid sensors are misaligned due to vehicle bumper damage it will cause reduced performance or false activation.

The rear parking aid sensors turn on automatically when you move the transmission selector lever to R (reverse) and your vehicle is moving at a speed of less than 3 mph (5 km/h). Moving your vehicle closer to a large object will increase the audible warning repeat rate. When the object is less than 12 inches (30 centimeters) from the center of your vehicle's rear bumper the audible warning will sound continuously.



E130178

- A Sensor coverage area is up to 71 in (180 cm) from the rear bumper.

**Note:** There is a decreased coverage area at the outer corners.

The system detects large objects when you move the transmission selector lever to R (reverse):

- Your vehicle is moving backward at low speed.
- Your vehicle is stationary but an object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is moving backward at low speed and an object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a low speed.

**Note:** If your vehicle remains stationary for two seconds the audible tone will mute. If your vehicle moves backward, you will hear the tone again.

Move the transmission selector lever from R (reverse) or press the parking aid button to switch the system off. If a fault is present in the system, a warning message appears in the information display and does not allow you to switch the system on. See **Information Messages** (page 96).

## FRONT PARKING AID

### WARNINGS



The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. Take care when using the system to avoid personal injury.



To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse and when using the sensing system.



This system is not designed to prevent contact with small or moving objects. The system is designed to provide a warning to assist you in detecting large stationary objects to avoid damaging your vehicle. The system may not detect smaller objects, particularly those close to the ground.

# Parking Aids

## WARNINGS



Traffic control systems, inclement weather, air brakes and external motors and fans may affect correct operation of the sensing system; this may include reduced performance or a false alerts.

## Front Sensing System

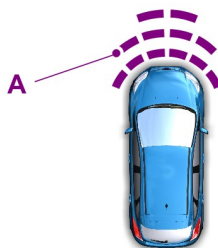
The front sensors are active when the transmission is in any position other than park (P).

You can also press the parking aid button to switch the front parking aid system on without selecting reverse (R).

**Note:** Keep the sensors located on the bumper or fascia free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If the sensors are covered, the system's accuracy can be affected. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

**Note:** If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia, leaving it misaligned or bent, the sensing zone may be altered causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false beeps.

When the parking aid system produces an audible warning, the audio system may reduce the set volume to a predetermined level.



E184301

- A Sensor coverage area is up to 28 in (70 cm) from the front bumper and 6-14 inches (15-35 centimeters) to the side of the front bumper.

When your vehicle approaches an object, a warning tone sounds. When your vehicle moves closer to an object, the warning tone repeat rate increases. The warning tone sounds continuously when an object is 12 in (30 cm) or less from the front bumper.

The system automatically turns off when your vehicle speed reaches 7 mph (12 km/h).

The system detects objects when:

- Your vehicle is moving forward at low speed.
- Your vehicle is moving forward at low speed and an object is approaching the front of your vehicle at a low speed.

Press the parking aid button to switch the system off. If a fault is present in the system, a warning message appears in the information display and does not allow you to switch the system on. See **Information Messages** (page 96).

# Parking Aids

If the transmission is in reverse (R), the front sensing system provides audio warnings when your vehicle is moving and the detected obstacle is moving towards your vehicle. Once the vehicle is stationary, the audio warning will be stopped after 2 seconds.

## Obstacle Distance Indicator (if Equipped)

The system provides obstacle distance indication through the information display. The distance indicator displays when the transmission is in reverse (R).

The indicator displays:

- As the distance to the obstacle decreases the indicator blocks illuminate and move towards the vehicle icon.
- If there is no obstacle detected, the distance indicator blocks are greyed out.

## Vehicles with automatic transmission

If the gearshift is in neutral (N), the system provides obstacle distance indication through the information display. If your vehicle moves the front sensing system provides an audible warning when the vehicle is moving at 7 mph (12 km/h) or below and an obstacle is located inside the detection area. Once the vehicle is stationary, the audio warning will be stopped after 4 seconds.

If the gearshift is in drive (D) or any other forward gear, the front sensing system provides audio warnings when the vehicle is moving and an obstacle is located inside the detection area. Once the vehicle is stationary, the audio warning will be stopped after 2 seconds.

## SIDE SENSING SYSTEM

The side sensing system uses the front and rear side sensors to detect obstacles that are near to the sides of your vehicle. The system places them on a virtual map in the instrument cluster as your vehicle moves past them. The system detects obstacles even when they are no longer in the sensor's field of view.

**Note:** *If an obstacle approaches the side of the vehicle without passing a front or rear side sensor, the obstacle will not be detected.*

The side sensors are active when the transmission is in any other position other than park (P).



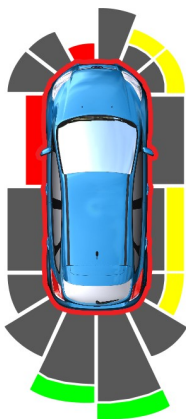
E190458

Coverage area is up to 24 in (60 cm) from the side of your vehicle.

When the system detects an object close to the side of your vehicle, an audible warning sounds. As the object comes closer to the side of your vehicle, the rate of the audible warning increases. The rate of the audible warning varies depending on whether the obstacle is inside or outside of the driving path of your vehicle.

# Parking Aids

## Distance Indication (If Equipped)



E190459

The system may provide obstacle distance indication through the information display.

As the distance to the obstacle decreases, the indicator blocks illuminate and move toward the vehicle icon. If there is no obstacle detected, the distance indicator blocks will not be present.

When you shift to reverse (R), the side sensing system provides audible and visual distance indication when your vehicle is moving and obstacles are detected within 12 in (30 cm), or when obstacles are detected within 12–24 in (30–60 cm) and are inside the driving path of your vehicle. When you stop your vehicle the audible warning stops after two seconds.

**Note:** *Visual distance indication remains on when the transmission is in reverse (R).*

When you shift to drive (D) or any other forward gear, for example, low (L), sport (S) or any forward gear in manual transmission, the side sensing system provides audible and visual distance indication when your vehicle is moving at 7 mph (12 km/h) or below and obstacles

are detected within 12 in (30 cm), or when obstacles are detected within 12–24 in (30–60 cm) and are inside the driving path of your vehicle. When you stop your vehicle the audible warning stops after two seconds and the visual distance indication stops after four seconds.

**Note:** *If the obstacle remains within 12–24 in (30–60 cm) visual distance indication remains on.*

When you shift to neutral (N), the side sensing system only provides visual distance indication when your vehicle is moving at 7 mph (12 km/h) or below, for example when moving on a slope, and obstacles are detected within 12 in (30 cm). When you stop your vehicle the visual distance indication stops after four seconds.

If the side sensing system is not available, the side distance indicator blocks will not be present.

The side sensing system is not available under the following condition:

- If you switch the traction control system off.

The side sensing system may not be available until you have driven approximately the length of your vehicle in order for the system to reinitialize if:

- You switch the ignition on, off and back on.
- Your vehicle remains stationary for over two minutes.
- The anti-lock brake system is activated.
- The traction control system is activated.

# Parking Aids

## ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

### Parallel Parking, Perpendicular Parking, Park Out Assist

#### WARNINGS



You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause disruptive reflections.

The system scans the area adjacent to both sides of your vehicle to locate a suitable parking space.

The system informs you when it locates a suitable parking space. When you stop your vehicle, the system takes control of the steering to guide your vehicle into the parking space.

Park Out Assist automatically steers your vehicle out of a parallel parking space (hands-free) while you control the accelerator, gearshift and brakes. The system visually and audibly instructs you to enter traffic.

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- a spare tire or a significantly worn tire more than the other tires is used
- you use a tire size not recommended by us
- you try to park on a tight curve

- if the edge of the neighboring parked vehicle is high off the ground (for example, a bus, tow truck or flatbed truck)
- the weather conditions are poor (heavy rain, snow, fog, etc).

**Note:** *Keep the sensors, located on the bumper or fascia, free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. Covered sensors can affect the system's accuracy. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.*

Do not use the system if:

- You have attached a foreign object (bike rack or trailer) to the front or rear of your vehicle or close to the sensors.
- You have attached an overhanging object (surfboard) to the roof.
- A foreign object damages or obstructs the front or rear bumper or side sensors.
- The correct tire size is not in use on your vehicle (for example, a mini-spare tire).

### Using Active Park Assist - Parallel Parking

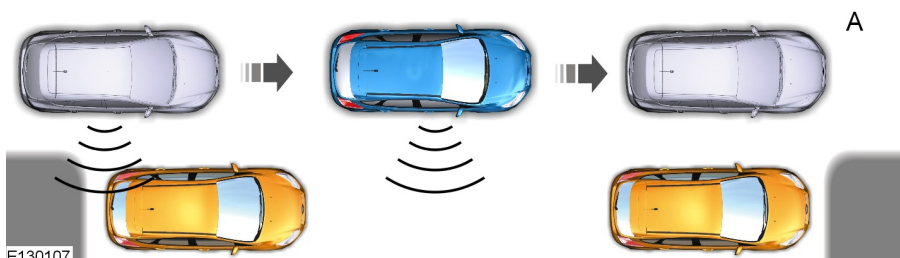


Press the button located on the center console near the gearshift lever once.

When driving at a speed less than 19 mph (30 km/h) the system automatically scans both sides of your vehicle for an available parking space. The system displays a message and a corresponding graphic to indicate it is searching for a parking space. Use the direction indicator to select searching either to the left-hand side or right-hand side of your vehicle.

**Note:** *If you do not make a selection the system will default to the passenger's side.*

# Parking Aids



E130107

When the system finds a suitable space, it displays a message and a tone sounds. Stop your vehicle and follow the instructions on the screen. If your vehicle is moving very slowly, you may need to pull forward a short distance before the system is ready to park.

**Note:** You must observe that the selected space remains clear of obstructions at all times during the maneuver.

**Note:** Active park assist may not detect street furniture and other items. You must make sure the selected space is suitable for parking.

**Note:** You should drive your vehicle as parallel to the other vehicles as possible while passing a parking space.

**Note:** The system always offers the last detected parking space (for example, if your vehicle detects multiple spaces while you are driving, it offers the last one).

**Note:** If driven above approximately 22 mph (35 km/h), the system shows a message to alert you to reduce your vehicle speed.

## Automatic Steering into Parking Space

**Note:** If your vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (9 km/h) or an object interrupts a maneuver before completion, the automatic steering function switches off and you need to take full control of your vehicle.

When you shift the transmission into reverse (R), with your hands off the wheel (and nothing obstructing its movement), your vehicle steers itself into the space. The system displays instructions to move your vehicle back and forth in the space.



E130108

# Parking Aids

When you think your vehicle is properly parked, or you hear a solid tone from the parking aid (accompanied by a display message and a chime), bring your vehicle to a complete stop.

When automatic steering is complete, the system displays a message and a tone sounds, indicating that the active park assist process is finished. You are responsible for checking the parking job and making any necessary corrections before leaving your vehicle.

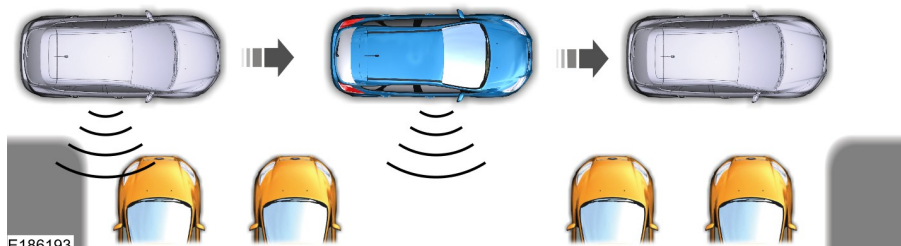
## Using Active Park Assist - Perpendicular Parking



Press the button located on the center console near the gearshift lever twice.

The system displays a message and a corresponding graphic to indicate it is searching for a parking space. Use the direction indicator to select searching either to the left-hand side or right-hand side of your vehicle.

**Note:** If you do not make a selection the system will default to the passenger's side.



When the system finds a suitable space, it displays a message and a tone sounds. Stop your vehicle and follow the instructions on the screen. If your vehicle is moving very slowly, you may need to pull forward a short distance before the system is ready to park.

**Note:** You must observe that the selected space remains clear of obstructions at all times during the maneuver.

**Note:** You should drive your vehicle as perpendicular to the other vehicles as possible while passing a parking space.

**Note:** The system always offers the last detected parking space (for example, if your vehicle detects multiple spaces while you are driving, it offers the last one).

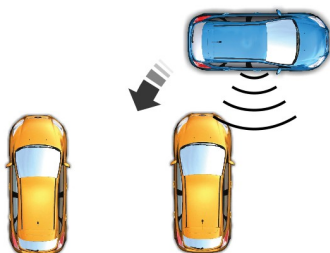
**Note:** If driven above approximately 19 mph (30 km/h), the system shows a message to alert you to reduce your vehicle speed.

## Automatic Steering into Parking Space

**Note:** If your vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (9 km/h) or an object interrupts a maneuver before completion, the automatic steering function switches off and you need to take full control of your vehicle.



# Parking Aids



E186191

When you shift the transmission into reverse (R), with your hands off the wheel (and nothing obstructing its movement), your vehicle steers itself into the space. The system displays instructions to move your vehicle back and forth in the space.

When you think your vehicle is properly parked, or you hear a solid tone from the parking aid (accompanied by a display message and a chime), bring your vehicle to a complete stop.

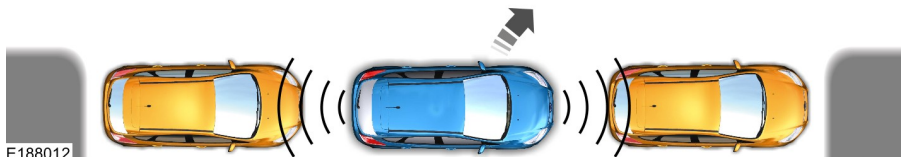
When automatic steering is complete, the system displays a message and a tone sounds, indicating that the active park assist process is finished. You are responsible for checking the parking job and making any necessary corrections before leaving your vehicle.

## Using Active Park Assist - Park Out Assist



While your vehicle is at rest in a parallel parking space, press the active park assist button.

The system displays a message requesting an indication of direction. Use the direction indicator to signal which side of your vehicle you want to exit the parking space.



E188012

The system determines the clearance to the front and rear of your vehicle and automatically steers your vehicle out of a parallel parking space (hands-free) while you control the accelerator, gearshift and brakes. The system visually and audibly guides you to enter traffic.

After the system has directed your vehicle past the adjacent vehicle or object, it guides you to take control of the steering to complete the exit from the parking spot.

**Note:** If the clearance in front of your vehicle allows easy departure, the Park Out Assist feature might not be available.

## Deactivating the Active Park Assist Feature

Manually deactivate the system by:

- Pressing the active park assist button twice.
- Grabbing the steering wheel during and active maneuver.

# Parking Aids

- Driving above approximately 22 mph (35 km/h) for 30 seconds during an active park search.
- Driving above 6 mph (9 km/h) during automatic steering.
- Switching off the traction control system.

Certain vehicle conditions can also deactivate the system, such as:

- Traction control has activated.
- There is an anti-lock brake system activation or failure.

If a problem occurs with the system, a warning message displays accompanied by a tone. Occasional system messages may occur in normal operation. For recurring or frequent system faults, contact an authorized dealer to have your vehicle serviced.

## Troubleshooting the System

<b>The system does not look for a space</b>
The traction control system may be off.
The transmission is in reverse (R). Your vehicle must be moving forward to be able to detect a parking space.

<b>The system does not offer a particular space</b>
The sensors may be covered (for example, snow, ice or dirt buildup). Covered sensors can affect the system's functionality.
There is not enough room in the parking space for your vehicle to safely park.
There is not enough space for the parking maneuver on the opposite side of the parking space.
The parking space is farther than 4.9 ft (1.5 m) or closer than 15.7 in (0.4 m) away.
The transmission is in reverse (R). Your vehicle must be moving forward to be able to detect a parking space.
Your vehicle is going faster than 19 mph (30 km/h) for parallel and 22 mph (35 km/h) for perpendicular parking.

# Parking Aids

## The system does not position the vehicle where I want in the space

Your vehicle is rolling in the opposite direction of the transmission (rolling forward with reverse [R] selected).

An irregular curb along the parking space prevents the system from aligning your vehicle properly.

Vehicles or objects bordering the space may not be positioned correctly.

You pulled your vehicle too far past the parking space. The system performs best when you drive the same distance past the parking space.

The tires may not be installed or maintained correctly (not inflated correctly, improper size, or of different sizes).

A repair or alteration has changed detection capabilities.

A parked vehicle has a high attachment (salt sprayer, snowplow or moving truck bed).

The parking space length or position of parked objects changed after your vehicle passed.

The temperature around your vehicle changes quickly (driving from a heated garage into the cold, or after leaving a car wash).

## WARNINGS

## REAR VIEW CAMERA

### WARNINGS



The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



Back up as slow as possible since higher speeds might limit your reaction time to stop your vehicle.



Use caution when using the rear video camera and the luggage compartment door is ajar. If the luggage compartment door is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image may be incorrect. All guidelines disappear when the luggage compartment door is ajar.



Use caution when turning camera features on or off. Make sure your vehicle is not moving.

The rear view camera system provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle.

During operation, lines appear in the display which represent your vehicle's path and proximity to objects behind your vehicle.

# Parking Aids



E142435

The camera is located on the luggage compartment door.

## Using the Rear View Camera System

The rear view camera system displays what is behind your vehicle when you place the transmission in reverse (R).

**Note:** The reverse sensing system is not effective at speeds above 3 mph (5 km/h) and may not detect certain angular or moving objects.

The system uses three types of guides to help you see what is behind your vehicle:

- Active guidelines: Show the intended path of your vehicle when reversing.
- Fixed guidelines: Show the actual path your vehicle is moving in while reversing in a straight line. This can be helpful when backing into a parking space or aligning your vehicle with another object behind you.
- Centerline: Helps align the center of your vehicle with an object (for example, a trailer).

**Note:** If the transmission is in reverse (R) and the luggage compartment door or liftgate is open, no rear view camera features will display.

**Note:** When towing, the camera only sees what you are towing. This might not provide adequate coverage as it usually provides in normal operation and some objects might not be seen. In some vehicles, the guidelines may disappear when you connect the trailer tow connector.

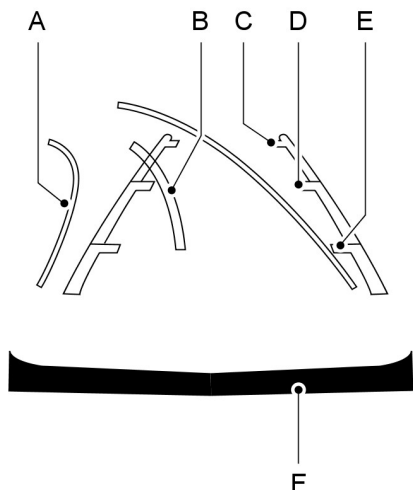
The camera may not operate correctly under the following conditions:

- Nighttime or dark areas if one or both reverse lamps are not operating.
- Mud, water or debris obstructs the camera's view. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.
- The rear of your vehicle is hit or damaged, causing the camera to become misaligned.

## Camera Guidelines

**Note:** Active guidelines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).

# Parking Aids



E142436

- A Active guidelines
- B Centerline
- C Fixed guideline: Green zone
- D Fixed guideline: Yellow zone
- E Fixed guideline: Red zone
- F Rear bumper

Active guidelines are only shown with fixed guidelines. To use active guidelines, turn the steering wheel to point the guidelines toward an intended path. If you change the steering wheel position while reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the original intended path.

The fixed and active guidelines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guidelines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Always use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects are getting closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of the vehicle.

## Manual Zoom

### WARNING



When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

**Note:** Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).

**Note:** When you enable manual zoom, only the centerline is shown.

Selectable settings for this feature are Zoom in (+) and Zoom out (-). Press the symbol in the camera screen to change the view. The default setting is Zoom OFF.

This allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference. The zoom is only active while the transmission is in reverse (R).

## Camera System Settings

To access any of the rear view camera system settings, make the following selections in the multifunctional display when the transmission is not in reverse (R):

Main Menu
Settings
Vehicle
Camera Settings

# Parking Aids

---

## ***Enhanced Park Aids or Park Pilot***

Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF.

The system uses red, yellow and green highlights that appear on top of the video image when any of the sensing systems detect an object.

## ***Rear Camera Delay***

Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF.

The default setting for the rear camera delay is OFF.

When shifting the transmission out of reverse (R) and into any gear other than park (P), the camera image remains in the display until:

- Your vehicle speed sufficiently increases.
- You shift your vehicle into park (P).
- 10 seconds of time elapse.

# Cruise Control

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal. You can use cruise control when your vehicle speed is greater than 20 mph (30 km/h).

## USING CRUISE CONTROL

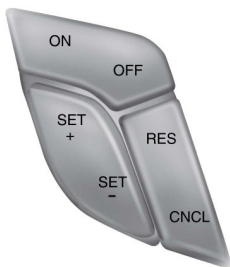
### WARNINGS



Do not use cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or, when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.



When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes but a warning displays.



E197198

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

### Switching Cruise Control On

Press and release **ON**.



The indicator appears in the instrument cluster.

### Setting the Cruise Speed

1. Drive to desired speed.

2. Press and release **SET+**.
3. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

**Note:** The indicator will change color.

**Note:** Cruise control will disengage if the vehicle speed decreases more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below the set speed while driving uphill.

### Changing the Set Speed

- Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the desired speed. Press and release **SET+**.
- Press and hold **SET+** or **SET-**. Release the control when you reach the desired speed.
- Press and release **SET+** or **SET-**. The set speed will change in approximately 3 mph (5 km/h) increments.

**Note:** If you accelerate by pressing the accelerator pedal, the set speed will not change. When you release the accelerator pedal, your vehicle returns to the speed that you previously set.

### Canceling the Set Speed

Press and release **CAN** or tap the brake pedal. You will not erase the set speed.

### Resuming the Set Speed

Press and release **RES**.

### Switching Cruise Control Off


Press and release **OFF** when the system is in stand by mode or switch the ignition off.


**Note:** You will erase the set speed if you switch the system off.


# Cruise Control


## USING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL (If Equipped)


### WARNINGS


 Always pay close attention to changing road conditions, especially when using adaptive cruise control. Adaptive cruise control cannot replace attentive driving. Failing to follow any of the warnings below or failing to pay attention to the road may result in a crash, serious injury or death.


 The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system. You must intervene if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.

 Adaptive cruise control does not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 6 mph (10 km/h).


 The system does not brake for slow or stationary vehicles, pedestrians, objects in the road, oncoming and crossing vehicles.


 Do not use the system when entering or leaving a freeway.

 Do not use adaptive cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

 Do not use the system in poor visibility, specifically fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.

### WARNINGS

 Do not use the system when towing a trailer with electronic aftermarket trailer brake controls. Electronic aftermarket trailer brakes do not function properly when you switch on the system because the brakes are electronically controlled. Failing to do so may result in loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury. Overrun brakes, surge brakes and other non-electronic trailer-brake controllers are not affected.

 Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failing to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.

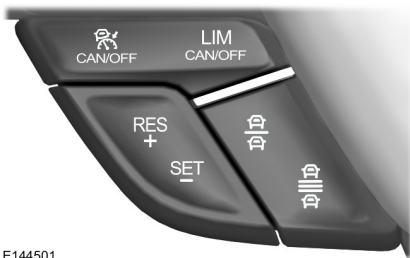
The system is designed to help you maintain a gap from the vehicle in front of you. If there is no vehicle in front of you the system will maintain a set speed. The system is intended to provide enhanced operation of your vehicle when following other vehicles which are in the same lane and traveling in the same direction. You can select from one of five gap settings.

The system is based on the use of a radar sensor which projects a beam directly forward of your vehicle. This beam will detect any vehicle ahead within the system's range.

If there is no vehicle in front of you, the system maintains your set speed.



# Cruise Control

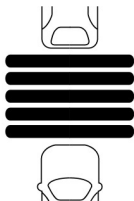


E144501

Use the steering wheel controls to operate the system.

## Switching the System On

Press and release the Adaptive Cruise Control **CAN/OFF** button.

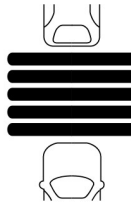


E82312

The cruise control indicator, **SET mph (kph)**, the current gap setting indicator and **Standby** displays in the instrument cluster.

## Setting a Speed

1. Drive to desired speed.
2. Press and release **SET-**.
3. The information display shows a green indicator light, current gap setting and desired set speed.
4. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.



E82312

5. When the system detects a vehicle in front of you, it will be displayed above the horizontal bars.

**Note:** When adaptive cruise control is active, the set speed displayed in the information display may vary slightly from the speedometer.

## Changing the Set Speed

- Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the desired speed. Press and release **SET-**.
- Press and hold **RES+** or **SET-** until the desired set speed shows on the information display. The vehicle speed will gradually change to the selected speed.
- Press and release **RES+** or **SET-**. The set speed changes in 1 mph (1 km/h) increments.

The system may apply the brakes to slow the vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed displays continuously in the information display while the system is active.

## Canceling the Set Speed

Press the brake pedal or the clutch pedal for an extended period, or press and release the Adaptive Cruise Control **CAN/OFF** button. The last set speed displays with a strikethrough.

# Cruise Control

## Resuming the Set Speed

Press and release **RES+**. The vehicle returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed displays continuously in the information display while the system is active.

## Switching the System Off

Press and release the Adaptive Cruise Control **CAN/OFF** button when the system is in stand by mode or switch the ignition off.

**Note:** *The set speed memory erases when you switch off the system.*

## Following a Vehicle

### WARNINGS



When following a vehicle, your vehicle does not decelerate automatically to a stop, nor does your vehicle always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Always apply the brakes when necessary. Failing to do so may result in a crash, serious injury or death.



Adaptive cruise control only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. You should always apply the brakes when necessary. Failing to do so may result in a crash, serious injury or death.

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain a preset gap.

The lead vehicle graphic illuminates.

Your vehicle maintains a constant gap behind the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of your lane or out of view.
- The vehicle speed falls below 12 mph (20 km/h).
- A new gap is set.

The system applies the brakes to slow your vehicle to maintain a safe gap from the vehicle in front. The maximum braking which the system can apply is limited. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

If the system predicts that its maximum braking level is insufficient, an audible warning sounds and a message appears in the information display while the system continues to brake.

The system is designed to assist you by warning you of the risk of a crash with the vehicle in front of you.

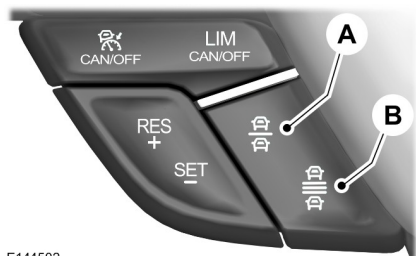
The system is designed to alert you by warning chimes and a visual warning in the information display.

Brake support is turned on to enable full braking effectiveness and reduce the severity of a crash with the vehicle in front of you.

**Note:** *The brakes may emit a sound when modulated by the adaptive cruise control system.*

# Cruise Control

## Setting the Gap

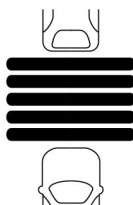


E144502

- A Gap decrease.
- B Gap increase.

You can decrease or increase the gap between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you by pressing the gap control.

**Note:** It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.



E82312

The selected gap appears in the information display as shown by the bars in the graphic. Five gap settings are available.

**Note:** The gap setting is time dependent and therefore the distance will automatically adjust with your speed.

## Adaptive cruise control gap settings

Set speed mph ( km/h)	Graphic display, bars indicated between vehicles	Time gap, seconds	Gap yd (m)	Dynamic beha- vior
62 (100)	1	1	31 (28)	Sport
62 (100)	2	1.2	36 (33)	
62 (100)	3	1.5	46 (42)	Normal
62 (100)	4	1.8	55 (50)	
62 (100)	5	2.1	63 (58)	Comfort

**Note:** The system status and settings will remain unchanged each time you switch the ignition on.

# Cruise Control

## Overriding the System

### WARNING



Whenever the driver is overriding the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, the system does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain separation from any vehicle ahead.

You can override the set speed and gap by pressing the accelerator pedal.



When you override the system, the green indicator light illuminates and the lead vehicle graphic does not show in the information display.

The system resumes operation when you release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle speed decreases to the set speed, or a lower speed if following a slower vehicle.

## Automatic Switch Off

The system does not operate below 12 mph (20 km/h). An audible warning sounds and the automatic braking releases if the vehicle drops below this speed.

Automatic cancellation can also occur if:

- The tires lose traction.
- The engine speed is too low.
- You apply the parking brake.

**Note:** If the engine speed drops too low, the information display indicates low engine speed. Shift to a lower gear (manual transmission only) to avoid automatic cancellation.

## Hilly Condition Usage

You should select a lower gear position when the system is active in situations such as prolonged downhill driving on steep grades, for example in mountainous areas. The system needs additional engine braking in these situations to reduce the load on the vehicle's regular brake system to prevent them from overheating.

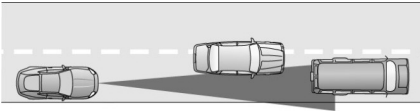
**Note:** An audible warning sounds and the system shuts down if it applies brakes for an extended period of time. This allows the brakes to cool down. The system functions normally again when the brakes have cooled down.

## Detection Beam Issues

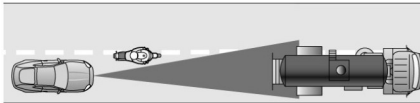
The radar sensor has a limited field of vision. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations. The lead vehicle graphic does not illuminate if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.

# Cruise Control

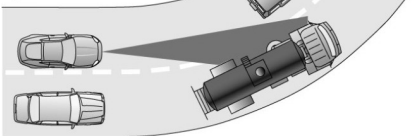
**A**



**B**



**C**



E71621

Detection issues can occur:

- A With vehicles that edge into your lane that can only be detected once they have moved fully into your lane.
- B Motorcyclists may be detected late, or not at all.
- C With vehicles in front of you when going into and coming out of a bend. The detection beam will not follow sharp curves in the road.

In these cases the system may brake late or unexpectedly. You should stay alert and intervene if necessary.

If something hits the front of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detections. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

## System Not Available

Conditions that can cause the system to deactivate or prevent the system from activating when requested include:

- A blocked sensor.
- High brake temperature.
- A failure in the system or a related system.

## Blocked Sensor



E145632

A message displays if something obstructs the radar signals from the sensor. The sensor is located on the lower grille. The system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and does not function when something obstructs the radar signals.

Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors and aftermarket lights may also block the sensor.

# Cruise Control

The following table lists possible causes and actions for this message displaying.

Cause	Action
The surface of the radar in the grille is dirty or obstructed in some way.	Clean the grille surface in front of the radar or remove the object causing the obstruction.
The surface of the radar in the grille is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait a short time. It may take several minutes for the radar to detect that it is free from obstruction.
Heavy rain or snow is interfering with the radar signals.	Do not use the system in these conditions because it may not detect any vehicles ahead.
Swirling water, snow or ice on the surface of the road may interfere with the radar signals.	Do not use the system in these conditions because it may not detect any vehicles ahead.

It is possible to get a blockage warning and not be blocked. A false blocked condition self clears or clears after a key cycle.

## Switching to Normal Cruise Control

### WARNING



Normal cruise control does not brake due to slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.

You can manually change from adaptive cruise control to normal cruise control through the information display.



The cruise control indicator light replaces the adaptive cruise control indicator light if you select normal cruise control. The gap setting does not display, the system does not automatically respond to lead vehicles and automatic braking does not activate. The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

## SPEED LIMITER

### Principle of Operation

#### WARNING



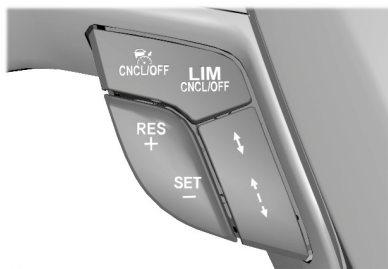
When you are going downhill, your speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes but a warning will be given.

The system allows you to set a speed, to which your vehicle then becomes limited. The set speed will become the effective maximum speed of your vehicle, but with the option to temporarily exceed this limit if required.

### Using the System

**Note:** *The set speed limit can be intentionally exceeded for a short period of time if required, for example when overtaking.*

**The system is operated by adjustment controls mounted on the steering wheel.**



E184571

### Switching the System On and Off

Press LIM CNCL/OFF to set the limiter in standby mode. The information display will prompt you to set a speed. Press LIM CNCL/OFF with the limiter in standby mode to turn the system OFF.

### Setting the Speed Limit

- Press SET- with the limiter in standby mode to set the limiter to the current vehicle speed.
- Press RES+ or SET- to select your desired speed limit. The speed is displayed in the information display and stored as the set speed.
- Press LIM CNCL/OFF to cancel the limiter and place it in standby mode. The information display will show the set speed crossed out.
- Press RES+ to resume the limiter. The information display will show the set speed.

### Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit

Depress the accelerator fully to temporarily turn the system off. The system will reactivate once your vehicle speed drops below the set speed.

### System Warnings

If you accidentally exceed the set speed, the set speed indicator in the information display will flash and you will hear an audible warning chime.

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, only the set speed indicator in the information display will flash.

## DRIVER ALERT

### Principle of Operation

#### WARNINGS



The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.



At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required.

# Driving Aids

## WARNINGS



If the sensor becomes blocked the system may not function.



Take regular rest breaks as required and do not wait for the system to warn you if you feel tired.



Take rest breaks only where it is safe to do so.



Certain driving styles and behavior may result in the system issuing a warning even if you are not feeling tired.



In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all influence the sensor.



The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



The system may not operate in areas during roadwork construction.



The system may not operate on roads with sharp bends or narrow lanes.



Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.



If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system may not function correctly.

**Note:** *Keep the windshield free from obstructions such as bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.*

**Note:** *The system assists you when driving on fast main roads and freeways.*

**Note:** *The system calculates an alertness level at vehicle speeds above approximately 40 mph (65 km/h).*

The system automatically monitors your driving behavior.

The system is designed to alert you if it detects that you are becoming drowsy or if your driving deteriorates.

## Using Driver Alert

### Switching the System On and Off

**Note:** *The system will remain on or off depending on how it was last set.*

Switch the system on using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 86).

The system will calculate your alertness level based upon your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings and other factors.

### System Warnings

**Note:** *The system will not issue warnings below approximately 40 mph (65 km/h).*

The warning system has two stages:

1. A temporary warning is issued to advise you to take a rest. This message only appears for a short time.
2. If you do not rest and the system continues to detect that your driving deteriorates, it will issue a further warning. This will remain in the information display until you cancel it. See **Information Messages** (page 96).

Press **OK** on the steering wheel control to remove the warning.

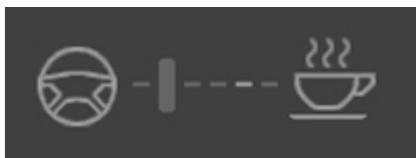
### System Display

When active the system will run automatically in the background and only issue warnings if required. You can view the status at any time using the information display. See **General Information** (page 86).



# Driving Aids

The alertness level is shown by six steps as a colored bar.



E131358

Alertness level is fine, no rest required.



E131359

Alertness level is critical, indicating that you should take a rest as soon as it is safe to do so.

The status bar will travel from left to right as the calculated alertness level decreases. As the rest icon is approached the color turns from green to yellow and then finally red when a rest break must be taken.

- Green: No rest required.
- Yellow: First (temporary) warning.
- Red: Second warning.

Your alertness level will be shown in grey if:

- the camera sensor cannot track the road lane markings
- your vehicle speed drops below approximately 40 mph (65 km/h).

## Resetting the System

You can reset the system by:

- switching the ignition off and on
- stopping your vehicle and then opening and closing the driver's door.

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM

### Lane Keeping Alert

#### Principle of Operation

##### WARNINGS



The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.



At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required.



If the sensor becomes blocked the system may not function.



The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings such as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.



In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all influence the sensor.



The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



The system may not operate in areas during roadwork construction.



The system may not operate on roads with sharp bends or narrow lanes.



Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.



If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system may not function correctly.

**Note:** Keep the windshield free from obstructions such as bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.

# Driving Aids

**Note:** The system may assist you when driving on fast main roads and freeways.

**Note:** The system may not operate during hard braking or acceleration and when you are intentionally steering your vehicle.

**Note:** The system will operate with a minimum of one tracked lane marking.

**Note:** The system will only operate above vehicle speeds of approximately 40 mph (65 km/h).

The sensor is located behind the interior mirror. It continuously monitors conditions to alert you of unintentional lane drifting at high speeds.

The system will automatically detect and track the lane markings on the road. If your vehicle unintentionally drifts toward the road lane markings, a warning will be shown in the display. There is also a warning given in the form of a vibration felt through the steering wheel.

## Using Lane Keeping Alert

### Switching the System On and Off

**Note:** When you switch the system off, a warning indicator will remain illuminated in the information display. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 81).

**Note:** The system status and settings will remain unchanged when you switch the ignition on and off.



E132099

Switch the system on and off using the button on the direction indicator stalk.

Press the button twice to switch the system on. Press the button once to switch the system off.

### Setting the Steering Wheel Vibration Level

The system has three intensity levels which you can set using the information display. See **General Information** (page 86).

### Setting the System Sensitivity

You can adjust how quickly the system warns you of a dangerous situation. The system has two sensitivity levels which you can set using the information display. See **General Information** (page 86).

### System Warnings



E132651

A column of lane markings are displayed either side of the vehicle graphic.

The lane markings are color coded as follows:

- Green: The system is ready to warn you of any unintentional lane departure.
- Red: Your vehicle is approaching or is too close to the detected lane boundary. Take immediate safe action to reposition your vehicle.
- Gray: The relevant lane boundary will be suppressed.

# Driving Aids

Instances where a lane boundary may be suppressed:

- Lane markings on the road may not be detected by the sensor.
- You turn the direction indicator for that side of your vehicle on.
- If you apply direct steering, accelerate fast or brake hard.
- Your vehicle speed is outside the operating limits.
- If there is an anti-lock brake or stability control intervention.
- Narrow lane width.

If the lane markings in the display turn red or you feel a vibration through the steering wheel you must take immediate and safe action to align your vehicle. Correct any unintended lane drift immediately.

## Lane Keeping Aid

### Switching the System On and Off

**Note:** The system does not automatically turn on every time you switch the ignition on.

**Note:** When you switch the system on, this will automatically turn lane keeping alert on.



E132099

Switch the system on and off using the button on the indicator stalk.

Press the button three times to switch the system on. Press the button again to switch the system off.

### Setting the System Sensitivity

You can adjust how quickly the system intervenes in a dangerous situation. The system has two sensitivity levels which you can set using the information display. See **General Information** (page 86).

### System Warnings



E132651

A column of lane markings are displayed either side of the vehicle graphic.

The lane markings are color coded as follows:

- Green: The system is ready to warn you of any unintentional lane departure.
- Yellow: The system will automatically apply a steering torque to align your vehicle path and correct any unintended lane drift.
- Red: Your vehicle is approaching or is too close to the detected lane boundary. The steering wheel will give a vibration warning. Take immediate safe action to reposition your vehicle.

Instances where a lane boundary may be suppressed:

- Lane markings on the road may not be detected by the sensor.
- You turn the direction indicator for that side of your vehicle on.

# Driving Aids

- If you apply direct steering, accelerate fast or brake hard.
- Your vehicle speed is outside the operating limits.
- If there is an anti-lock brake or stability control intervention.
- Narrow lane width.

**Note:** You can override the system at any time during its operation by turning the steering wheel.

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM

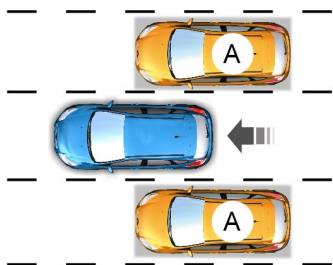
### Blind Spot Information System (BLIS™) with Cross Traffic Alert

(If Equipped)

#### WARNING



Do not use the system as a replacement for using the mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. You should only use the system as an aid. It is not a replacement for careful driving.



E124788

The system is a convenience feature that assists you in detecting vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone (A). The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 10 feet (3 meters) beyond the rear bumper. The system is designed to alert you if other vehicles enter the blind spot zone when driving.

Cross Traffic Alert is designed to warn you of vehicles approaching from the sides when the transmission is in reverse (R).

**Note:** The Blind Spot Information System does not prevent contact with other vehicles or objects; nor detect parked vehicles, people, animals or infrastructure (fences, guardrails, trees, etc.). It's only designed to alert you to vehicles in the blind zones.

**Note:** Vehicles that pass through the blind spot zone quickly (typically less than 2 seconds) will not trigger the alert.

#### Using the Systems

The Blind Spot Information System turns on when you start the engine and you drive your vehicle forward above 5 mph (8 km/h); it remains on while the transmission is in drive (D) or neutral (N). If shifted out of drive (D) or neutral (N), the system enters cross traffic alert mode. Once shifted back into drive (D), the Blind Spot Information System turns back on when you drive your vehicle above 5 mph (8 km/h).

**Note:** The Blind Spot Information System does not function in reverse (R) or park (P) or provide any additional warning when a turn signal is on.

**Note:** Cross Traffic Alert is designed to detect approaching vehicles from up to 46 ft (14 m) away, though coverage decreases when the sensors are blocked. Reversing slowly helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.

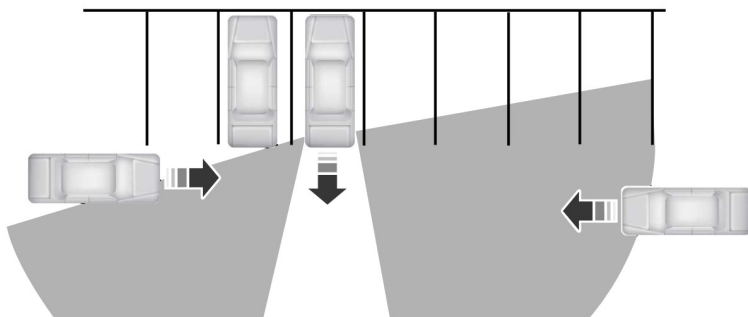
# Driving Aids

**Note:** For manual transmission vehicles, the Cross Traffic Alert will be active only if the transmission is in reverse (R). If your vehicle is rolling backwards and the transmission is not in reverse (R) then Cross Traffic Alert will not be active.

## WARNING



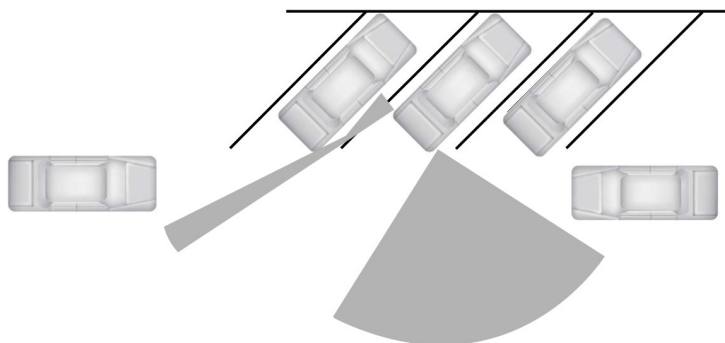
Do not use the system as a replacement for using the mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. You should only use the system as an aid. It is not a replacement for careful driving.



E142440

In this first example, the left sensor is only partially obstructed; zone coverage is nearly maximized.

# Driving Aids



E142441

Zone coverage also decreases when parking at shallow angles. Here, the left sensor is mostly obstructed; zone coverage on that side is severely limited.

## System Lights and Messages



E142442

The system displays a yellow warning indicator located in the exterior mirrors.

**Note:** It will dim when the ambient light decreases.

Cross Traffic Alert also sounds a series of tones and a message appears in the information display indicating a vehicle is coming from the right or left. Cross Traffic Alert works with the reverse sensing system that sounds its own series of tones. See **Parking Aids** (page 167).

## System Sensors

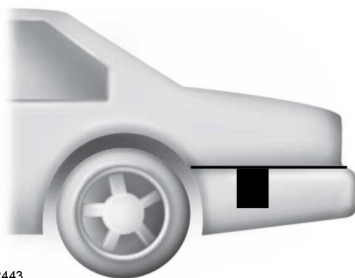
### WARNING



Prior to the system recognizing a blocked condition and issuing a warning, the number of missed objects will increase.

**Note:** It is possible to get a blockage warning with no blockage present; this is rare and known as a false blockage warning. A false blocked condition either self-corrects or clears after a key cycle.

# Driving Aids



E142443

The system uses radar sensors which are located behind the bumper fascia on each side of your vehicle. Do not allow mud, snow or bumper stickers to obstruct these areas, this can cause degraded system performance.

If the system detects a degraded performance condition, a message warning of a blocked sensor or low visibility will appear in the information display along with a warning indicator. You can clear the information display warning but the warning indicator will remain illuminated.

When you remove a blockage, you can reset the system in two ways:

- While driving, the system detects at least two objects.
- You cycle the ignition from on to off and then back on.

If the blockage is still present after the key cycle and driving in traffic, check again for a blockage.

## Reasons for messages being displayed

The radar surface is dirty or obstructed	Clean the fascia area in front of the radar or remove the obstruction.
The radar surface is not dirty or obstructed	Drive normally in traffic for a few minutes to allow the radar to detect passing vehicles so it can clear the blocked state.
Heavy rain-fall or snowfall interferes with the radar signals	No action required. The system automatically resets to an unblocked state once the rainfall or snowfall rate decreases or stops. Do not use the Blind Spot Information System or Cross Traffic Alert in these conditions.

## Detection Limitations

There may be instances where the system will not always detect vehicles entering and exiting the blind spot zone.

Instances which may cause non-detection:

- Debris build up on the rear bumper panels in the area of the sensors.
- Certain maneuvering of vehicles entering and exiting the blind spot zone.
- Vehicles passing through the blind spot zone at high speed.
- Severe weather conditions.
- Several vehicles passing through the blind spot zone following each other closely.

# Driving Aids

The following are other situations that may limit the Cross Traffic Alert system:

- Adjacently parked vehicles or objects obstructing the sensors.
- Approaching vehicles passing at speeds greater than 15 mph (24 km/h).
- Driving in reverse faster than 5 mph (8 km/h).
- Backing out of an angled parking spot.

## False Alerts

**Note:** *If your vehicle has a trailer tow module approved by us, the system will detect a connected trailer and turn off. For non-factory equipped tow bars, you may want to turn the Blind Spot Information System off manually.*

There may be certain instances when there is a false alert by either the Blind Spot Information or the Cross Traffic Alert systems that illuminates the alert indicator with no vehicle in the coverage zone. Some amount of false alerts are normal; they are temporary and self-correct.

## Detection Errors

If either system senses a problem with the left or right sensor, the Blind Spot Information System warning indicator will illuminate and a message will appear in the information display.

All other system faults will display only with a message in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 96).

## Switching the Systems Off and On

You can temporarily switch off one or both systems in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 96). When you switch off the Blind Spot Information System, you will not receive alerts and the information display will display a system off message.

**Note:** *The Cross Traffic Alert system always switches on whenever the ignition is switched on. However, the Blind Spot Information System will remember the last selected on or off setting.*

One or both systems cannot be switched off when MyKey is used. See **Principle of Operation** (page 38).

You can also have one or both systems switched off permanently at an authorized dealer. Once switched off, the system can only be switched back on at an authorized dealer.

## TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION

### Principle of Operation

#### WARNINGS



The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.



At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required.



If the sensor becomes blocked the system may not function.

**Note:** *In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all prevent the sensor from functioning correctly.*

**Note:** *Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.*

**Note:** *If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system may not function correctly.*

**Note:** *Always fit Ford original parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs may reduce system performance.*



**Note:** Keep the windshield free from obstructions such as bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.

**Note:** The system may not detect all traffic signs and may read signs incorrectly.

**Note:** The system is designed to automatically detect traffic signs meeting the Vienna convention.

**Note:** Traffic sign data provided by the navigation system contains information integrated to the data carrier release.

There is a sensor mounted behind the interior rear view mirror. It continuously monitors road signs to inform you of the current speed limit and overtaking regulations.

The system automatically detects recognisable traffic signs, such as:

- Speed limit signs.
- No overtaking signs.
- Speed limit cancellation signs.

When the system recognises a traffic sign, it will be shown in the display.

## Using the System

### Switching the System On and Off

**Note:** The system status and settings will remain unchanged during ignition cycles.

You can switch the system on and off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 86).

### Setting the System Speed Warning

The system has a number of speed warning levels which can be set using the information display. See **General Information** (page 86).

## System Display



E 132994

The system can display two traffic signs in parallel.

You can view the status at any time using the information display.

The system display is in four stages as follows:

1. All new recognizable traffic signs will appear brighter than the other traffic signs in the display.
2. After a predetermined time they will be shown normally.
3. After a predetermined distance they will be shown greyed out.
4. After another predetermined distance they will be deleted.


If the system detects a supplementary traffic sign, this sign is indicated as a box below the respective traffic sign. For example, when passing a reduced speed limit in wet road conditions sign.


If your vehicle has a navigation system, stored traffic sign data may influence the indicated speed limit value.


## ACTIVE CITY STOP


### Principle of Operation


#### WARNINGS


 You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.


 To achieve full system performance you must break in the braking system. See **Breaking-In** (page 221). Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

 If the system applies the brakes and the engine stops the hazard warning flashers will automatically turn on. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.


 The system does not react to cyclists, motorcyclists, pedestrians, animals or vehicles that are driving in a different direction. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.


 The system does not operate during harsh acceleration or steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.


 The system may not operate during cold or severe weather conditions. Snow, ice, heavy rain and spray can influence the system. Keep the hood free of snow and ice. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.


 The system may not operate when driving around sharp curves. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.

#### WARNINGS

 The system may not operate correctly if you replace the windshield with a non-Ford windshield. Do not carry out windshield repairs in front of the sensor. Failure to adhere to this warning may lead to an accident or injury.

 The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflections. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

 The system will not operate correctly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstructions, for example, bird droppings, insects, snow or ice. Failure to adhere to this warning may lead to an accident or injury.

 When you switch the ignition on the sensor transmits a laser beam. Never look directly into the sensor with any type of object, there is a risk of eye injury.

The sensor is on the rear of the interior mirror. It continuously monitors conditions to decide when to intervene.

The system operates at speeds below approximately 25 mph (40 km/h) by applying the brakes if it detects that a crash is likely. If the system applies the brakes, a message appears in the information display.

The system may reduce the risk of a low speed crash into another vehicle. It also helps reduce impact damage or may avoid the crash completely.

**Note:** *You must depress the brake pedal to obtain full braking force.*

## Switching the System Off and On

In certain situations, it is advisable to switch the system off. For example:

- Driving off road when objects may cover the windshield.
- Driving through a car wash facility.


Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF. The default setting for active city stop is ON.


You can switch the system off and on using the information display. See (page 86).


## COLLISION WARNING SYSTEM


### PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

#### WARNINGS


 You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.


 To achieve full system performance you must break in the braking system. See (page 160). Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.


 The system does not react to cyclists, animals, pedestrians at night, or vehicles that are driving in a different direction. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

 The system does not operate during harsh acceleration or steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.

#### WARNINGS

 The system may or may not operate or may operate with reduced function during cold or severe weather conditions. Snow, ice, rain, spray and fog can influence the system. Keep the front camera and radar free of snow and ice. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

 System performance may reduce in situations where the camera's detection capability is limited. These situations include but are not limited to direct or low sunlight, vehicles at night without tail lights, unconventional vehicle types, pedestrians with complex backgrounds, running pedestrians, partly obscured pedestrians, or pedestrians which cannot be distinguished from a group. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

 The system cannot help prevent all collisions. Do not rely on this system to replace driver judgment and the need to maintain distance and speed.

**Note:** *The Pre-Collision Assist system is active at speeds above approximately 3 mph (5 km/h).*

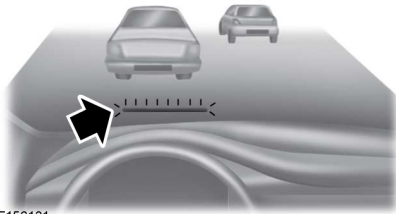


E156130

If your vehicle is rapidly approaching another stationary vehicle, a vehicle traveling in the same direction as yours, or a pedestrian within your driving path, the system is design to provide three levels of functionality:

1. Alert
2. Brake Support
3. Active Braking

# Driving Aids



E156131

**Alert:** When activated, a red warning light flashes, an audible warning chime sounds and a warning message shows in the information display.

**Brake Support:** The brake support system assists the driver in reducing the collision speed by lightly applying the brakes. If the risk of collision further increases after the warning light illuminates, the brake support prepares the brake system for rapid braking. This may be apparent to the driver. The system does not automatically activate the brakes, but if you press the brake pedal, the system may apply full force, even if the brake pedal is lightly pressed.

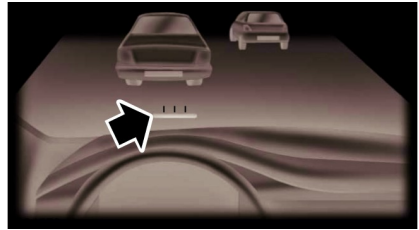
**Active Braking:** Active braking may apply if the system determines that a collision is imminent. The system may help the driver reduce impact damage or avoid the crash completely.

**Note:** *If you perceive Pre-Collision Assist alerts as being too frequent or disturbing, then you can reduce the alert sensitivity, though the manufacturer recommends using the highest sensitivity setting where possible. Setting lower sensitivity would lead to fewer and later system warnings.*

## Distance Alert

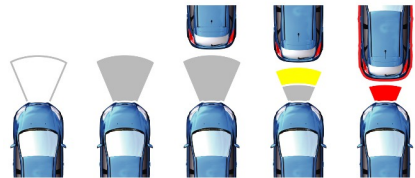
If the distance to the lead vehicle is small, the red warning light illuminates in the windshield.

**Note:** *The red light bar is smaller and does not flash when Distance Alert is active.*



## Distance Indication

Distance indication is a function that provides a graphical indication of the time gap to other vehicles traveling in the same direction.



E190004

**Note:** *Distance Alert and Distance Indication deactivates when adaptive cruise control is active. The distance indication display unless adaptive cruise control is OFF.*

# Driving Aids

Speed	Sensitivity	Graphics	Distance Gap	Time Gap
62mph (100km/h)	Normal	Grey	>25m	>0.9sec
62mph (100km/h)	Normal	Yellow	between 17m and 25m	between 0.6sec and 0.9sec
62mph (100km/h)	Normal	Red	<17m	<0.6sec

## Adjusting Pre-Collision Assist Settings

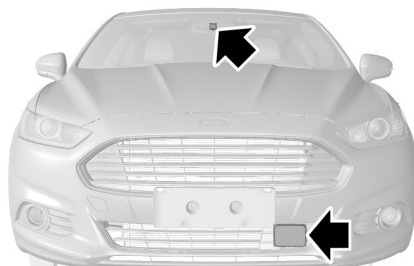
You can adjust the Alert and Distance Alert sensitivity to one of three possible settings by using the information display control. See (page 86).

You can switch the distance indication function off using the information display controls. See (page 86).

If required, you can switch active braking off using the information display controls. See (page 86).

**Note:** *Active braking automatically turns on every time you switch the ignition on.*

## Blocked Sensors



E184569

If a message regarding a blocked sensor or front camera appears in the information display, the radar signals or camera images are obstructed. The radar sensor is located behind a fascia cover near the driver side of the lower grille. With an obstructed radar, the Pre-Collision Assist system does not function and cannot detect a vehicle ahead. With the front camera obstructed, the Pre-Collision Assist system function reduces. The following table lists possible causes and actions for when this message displays.

## Driving Aids

Cause	Action
The surface of the radar in the grille is dirty or obstructed in some way.	Clean the grille surface in front of the radar or remove the object causing the obstruction.
The surface of the radar in the grille is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait a short time. It may take several minutes for the radar to detect that there is no obstruction.
Heavy rain, spray, snow, or fog is interfering with the radar signals.	The Pre-Collision Assist system is temporarily disabled. Pre-Collision Assist should automatically reactivate a short time after the weather conditions improve.
Swirling water, or snow or ice on the surface of the road may interfere with the radar signals.	The Pre-Collision Assist system is temporarily disabled. Pre-Collision Assist should automatically reactivate a short time after the weather conditions improve.
Radar is out of alignment due to a front end impact.	Contact an authorized dealer to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.
The windshield in front of the camera is dirty or obstructed in some way.	Clean the outside of the windshield in front of the camera.
The windshield in front of the camera is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait a short time. It may take several minutes for the camera to detect that there is no obstruction.

**Note:** Proper system operation requires a clear view of the road by the camera. Have any windshield damage in the area of the camera's field of view repaired.

**Note:** If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detections. Contact an authorized dealer to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.

**Note:** If your vehicle detects excessive heat at the camera or a potential misalignment condition, a message may display in the information display indicating temporary sensor unavailability. This message deactivates automatically when operational conditions are corrected (for example, when the ambient temperature around the sensor decreases or the sensor automatically recalibrates successfully).

## DRIVE CONTROL

### Driver Select Suspension

Driver select suspension delivers a unique driving experience through a suite of sophisticated electronic vehicle systems. These systems continuously monitor your driving inputs and the road conditions to optimize ride comfort, steering and handling.

Driver select suspension consists of the following systems:

- Continuously controlled damping dynamically adjusts the shock absorbers stiffness in real time to match the road surface and driver inputs. This system continuously monitors your vehicle's motion (roll, pitch, bounce), suspension position, load, speed, road conditions, and steering to adjust the suspension damping for optimal vehicle control.
- Electronically power-assisted steering adjusts steering effort and feel based on your vehicle speed and your inputs.

You can configure which of the modes are active when your vehicle is in (D) drive or in (S) sport. The configuration remains active until modified from the main menu on the information display. See **General Information** (page 86).

Modes:

- Comfort – Provides a more relaxed driving experience, maximizing comfort. Your steering effort decreases and the suspension movement is more fluid. Comfort mode is ideal when you desire enhanced traveling comfort.
- Normal – Delivers a balanced combination of comfortable, controlled ride and confident handling. This mode provides an engaging drive experience and a direct connection to the road without sacrificing any of the composure demanded from your vehicle.
- Sport – Provides a sportier driving experience. The suspension stiffens, with an emphasis on handling and control. The engine responds more directly to your inputs. Sport mode is ideal for use during more spirited driving.

### Adaptive Steering

You can configure which of the modes are active when your vehicle is in (D) drive or in (S) sport. The configuration remains active until modified from the main menu on the information display. See **General Information** (page 86).

Modes:

- Normal – Default factory setting.
- Sport – Slightly higher effort required for steering with more road force felt through the steering wheel.







**Note:** *The Drive Control has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system to ensure proper operation. Certain types of system errors will gray out the mode selections within the information display, preventing you from changing states when the gear position is changed. Other types of errors will produce a temporary message that states a malfunction. If either condition persists for multiple key cycles, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.*



# Load Carrying

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### WARNINGS

-  Use load securing straps to an approved standard, e.g. DIN.
-  Make sure that you secure all loose items properly.
-  Place luggage and other loads as low and as far forward as possible within the luggage or loadspace.
-  Do not drive with the liftgate or rear door open. Exhaust fumes may enter your vehicle.
-  Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle. See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 280).
-  Do not allow items to contact the rear windows.

**Note:** When loading long objects in to your vehicle, for example pipes, timber or furniture be careful not to damage the interior trim.

## LUGGAGE ANCHOR POINTS

### Wagon



E86912

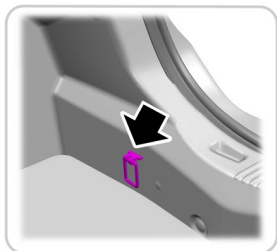
### 4-door and 5-door



E86913

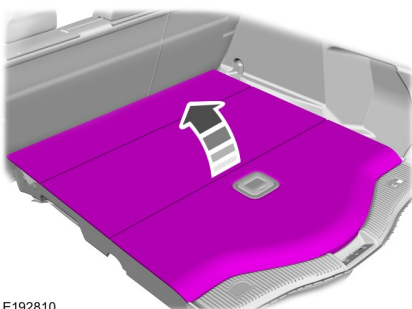
# Load Carrying

## Hybrid



E192808

## REAR UNDER FLOOR STORAGE



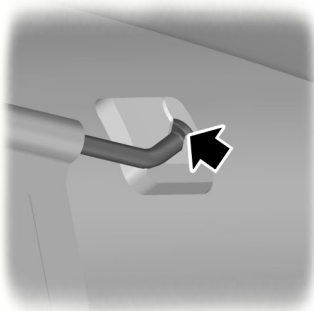
E192810

Raise the loadspace floor to gain access to the storage compartment.

## CARGO NETS

### Luggage retention net

#### Installing the net



E87052

1. Push the ends of the upper bar toward each other and insert them into the retainers on the headliner. Push the bar forward into the narrow section of the retainers.



E87053

2. Attach the net to the luggage anchor points. See **Luggage Anchor Points** (page 207).

# Load Carrying



E87054

3. Tighten the belts.

## Removing the net



E87135

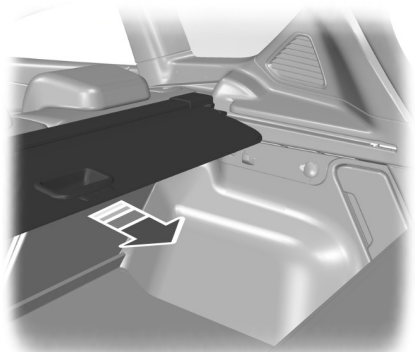
1. Release the belts.
2. Remove the net from the luggage anchor points.
3. Remove the upper bars.

## LUGGAGE COVERS

### WARNING

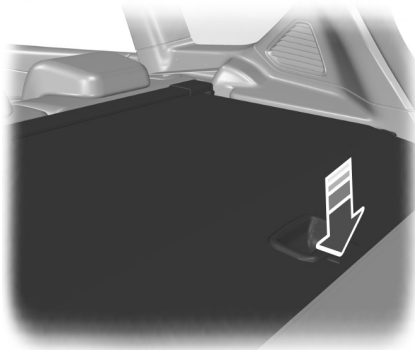


Do not place objects on the luggage cover.



E112571

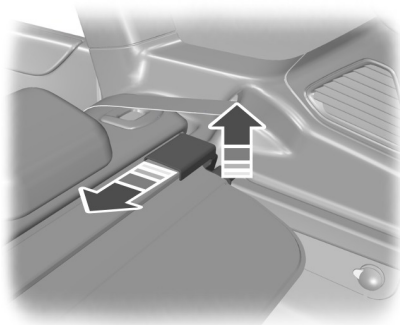
Pull out the cover until it locks.



E112572

Release it from the retaining points by pressing below the handle. Roll it slowly back into the case.

# Load Carrying



E112588

To remove or install the cover, push either end of the case inward.

## Stowing the luggage cover - Estate without full size spare wheel









E134798

Stow the luggage cover beneath the luggage compartment floor.

## ROOF RACKS AND LOAD CARRIERS

### WARNINGS

-  When loading the roof racks, evenly distribute the load, and maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles with higher centers of gravity may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when you drive a heavily loaded vehicle.
-  Do not exceed the maximum axle load for your vehicle. See Vehicle Identification Plate.
-  Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you install a roof rack.
-  Do not place loads directly on the roof panel.
-  If you use a roof rack, your vehicle uses more fuel and you may experience different driving characteristics.
-  Do not exceed the maximum permissible roof load of 165 lb (75 kg) (including the roof rack).

Make sure that you securely fasten the load. Check to make sure the straps are secure before driving and at each fuel stop.


When using the roof rack system, we recommend you use Ford genuine accessory crossbars designed specifically for your vehicle.

To reduce fuel consumption, remove cross rails when not in use.

# Load Carrying

## LOAD RETAINING FIXTURES

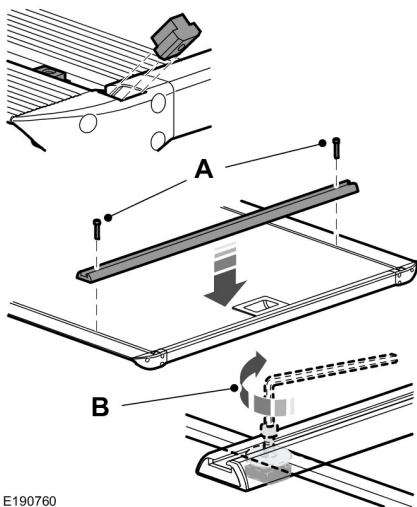
### WARNING

 Do not exceed the maximum permissible load of 132 lb (60 kg) on two load retaining fixtures and 66 lb (30 kg) on one.

Check the security of the load retaining fixtures and tighten the fittings as follows:

- Before starting.
- After driving 30 mi (50 km).
- At 620 mi (1,000 km) intervals.

### Installing the Load Retaining Fixtures




E190760


A 16 mm.

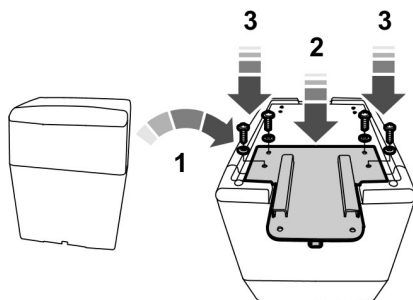
B 6 Nm.

## Installing the Load Bracket

### WARNINGS

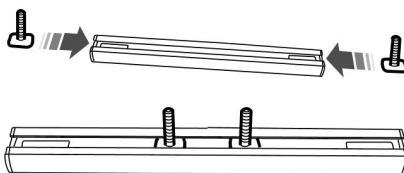
 Install the load bracket with the longest section toward the rear of the vehicle. If you install it the wrong way, it may not hold the box in place in the event of an accident.

 Do not exceed the maximum permissible load of 44 lb (20 kg).



E190761

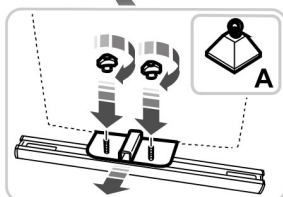
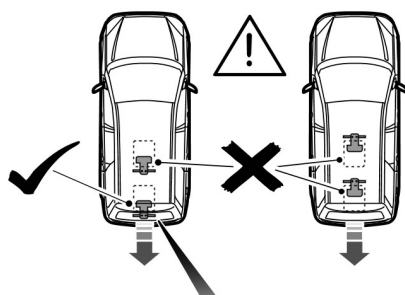
1. Turn the box over 180 degrees.
2. Position the load bracket.
3. Secure the load bracket with four screws.



E76379

4. Slide the captured bolts onto the load retaining fixture.

# Load Carrying



E190762

5. Secure the load bracket with the two wing nuts.

**Note:** Do not exceed the maximum load weight **A** 44 lb (20 kg)

6. Remove in the reverse order.

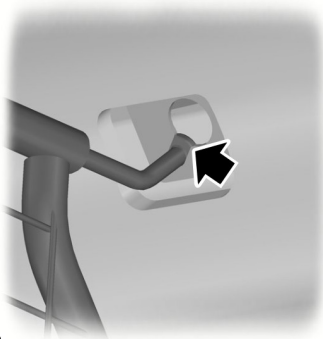
## DOG GUARD

### WARNING



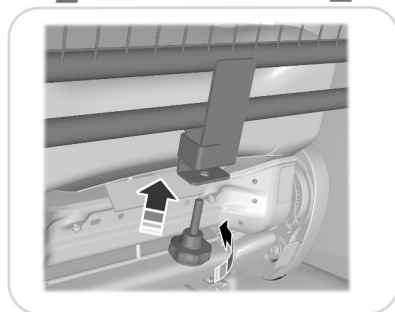
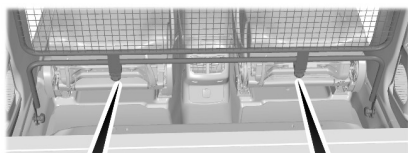
Leave at least 0.4 in (1 cm) space between the dog guard and the seats in front of it.

## Installing behind the front seats



E86848

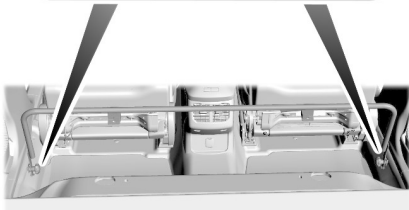
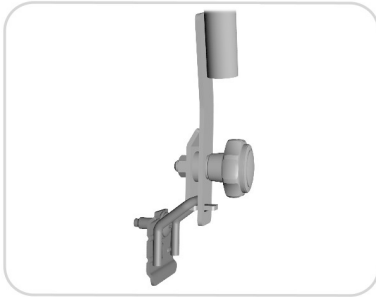
1. Push the ends of the bar on the grille toward each other and insert them into the retainers on the roof. Push the bar forward into the narrow section of the retainers.



E188614

# Load Carrying

2. Attach the grille to the lower bar with the supplied handwheels. Do not tighten the handwheels.



E188613

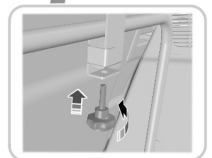
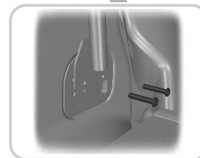
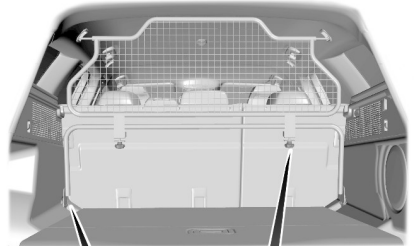
3. Attach the dog guard to the lower anchor points using the supplied handwheels. Do not tighten the handwheels.
4. Tighten the handwheels at the lower anchor points.
5. Tighten the handwheels at the grille-lower bar attachment points.

## Installing behind the rear seats



E86848

1. Push the ends of the bar on the grille toward each other and insert them into the retainers on the roof. Push the bar forward into the narrow section of the retainers.



E188615

## Load Carrying

---

2. Remove two screws from each of the luggage anchor points. See **Luggage Anchor Points** (page 207).
3. Attach the lower bar to the grille with the supplied handwheels. Do not tighten the handwheels.
4. Attach the dog guard lower bar to the luggage anchor points and secure with the new supplied screws.
5. Tighten the handwheels.

Remove in the reverse order.



## TOWING A TRAILER

### WARNINGS



Do not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h). This could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



The rear tire pressures must be increased by 3 psi (0.2 bar) above specification. Do not exceed the maximum pressure stated on the tire sidewall. This could cause serious personal injury. See **Wheels and Tires** (page 260).



Do not exceed the maximum gross train weight stated on your vehicle identification plate. This could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death. See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 280).



Do not exceed the maximum permissible trailer nose weight (vertical weight on the tow ball) as stated in the vehicle specification chart. This could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 277).



The anti-lock braking system does not control the overrun brake on the trailer. This could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

### When towing a trailer:

- Obey country specific regulations for towing a trailer.
- Do not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) even if a country allows higher speeds under certain conditions.

- Place loads as low as possible and central to the axle of your trailer. If you are towing with an unladen vehicle, place the load in your trailer toward the nose, within the maximum nose load, as this gives the best stability. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 277).
- The trailer nose weight (vertical weight on the tow ball), is essential for the driving stability of your vehicle and trailer.
- The vertical weight on the tow ball should be at least 4% of the trailer weight and not exceed the maximum permissible weight. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 277).
- Reduce speed immediately if the trailer shows any sign of swaying. See **Trailer Sway Control** (page 216).
- Use a low gear when descending a steep downhill gradient.

**Note:** The maximum permissible trailer nose weight on the trailer identification plate is the trailer manufacturer's testing value. The vehicle maximum permissible trailer nose weight may be lower.

The stability of your vehicle to trailer combination is very much dependent on the quality of the trailer.

Towing a trailer changes the vehicle handling characteristics and increases stopping distances. Adapt your speed and driving behavior to the load of the trailer.

The gross train weight stated on the vehicle identification plate applies for road gradients up to 12% and altitudes up to 3280 ft (1,000 m) when towing a trailer. In mountainous regions, the engine performance decreases due to lower air density with increasing altitude. In high altitude regions above 3280 ft (1,000 m), you must reduce the stipulated maximum permitted gross train weight by 10% for every extra 3280 ft (1,000 m).

# Towing

**Note:** Not all vehicles are suitable or approved to have tow bars fitted. See an authorized dealer for further information.

## TRAILER SWAY CONTROL

If the trailer begins to sway, the stability control warning lamp flashes and a message appears in the information display. The system applies the brakes to the individual wheels and reduces engine torque to aid vehicle stability.

Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Check the vertical weight on the tow ball and trailer load distribution. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 277). See **Load Carrying** (page 207).

**Note:** This feature does not prevent trailer sway, but reduces it once it begins.

**Note:** This feature cannot stop all trailers from swaying.

**Note:** In some cases, if your vehicle speed is too high, the system may turn on multiple times, gradually reducing your vehicle speed.

## TOW BALL

### WARNINGS



An audible warning tone sounds when the tow ball arm is not in the fully stowed position or in proper towing position. If the audible warning tone does not sound when the tow ball arm moves or when the system switches on, do not use the tow bar. See an authorized dealer.

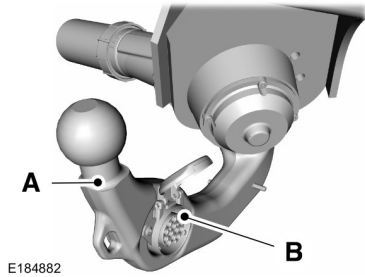


Do not touch the tow ball arm when it is moving.



Make sure there are no obstacles preventing the tow ball arm from moving.

**Note:** We recommend keeping the tow ball arm in the stowed position when you are not using it. In addition, consider local regulations and insurance terms.



A Tow ball arm.

B 13-pin trailer socket.

## Swiveling the Tow Ball Arm

**Note:** Do not attach any plug to the 13-pin trailer socket.

**Note:** Make sure the vehicle battery has a full charge.

**Note:** The vehicle has to be stationary for the tow ball arm to operate.

**Note:** If something is blocking the tow ball arm during its swivel process, the system tries to reverse. If the tow ball arm stops before it is fully in towing position or stowed position, restart the swivel process by pressing the button twice.

## Swiveling the Tow Ball Arm Out

**Note:** If the tow ball arm does not operate, but you hear an audible double tone (low pitch followed by a high pitch), switch on the ignition for 10 seconds, and then press the brake pedal and try operating the tow ball arm again.

# Towing

1. Press the button. An audible double tone (low pitch followed by a high pitch) sounds to let you know the system is operating.
2. Press the button again within four seconds to swivel the tow ball arm. A series of audible tones sounds and the LED flashes while the tow ball arm swivels.
3. When the tow ball arm finishes swiveling, the LED stops flashing and an audible double tone (high pitch followed by a low pitch) sounds.

The tow ball arm is ready for use when it finishes swiveling into the towing position.

## Swiveling the Tow Ball Arm In

Before swiveling the tow ball arm in:

- Unhitch the trailer or dismantle load carriers and their attachments.
- Dismantle attachments for tracking stabilization.
- Remove the plug for the trailer power supply and the adapter from the trailer socket. Failure to do so may cause damage to the bumper when the tow ball arm swivels into its stowed position.

To start swiveling the tow ball arm in, press the swivel button twice within four seconds.

The tow ball arm swivels into the stowed position automatically.

## Tow Ball Arm Fault Conditions

If the LED on the swivel button is rapidly flashing and an audible tone sequence (high pitch) sounds, repeat the swivel process. If this does not resolve the problem, see an authorized dealer.

A message may appear in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 96).

## Driving with a Trailer

### WARNINGS



In the event of a vehicle breakdown, disconnect the trailer before towing the vehicle.



If any of the conditions below cannot be met, do not use the tow bar and have it checked by a properly trained technician. Before starting your journey, make sure that the tow ball arm is properly locked.

Check that:

- There is a last audible low pitch tone when the locking procedure finishes.
- The tow ball arm properly locks. Make sure it does not move when jerked.

## Maintenance

**Note:** The towing hitch and control unit are maintenance-free. Do not grease or oil these components.

**Note:** Do not attempt to service the towing hitch. Only the manufacturer should carry out repairs or dismantle the hitch.

**Note:** When cleaning the vehicle with a steam jet, do not direct the high-pressure jet directly onto the swivel joint of the tow ball arm and socket. After cleaning the vehicle, unplug the connector or open the trailer socket to make sure no water entered. If water is present, dry the socket.

## TOWING POINTS

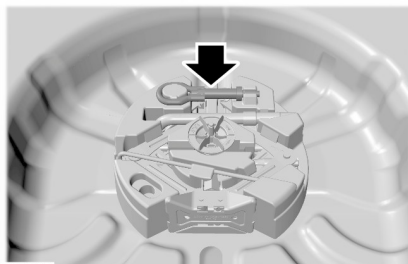
### WARNING



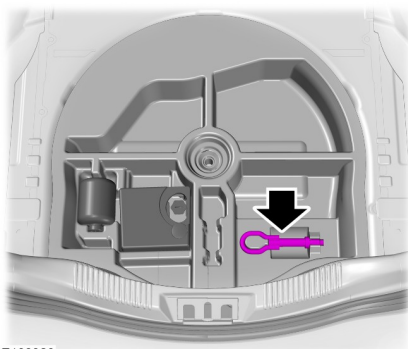
The towing eye has a left-hand thread. Turn it counterclockwise to install it. Make sure that the towing eye is fully tightened. Failure to do so could result in the towing eye becoming loose.

# Towing

## Towing Eye Locations



E184688

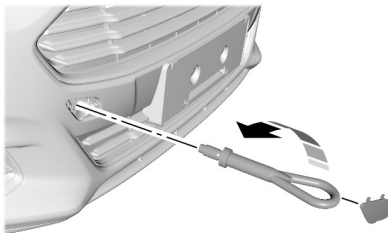


E196329

The recovery hook is in the spare wheel well.

You must carry the towing eye in your vehicle at all times.

## Front Towing Eye



E184686

Remove the cover and install the towing eye.

## Rear Towing Eye



E184687

Remove the cover and install the towing eye.

**Note:** If your vehicle has a tow bar, use it to tow other vehicles instead of the recovery hook.

# Towing

## TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

### WARNINGS



You must switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed. Failure to follow this warning could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.



The brake and steering assistance will not operate unless the engine is running. Press the brake pedal harder and allow for increased stopping distances and heavier steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.



If your vehicle has a steering wheel lock, make sure the ignition is in the accessory or on position when being towed.



Too much tension on a tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.



When towing your vehicle you must select neutral. Failure to follow this warning could damage the transmission and may lead to a crash or injury.

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle that is being towed.

You must only use the towing eye that was delivered with your vehicle. See **Towing Points** (page 217).

Tow ropes or rigid towing bars must be placed on the same side. For example; right hand rear towing point to right hand front towing point.

You must use a tow rope or rigid towing bar that is of the correct strength for the weight of the towing vehicle and the vehicle that is being towed.

The weight of the vehicle that is being towed must not exceed the weight of the towing vehicle.

Do not exceed 30 mph (50 km/h). See **Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels** (page 219).

## TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

### WARNINGS



You must switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed. Failure to follow this warning could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.



You must make sure the transmission selector lever is placed in position **N**. Failure to follow this warning could damage the transmission and may lead to a crash or injury.



The brake and steering assistance will not operate unless the engine is running. Press the brake pedal harder and allow for increased stopping distances and heavier steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.



Too much tension on a tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.

# Towing

## Emergency Towing

If your vehicle is disabled without access to wheel dollies, a car-hauling trailer, or a flatbed transport vehicle it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground. You may do this under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward so that it is towed in a forward direction.
- The transmission selector lever is placed in position **N**. If the transmission gear shift lever cannot be moved to position **N**, it may need to be overridden. See **Transmission** (page 155).
- Maximum speed is 30 mph (50 km/h).
- Maximum distance is 50 mi (80 km).

**Note:** *If you need to exceed a speed of 30 mph (50 km/h) and a distance of 50 mi (80 km) while towing, you must lift the drive wheels clear of the ground.*

**Note:** *We recommend you do not tow with the drive wheels on the ground. However, if it is required to move the vehicle from a dangerous location, do not tow your vehicle faster than 30 mph (50 km/h) or farther than 50 mi (80 km).*

### WARNING



In the event of a mechanical failure of the transmission, do not use individual axle carriers. All wheels must be lifted clear of the ground on a level platform.

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle that is being towed.

You must only use the towing eye that was delivered with your vehicle. See **Towing Points** (page 217).

Tow ropes or rigid towing bars must be placed on the same side. For example; right hand rear towing point to right hand front towing point.

You must use a tow rope or rigid towing bar that is of the correct strength for the weight of the towing vehicle and the vehicle that is being towed.

**Note:** *Using a rigid towing bar is the safest way to tow a vehicle.*

The weight of the vehicle that is being towed must not exceed the weight of the towing vehicle.

# Driving Hints

## BREAKING-IN

### Tires

#### WARNING



New tires need to be run-in for approximately 300 miles (500 kilometers). During this time, you may experience different driving characteristics.

### Brakes and Clutch

#### WARNING



Avoid heavy use of the brakes and clutch if possible for the first 100 miles (150 kilometers) in town and for the first 1000 miles (1500 kilometers) on freeways.

### Engine

#### WARNING



Avoid driving too fast during the first 1000 miles (1500 kilometers). Vary your speed frequently and change up through the gears early. Do not labor the engine.

### Vehicles With a Diesel Engine

During the first 2000 miles (3000 kilometers), you may notice a ticking sound when your vehicle slows down. This is due to adjustments of your new diesel engine and is normal.

## REDUCED ENGINE PERFORMANCE

#### WARNING



Continued operation will increase the engine temperature and cause the engine to shut down completely.

If the engine coolant temperature gauge needle moves to the upper limit position, the engine is overheating. See **Gauges** (page 78).

You must only drive your vehicle for a short distance if the engine overheats. The distance you can travel depends on ambient temperature, vehicle load and terrain. The engine will continue to operate with limited power for a short time.

If the engine temperature continues to rise, the fuel supply to the engine will reduce. The air conditioning will switch off and the engine cooling fan will operate continually.

1. Reduce your speed gradually and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Switch the engine off immediately to prevent severe engine damage.
3. Wait for the engine to cool down.
4. Check the coolant level. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 247).
5. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

## ECONOMICAL DRIVING

The following will help to improve fuel consumption.

### Tire Pressures

Check your tire pressures regularly to optimize fuel economy. For best results use the economy pressures. See **Tire Pressures** (page 273).

### Gear Shifting

Use the highest drivable gear appropriate for the road conditions.

# Driving Hints

## Anticipation

Adjust your vehicle speed and the distance to other vehicles without the need for heavy braking or acceleration.

## Efficient Speed

Higher speeds use more fuel. Reduce your cruising speed on open roads.

## Accessories

Try not to add unnecessary accessories to the exterior of your vehicle. If you use a roof rack, remember to fold it down or remove it when not in use.

## Electrical Systems

Switch off all electrical systems when not in use, for example air conditioning. Make sure you unplug any accessories from the auxiliary power points when not in use.

## COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below -13°F (-25°C).

## DRIVING THROUGH WATER

### WARNING

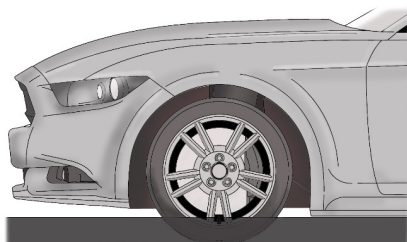


Do not drive through flowing or deep water as you may lose control of your vehicle.

**Note:** *Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.*

**Note:** *Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.*

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the front rocker area of your vehicle.



E 176360

When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction may be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Check that the horn works.
- Check that the exterior lights work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

## FLOOR MATS

### WARNINGS



Always use floor mats that are designed to fit the foot well of your vehicle. Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed. Only use floor mats that are firmly secured to retention posts so that they cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.





Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.





# Driving Hints


## WARNINGS


 Always make sure that the floor mats are properly attached to the retention posts in the carpet that are supplied with your vehicle. Floor mats must be properly secured to both retention posts to make sure mats do not shift out of position.

 Never place floor mats or any other covering in the vehicle foot well that cannot be properly secured to prevent them from moving and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle.

 Never place floor mats or any other covering on top of already installed floor mats. Floor mats should always rest on top of vehicle carpeting surface and not another floor mat or other covering. Additional floor mats or any other covering will reduce the pedal clearance and potentially interfere with pedal operation.

 Check attachment of floor mats on a regular basis. Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been removed for cleaning or replacement.

 Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while the vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.

 Failure to properly follow floor mat installation or attachment instructions can potentially cause interference with pedal operation causing a loss of vehicle control.



E142666

To install floor mats, position the floor mat so that the eyelet is over the retention post and press down to lock in.

To remove the floor mat, reverse the installation procedure.

# Roadside Emergencies

## HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS



The hazard warning button is located on the instrument panel. Use it when your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

Press the button to turn on the hazard warning function, and the front and rear direction indicators will flash.

Press the button again to turn them off.

**Note:** *If used when the engine is not running, the battery will lose charge. There may be insufficient power to restart your engine.*

**Note:** *Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, the hazard warning flashers may flash if you brake heavily.*

## FIRST AID KIT

For 5-door and wagon vehicles, stow the first aid kit in the left side wall storage area in the luggage compartment. For 4-door vehicles, stow the first aid kit in the rear under floor storage compartment. See **Rear Under Floor Storage** (page 208).

## WARNING TRIANGLE

Space is provided in the luggage compartment.

## FUEL SHUTOFF

### WARNING



Failure to inspect and, if necessary, repair fuel leaks after a collision may increase the risk of fire and serious injury. Ford Motor Company recommends that the fuel system be inspected by an authorized dealer after any collision.

In the event of a moderate to severe collision, this vehicle includes a fuel pump shutoff feature that stops the flow of fuel to the engine. Not every impact will cause a shutoff.

Should your vehicle shut off after a collision, you may restart your vehicle. For vehicles equipped with a key system:

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Switch on the ignition.
3. Repeat Steps 1 and 2 to re-enable the fuel pump.

For vehicles equipped with a push button start system:

1. Press the **START/STOP** button to switch off the ignition.
2. Press the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button to start the vehicle.
3. Remove your foot from the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button to switch off the ignition.
4. You can either attempt to start the engine by pressing the brake pedal and the **START/STOP** button, or switch on the ignition only by pressing the **START/STOP** button without pressing the brake pedal. Both ways re-enable the fuel system.

# Roadside Emergencies

**Note:** When you try to restart your vehicle after a fuel shutoff, the vehicle makes sure that various systems are safe to restart. Once your vehicle determines that the systems are safe, then the vehicle will allow you to restart.

**Note:** In the event that your vehicle does not restart after your third attempt, contact an authorized dealer.

## JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

### WARNINGS



Do not use fuel lines, engine rocker covers or the intake manifold as grounding points.



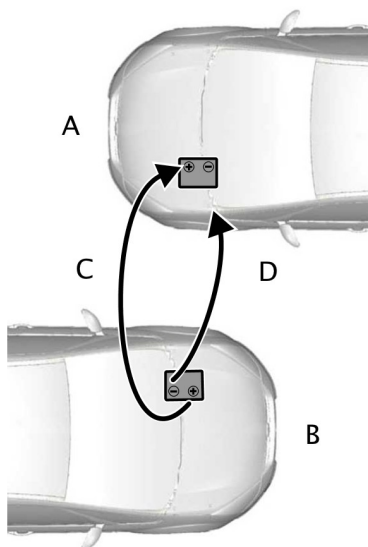
Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.



Always use booster cables with insulated clamps and adequate size cable.

**Note:** Do not disconnect the battery from your vehicle's electrical system.

## To Connect the Booster Cables

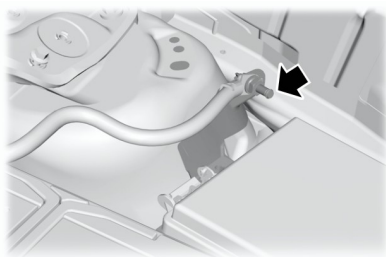


E102925

- A Flat battery vehicle
- B Booster battery vehicle
- C Positive connection cable
- D Negative connection cable

1. Position the vehicles so that they do not touch one another.
2. Switch off the engine and any electrical equipment.
3. Connect the positive (+) terminal of vehicle B with the positive (+) terminal of vehicle A (cable C).

# Roadside Emergencies



E152134

4. Connect the negative (-) terminal of vehicle B to the ground connection of vehicle A (cable D).

## WARNINGS



Do not connect directly to the negative (-) terminal of the flat battery.



Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.

## To Start the Engine

1. Run the engine of vehicle B at a moderately high speed.
2. Start the engine of vehicle A.
3. Run both vehicles for a minimum of three minutes before disconnecting the cables.

## WARNING



Do not switch the headlamps on when disconnecting the cables. The peak voltage could blow the bulbs.

Disconnect the cables in the reverse order.

## POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

The system flashes the direction indicator lamps in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag (front, side, side curtain or Safety Canopy) or the safety belt pretensioners.

The lamps turn off when:

- You press the hazard control button.
- You press the panic button (if equipped) on the remote entry transmitter.
- Your vehicle runs out of power.

## SPINOUT DETECTION

If your vehicle detects a spinout and it comes to a stop, the hazard warning flashers turn on. A spinout detected message appears in the information display. The message may not appear if your vehicle runs out of power.

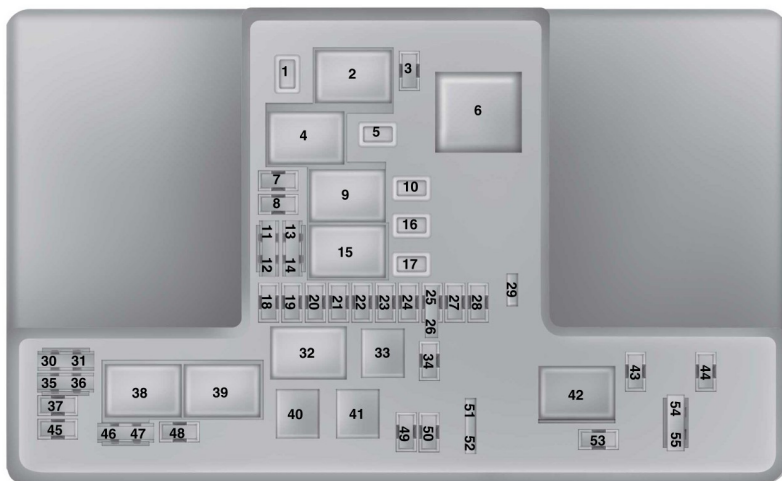
After your vehicle's hazard warning flashers turn on, you can switch them off by:

- Pressing the hazard warning flasher button.
- Pressing the remote control unlock button.
- Pressing the remote control panic button.
- Switching the ignition on and off twice.

# Fuses

## FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART

### Power Distribution Box



E144783

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
1	25A <sup>3</sup>	Windshield wipers.
2	—	Starter relay.
3	15A <sup>1</sup>	Autowipers. Rear wipers.
4	—	Blower motor relay.
5	20A <sup>3</sup>	Back of console auxiliary power point.
6	—	Auxiliary heater relay.
7	20A <sup>1</sup>	Powertrain control module.
8	20A <sup>1</sup>	Powertrain control module.

## Fuses

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
9	—	Powertrain control module relay.
10	20A <sup>3</sup>	Driver front auxiliary power point.
11	15A <sup>2</sup>	Powertrain control module.
12	15A <sup>2</sup>	Powertrain control module.
13	10A <sup>2</sup>	Powertrain control module.
14	10A <sup>2</sup>	Powertrain control module.
15	—	Run-start relay.
16	20A <sup>3</sup>	Console auxiliary power point.
17	20A <sup>3</sup>	Auxiliary power point.
18	10A <sup>1</sup>	Powertrain control module.
19	10A <sup>1</sup>	Power steering.
20	10A <sup>1</sup>	Run-start lighting.
21	15A <sup>1</sup>	Transmission control module. Transmission oil pump.
22	10A <sup>1</sup>	Air conditioning.
23	15A <sup>1</sup>	Blind spot monitor. Rear view camera. Adaptive Cruise Control. Pre-collision warning indicator. Voltage quality module. Air quality sensor.
24	10A <sup>1</sup>	Not used (spare).
25	10A <sup>2</sup>	Anti-lock brake system.
26	10A <sup>2</sup>	Powertrain control module.
27	10A <sup>1</sup>	Not used (spare).
28	10A <sup>1</sup>	Rear washer pump.

# Fuses

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
29	—	Not used.
30	—	Not used.
31	—	Not used.
32	—	Cooling fan relay.
33	—	Air conditioning relay.
34	15A <sup>1</sup>	Electric steering column lock.
35	—	Not used.
36	—	Not used.
37	—	Not used.
38	—	Cooling fan relay.
39	—	Cooling fan relay.
40	—	Not used.
41	—	Horn relay.
42	—	Fuel pump relay.
43	—	Not used.
44	5A <sup>1</sup>	Heated washer nozzle.
45	—	Not used.
46	10A <sup>2</sup>	Alternator.
47	10A <sup>2</sup>	Brake on-off switch.
48	20A <sup>1</sup>	Horn.
49	5A <sup>1</sup>	Mass air flow monitor.
	20A <sup>1</sup>	Fuel heater element-Diesel.
50	10A <sup>1</sup>	Power transfer unit cooling fan.
51	—	Not used.
52	—	Not used.

# Fuses

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
53	10A <sup>1</sup>	Power seats.
54	5A <sup>2</sup>	Fuel operated heater remote control.
55	5A <sup>2</sup>	Not used (spare).

<sup>1</sup>Micro fuse.

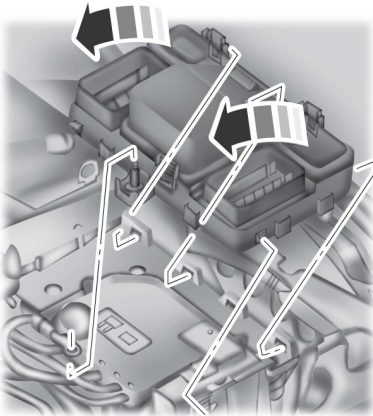
<sup>2</sup>Dual micro fuse.

<sup>3</sup>M-type fuse.

## Power Distribution Box - Bottom

There are fuses located on the bottom of the fuse box. To reach the bottom of the fuse box:

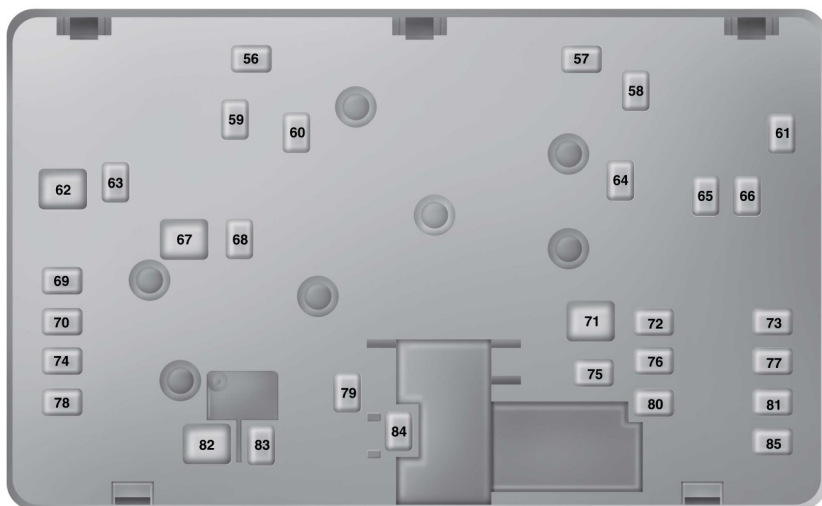
1. Release the two latches, located on both sides of the fuse box.
2. Raise the inboard side of the fuse box from the cradle.
3. Move the fuse box toward the center of the engine compartment.
4. Pivot the outboard side of the fuse box to reach the bottom side.



E145983



# Fuses



E144949

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
56	30A <sup>1</sup>	Fuel pump.
57	20A <sup>1</sup>	Diesel vaporizer.
58	—	Not used.
59	30A <sup>1</sup>	Cooling fan.
	40A <sup>1</sup>	Cooling fan (DW10F and 2.0L GTDI AU).
60	30A <sup>1</sup>	Cooling fan.
	40A <sup>1</sup>	Cooling fan (DW10F and 2.0L GTDI AU).
61	40A <sup>1</sup>	Left-hand heated windshield element.
62	50A <sup>2</sup>	Body control module.
63	20A <sup>1</sup>	Cooling fan.

# Fuses

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
	30A <sup>1</sup>	Cooling fan (DW10F and 2.0L GTDI AU).
64	30A <sup>1</sup>	Auxiliary heater.
65	20A <sup>1</sup>	Front heated seat.
66	40A <sup>1</sup>	Right-hand heated windshield element.
67	50A <sup>2</sup>	Body control module.
68	40A <sup>1</sup>	Heated rear window.
69	30A <sup>1</sup>	Anti-lock brake system.
70	30A <sup>1</sup>	Passenger seat.
71	60A <sup>2</sup>	Auxiliary heater.
72	30A <sup>1</sup>	Moonroof.
73	20A <sup>1</sup>	Rear heated seat.
74	30A <sup>1</sup>	Driver seat module.
75	30A <sup>1</sup>	Auxiliary heater.
76	20A <sup>1</sup>	Transmission oil pump.
77	30A <sup>1</sup>	Climate control seat module.
78	40A <sup>1</sup>	Trailer tow module.
79	40A <sup>1</sup>	Blower motor.
80	30A <sup>1</sup>	Power luggage compartment module.
81	40A <sup>1</sup>	220 volt inverter.
82	60A <sup>2</sup>	Anti-lock brake system pump.
83	25A <sup>1</sup>	Wiper motor.

# Fuses

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
84	30A <sup>1</sup>	Starter solenoid.
85	20A <sup>1</sup>	Fuel fire heater.

<sup>1</sup> M-type fuse.

<sup>2</sup> J-type fuse.

## Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel



E145984

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
1	10A <sup>1</sup>	Ambient lighting. Glove box lamp. Vanity lamp. Dome lamp. Luggage compartment lamp.
2	7.5A <sup>1</sup>	Memory seat.

# Fuses

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
		Driver seat lower back support. Power exterior mirrors.
3	20A <sup>1</sup>	Driver door unlock.
4	5A <sup>1</sup>	Not used (spare).
5	20A <sup>1</sup>	Not used (spare).
6	10A <sup>2</sup>	Not used (spare).
7	10A <sup>2</sup>	Not used (spare).
8	10A <sup>2</sup>	Anti-theft alarm horn.
9	10A <sup>2</sup>	Not used (spare).
10	5A <sup>2</sup>	Power liftgate module.
11	5A <sup>2</sup>	Combined security module.
12	7.5A <sup>2</sup>	Climate control.
13	7.5A <sup>2</sup>	Steering wheel column. Instrument cluster. Data link connector.
14	10A <sup>2</sup>	Not used (spare).
15	10A <sup>2</sup>	Data link gateway.
16	15A <sup>1</sup>	Child lock. Luggage compartment-liftglass release.
17	5A <sup>2</sup>	Battery backup sounder.
18	5A <sup>2</sup>	Ignition switch. Push button ignition switch.
19	7.5A <sup>2</sup>	Passenger airbag deactivation indicator. Transmission.
20	7.5A <sup>2</sup>	Headlamp control module.
21	5A <sup>2</sup>	Passenger compartment thermometer.

## Fuses

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
22	5A <sup>2</sup>	Not used (spare).
23	10A <sup>1</sup>	Delayed accessory power.
24	20A <sup>1</sup>	Lock-unlock.
25	30A <sup>1</sup>	Driver door window. Driver door mirror.
26	30A <sup>1</sup>	Front passenger door window. Front passenger door mirror.
27	30A <sup>1</sup>	Moonroof.
28	20A <sup>1</sup>	Audio amplifier.
29	30A <sup>1</sup>	Rear driver side door window.
30	30A <sup>1</sup>	Rear passenger side door window.
31	15A <sup>1</sup>	Not used (spare).
32	10A <sup>1</sup>	Global positioning system module. Voice control. Information and entertainment display. Radio frequency receiver.
33	20A <sup>1</sup>	Radio.
34	30A <sup>1</sup>	Run/start bus (fuse #19, 20, 21, 22, 35, 36, 37, circuit breaker).
35	5A <sup>1</sup>	Restraints control module.
36	15A <sup>1</sup>	Auto-dimming interior mirror. Front and rear heated seat module. CCD module. Lane keeping system. Auto high beam. Climate controlled seats.
37	15A <sup>1</sup>	All wheel drive module.

# Fuses

Fuse or relay number	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
		Heated steering wheel.
38	30A	Not used (spare).

<sup>1</sup>Micro fuse.

<sup>2</sup>Dual micro fuse.

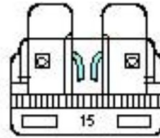
## CHANGING A FUSE

### Fuses

#### WARNING



Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.



E142430

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. Blown fuses are identified by a broken wire within the fuse. Check the appropriate fuses before replacing any electrical components.

### Standard Fuse Amperage Rating and Color

Color				
Fuse rating	Micro fuses	Dual micro fuses	M-type fuses	J-type fuses
5A	Tan	Tan	-	-
7.5A	Brown	Brown	-	-
10A	Red	Red	-	-
15A	Blue	Blue	Grey	-
20A	Yellow	-	Light Blue	Blue
25A	White	-	White	White
30A	Green	-	Pink	Pink
40A	-	-	Green	Green
50A	-	-	-	Red
60A	-	-	-	Yellow

# Maintenance

## GENERAL INFORMATION

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of Ford authorized repairers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. Authorized repairers are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly, with a wide range of highly specialized tools.

In addition to regular servicing, we recommend that you carry out the following checks.

### WARNINGS



Switch the ignition off before touching or attempting adjustment of any kind.



Do not touch the electronic ignition system parts after you have switched the ignition on or when the engine is running. The system operates at high voltage.



Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan. Under certain conditions, the fan may continue to run for several minutes after you have switched the engine off.



Make sure that you fit filler caps securely after carrying out maintenance checks.

## Daily Checks

- Exterior lamps.
- Interior lamps.
- Warning lamps and indicators.

## Check When Refueling

- Engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 246).
- Brake fluid level. See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 248).

- Washer fluid level. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 248).
- Tire pressures (when cold). See **Tire Pressures** (page 273).
- Tire condition. See **Wheels and Tires** (page 260).

## Monthly Checks

- Engine coolant level (engine cold). See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 247).
- Pipes, hoses and reservoirs for leaks.
- Air conditioning operation.
- Parking brake operation.
- Horn operation.
- Tightness of lug nuts. See **Tire Pressures** (page 273).

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

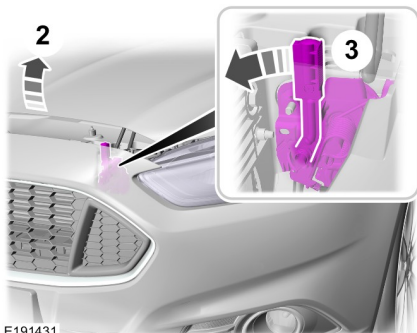
### Opening the Hood



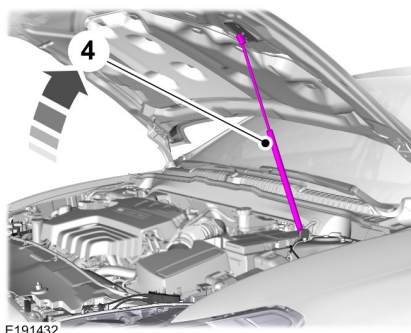
E142457

1. Inside the vehicle, pull the hood release handle located under the left-hand side of the instrument panel.
2. Slightly lift the hood.

# Maintenance



3. Move the catch to the left.



4. Open the hood. The hood strut automatically supports the hood.

## Closing the Hood

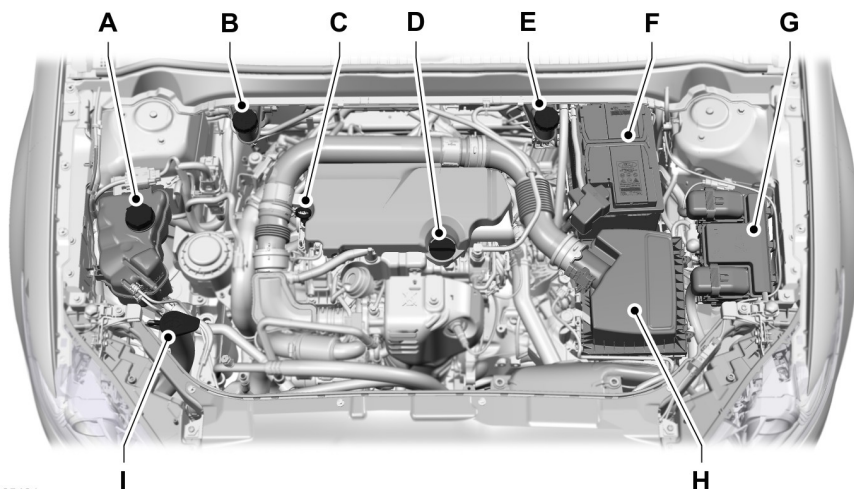
1. Lower the hood until it engages on to the secondary latch.
2. Firmly push down on the front of the hood to close it fully.

**Note:** Make sure that the hood is correctly closed.



# Maintenance

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.0L ECOBOOST™

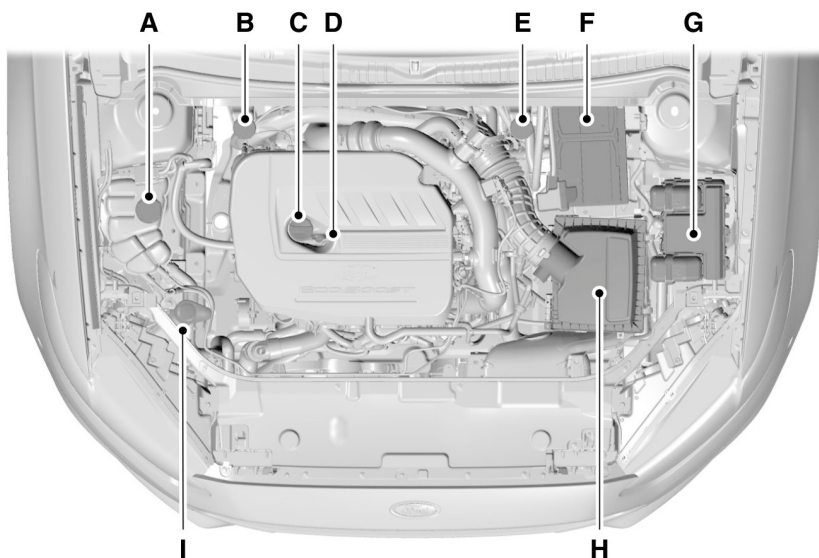


E195491

- A. Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 247).
- B. Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (right-hand drive). See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 248).
- C. Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 245).
- D. Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 246).
- E. Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (left-hand drive). See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 248).
- F. Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 249).
- G. Power distribution box. See **Fuses** (page 227).
- H. Air filter assembly.
- I. Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 248).

# Maintenance

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.5L ECOBOOST™

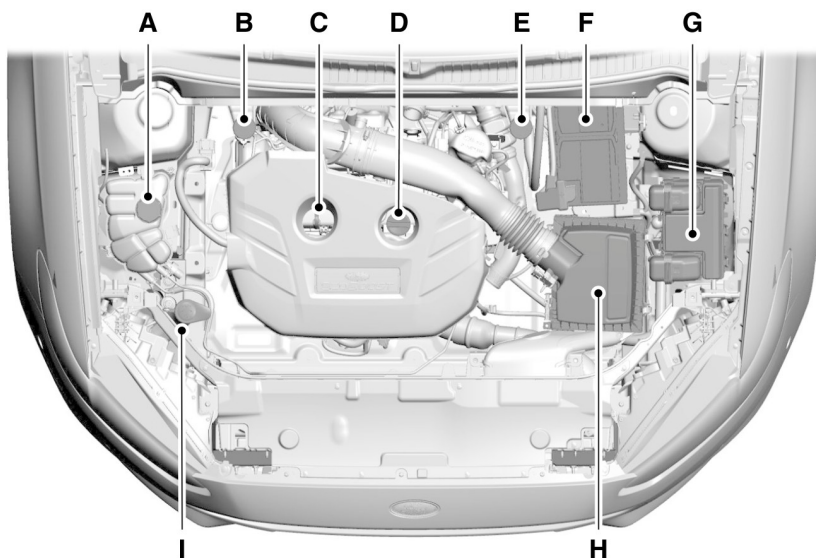


E181033

- A. Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 247).
- B. Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (right-hand drive). See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 248).
- C. Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 246).
- D. Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 245).
- E. Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (left-hand drive). See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 248).
- F. Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 249).
- G. Power distribution box. See **Fuses** (page 227).
- H. Air filter assembly.
- I. Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 248).

# Maintenance

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.0L ECOBOOST™

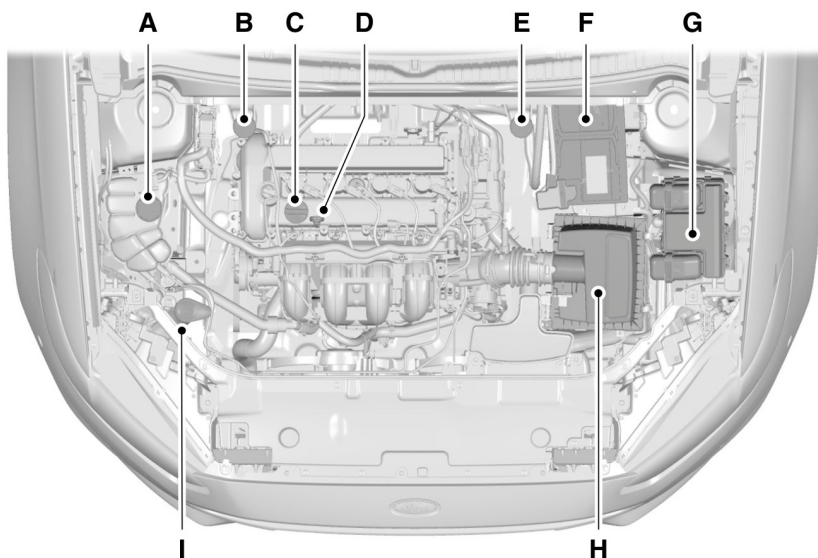


E181037

- A. Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 247).
- B. Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (right-hand drive). See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 248).
- C. Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 245).
- D. Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 246).
- E. Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (left-hand drive). See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 248).
- F. Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 249).
- G. Power distribution box. See **Fuses** (page 227).
- H. Air filter assembly.
- I. Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 248).

# Maintenance

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.5L

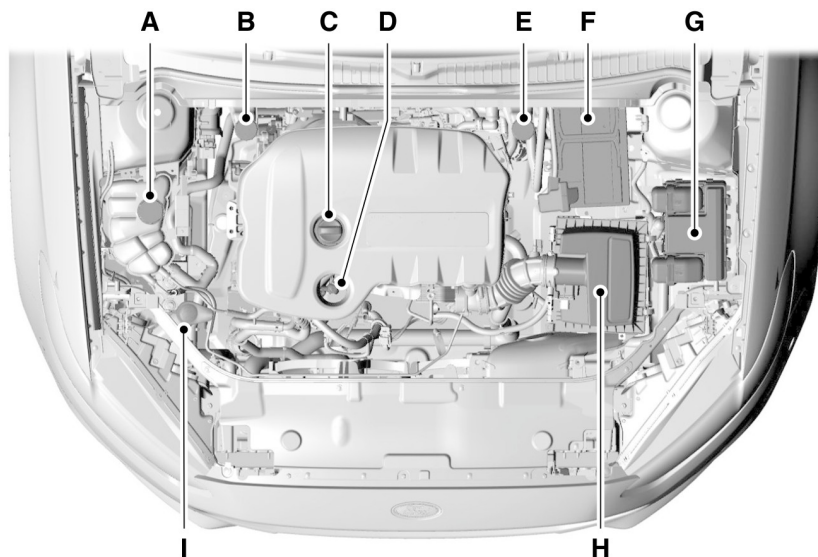


E181038

- A. Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 247).
- B. Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (right-hand drive). See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 248).
- C. Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 246).
- D. Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 245).
- E. Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (left-hand drive). See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 248).
- F. Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 249).
- G. Power distribution box. See **Fuses** (page 227).
- H. Air filter assembly.
- I. Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 248).

# Maintenance

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.5L DURATORQ-TDCI DIESEL/1.6L DIESEL

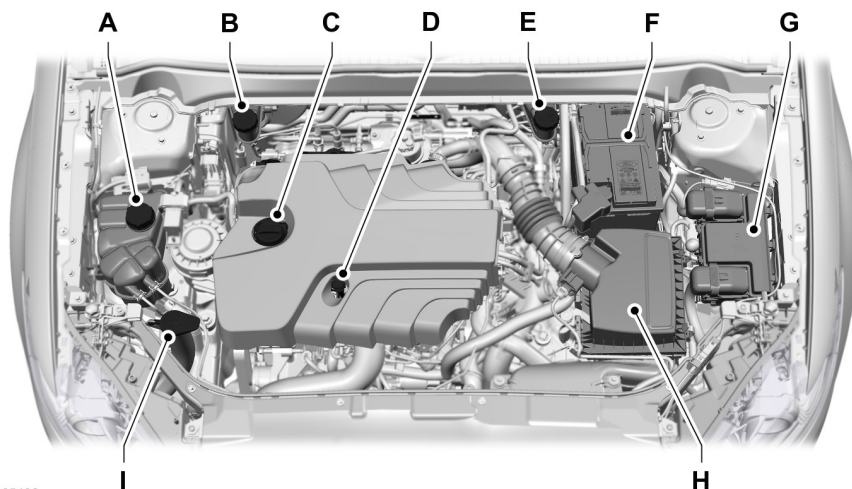


E181034

- A. Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 247).
- B. Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (right-hand drive). See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 248).
- C. Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 246).
- D. Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 246).
- E. Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (left-hand drive). See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 248).
- F. Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 249).
- G. Power distribution box. See **Fuses** (page 227).
- H. Air filter assembly.
- I. Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 248).

# Maintenance

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.0L DIESEL

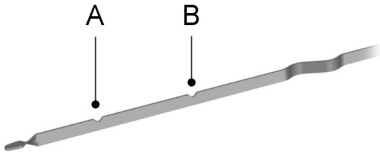


E195492

- A. Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 247).
- B. Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (right-hand drive). See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 248).
- C. Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 246).
- D. Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 246).
- E. Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (left-hand drive). See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 248).
- F. Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 249).
- G. Power distribution box. See **Fuses** (page 227).
- H. Air filter assembly.
- I. Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 248).

# Maintenance

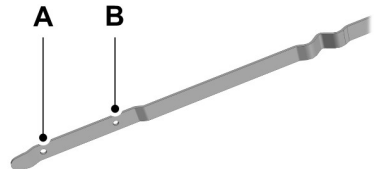
## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.0L ECOBOOST™



E141337

- A Minimum
- B Maximum

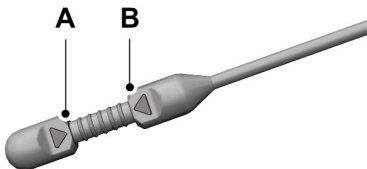
## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 2.0L ECOBOOST™



E191425

- A Minimum.
- B Maximum.

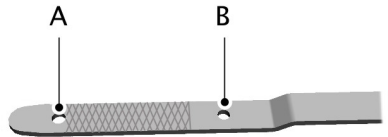
## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.5L ECOBOOST™



E188072

- A Minimum.
- B Maximum.

## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 2.5L

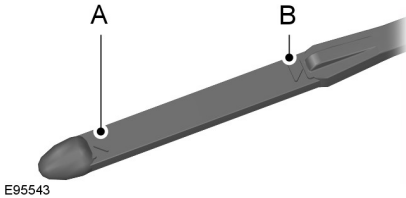


E169062

- A MIN
- B MAX

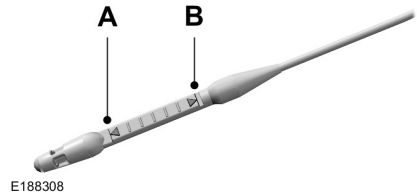
# Maintenance

## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.5L DURATORQ-TDCI DIESEL



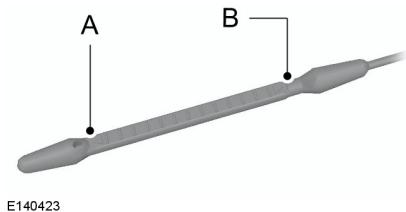
- A Minimum.
- B Maximum.

## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 2.0L DIESEL



- A Minimum.
- B Maximum.

## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.6L DIESEL



- A Minimum
- B Maximum

## ENGINE OIL CHECK

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
2. Check the oil level before starting the engine, or switch the engine off and wait 10 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.
3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint free cloth. Replace the dipstick and remove it again to check the oil level.

If the oil level is at the minimum mark, add oil immediately. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 283).

**Note:** Make sure that the oil level is between the minimum and the maximum marks.

**Note:** Do not use oil additives or other engine treatments. Under certain conditions they may cause engine damage.

**Note:** The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 3000 mi (5,000 km).



# Maintenance

## Adding Engine Oil

### WARNINGS



Only add oil when the engine is cold. If the engine is hot, wait 10 minutes for the engine to cool down.



Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.

1. Remove the engine oil filler cap. See **Maintenance** (page 237).
2. Add engine oil that meets Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 283).
3. Replace the engine oil filler cap. Turn it until you feel a strong resistance.

**Note:** Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.

**Note:** Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately.

## ENGINE COOLANT CHECK

### WARNINGS



Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.



Only add coolant when the engine is cold. If the engine is hot, wait 10 minutes for the engine to cool down.



Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.



Undiluted coolant is flammable and may ignite if spilt on a hot exhaust.



E169064

Make sure that the coolant level is between the MIN and MAX marks on the coolant reservoir. If the level is at the MIN mark, below the MIN mark, or empty, add coolant immediately. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 277).

**Note:** Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the MAX mark.

## Adding Engine Coolant

1. Remove the filler cap.
2. Add engine coolant to the MAX mark, do not overfill.
3. Replace the filler cap. Turn it until you feel a strong resistance.

**Note:** Add a 50/50 mixture of antifreeze and water or prediluted engine coolant that meets the correct specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page ?).

**Note:** In case of emergency, you can add a large amount of water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location.

**Note:** Prolonged use of an incorrect dilution of engine coolant can cause engine damage, such as corrosion, overheating or freezing.

# Maintenance

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CHECK

The automatic transmission does not have a transmission fluid dipstick.

Have an authorized dealer check and change the transmission fluid at the correct service interval. Your transmission does not consume fluid. However, if the transmission slips, shifts slowly or if you notice a sign of leaking fluid, contact an authorized dealer.

Do not use supplemental transmission fluid additives, treatments or cleaning agents. The use of these materials may affect transmission operation and result in damage to internal transmission components.

## BRAKE AND CLUTCH FLUID CHECK

### WARNINGS



Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. This could cause serious personal injury. Rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and consult a physician.

### WARNINGS



A fluid level between the **MAX** and **MIN** lines is within the normal operating range and there is no need to add fluid. A fluid level outside of the normal operating range could compromise the performance of the brake or clutch systems. Have your vehicle checked immediately.



E169063

See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 281).

**Note:** *The brake and the clutch systems are supplied from the same reservoir.*

## WASHER FLUID CHECK

**Note:** *The reservoir supplies the front and rear washer systems.*


When adding fluid, use a mixture of washer fluid and water to help prevent freezing in cold weather and improve the cleaning capability. We recommend that you use only high quality washer fluid.

For information on fluid dilution, refer to the product instructions.

# Maintenance

## CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY

### WARNING

 For vehicles with Start-Stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

The battery is located in the engine compartment. See **Maintenance** (page 237).



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way.

Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

## CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



E142463

Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

## CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES

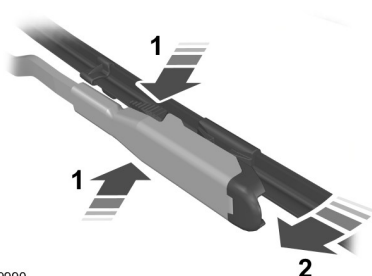
The wiper arms can be manually moved when the ignition is off. This allows for ease of blade replacement and cleaning under the blades.

Replace wiper blades at least once per year for optimum performance.

Poor wiper quality can be improved by cleaning the wiper blades and the windshield.

## Changing the Front Wiper Blades

1. Pull the wiper blade and arm away from the glass.



E129990

2. Press the locking buttons together.
3. Rotate and remove the wiper blade.
4. Install in the reverse order.

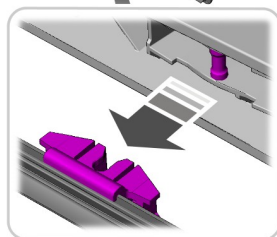
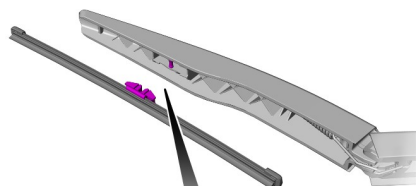
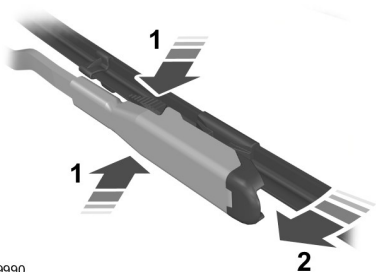
**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place. Lower the wiper arm and blade back to the windshield. The wiper arms will automatically return to their normal position when the ignition is turned on.

## Changing the Rear Window Wiper Blades

### 5-Door

1. Pull the wiper blade and arm away from the glass.

# Maintenance



E183236

2. Remove the wiper blade.
3. Install new wiper blades in the reverse order.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place. Lower the wiper arm and blade back to the windshield.

E129990

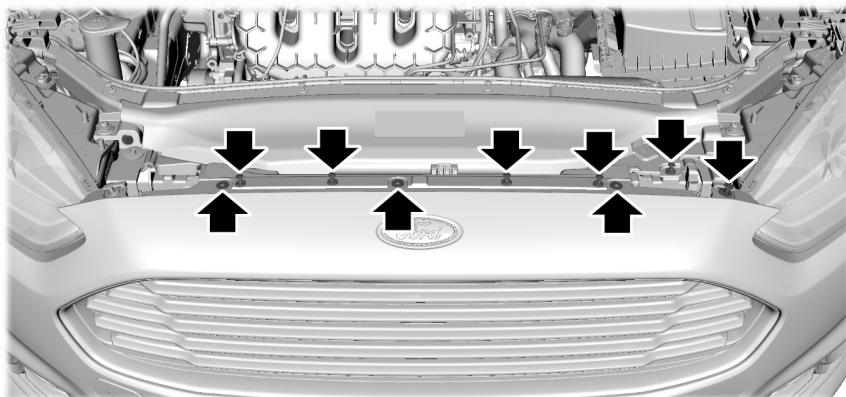
2. Press the locking buttons together.
3. Rotate and remove the wiper blade.
4. Install in the reverse order.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place. Lower the wiper arm and blade back to the windshield. The wiper arms will automatically return to their normal position when the ignition is turned on.

## Wagon

1. Lift the wiper arm.

## REMOVING A HEADLAMP

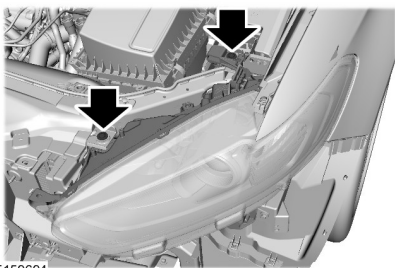


E159693

# Maintenance

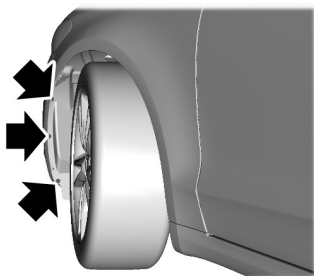
**Note:** To remove push pins, use a flat-bladed screwdriver to pull up the center release pin.

1. Make sure the headlamp control is in the off position and open the hood.
2. Remove the six push pins securing the front fascia to the front trim cover.
3. Remove the three bumper cover upper screws using a flat-bladed screwdriver.
4. Remove the push pin at the inboard side of the headlamp you are servicing.



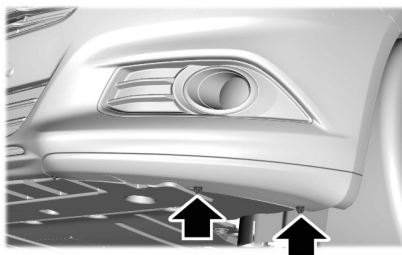
E159694

5. Remove the two screws securing the headlamp using a flat-bladed screwdriver.



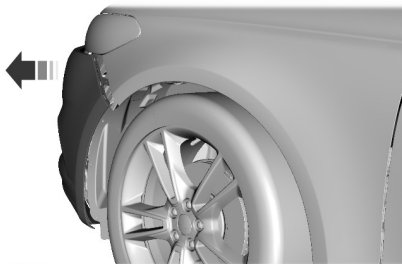
E159695

6. Remove the lower three wheel housing fasteners by turning them counterclockwise.



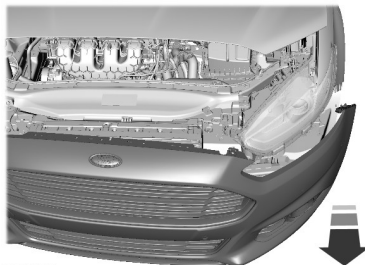
E159696

7. Remove the two outmost front bumper cover lower fasteners, only on the side of the headlamp you are servicing, by turning them counterclockwise.



E159697

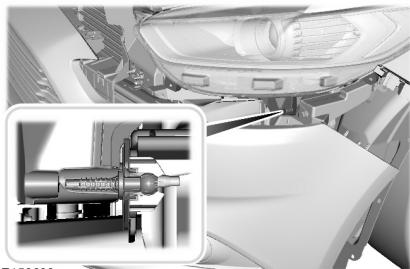
8. Separate the front bumper cover from the fender by gently pulling the front bumper cover to the outside of the vehicle 1.2 inches (3 centimeters).



E159698

# Maintenance

- From the front of the vehicle, gently pull the front bumper cover forward 4 inches (10 centimeters) by grasping it next to the headlamp to be serviced and in the lower front of the wheel opening.



E159699

- Gently pull the headlamp assembly outward to disengage it from the lower fixing point.
- Carefully lift the headlamp and remove it from the vehicle.
- Disconnect the electrical connector from the headlamp assembly by pushing the release tab on the connector.

## CHANGING A BULB

### WARNINGS



Switch all of the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.



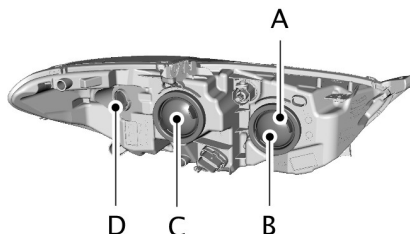
Bulbs become hot when in use. Let them cool down before you remove them.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Bulb Specification Chart** (page 255).

Install in the reverse order unless otherwise stated.

## Headlamp

You must remove the headlamp assembly prior to replacing any bulb. See **Bulb Specification Chart** (page 255).



E159753

- A Front side lamp.
- B High beam.
- C Low beam.
- D Front direction indicator.

## Front Side Lamp

- Remove the headlamp.
- Remove the cover.
- Remove the bulb holder by pulling it straight out.
- Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

## Front Direction Indicator

- Remove the headlamp.
- Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.

**Note:** You cannot separate the bulb from the bulb holder.

## Headlamp Low Beam

- Remove the headlamp.
- Remove the cover.

# Maintenance

3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
4. Disconnect the electrical connector.

**Note:** Do not touch the bulb glass.

**Note:** You cannot separate the bulb from the bulb holder.

## Headlamp High Beam

1. Remove the headlamp.
2. Remove the cover.
3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
4. Disconnect the electrical connector.

**Note:** Do not touch the bulb glass.

**Note:** You cannot separate the bulb from the bulb holder.

## High-Intensity Discharge Headlamps

These lamps operate at a high voltage. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

## LED Lamps

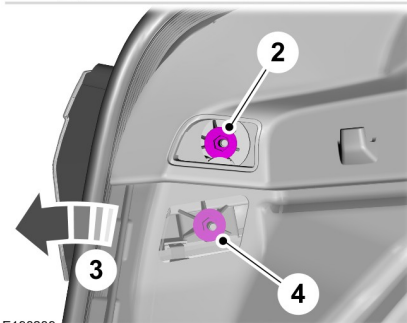
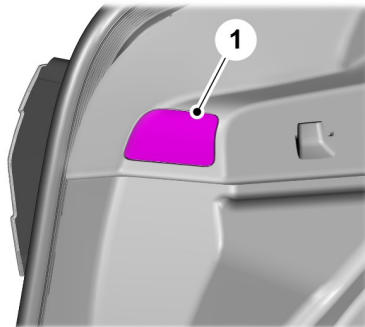
LED lamps are not serviceable items. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

The following lamps are LED:

- Brake and rear lamps.
- Central high mounted brake lamp.
- Daytime running lamps.
- Rear direction indicators.
- Side direction indicators.

## Reverse Lamp

### Remove Rear Lamp Assembly, 4-door and 5-door



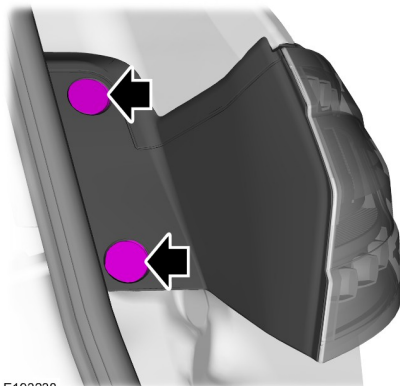
E193239

1. Carefully remove trim plate.
2. Remove the wing nut.
3. Carefully remove the luggage compartment weather strip and gently pull away the inner body side trim to gain access to the second wing nut.
4. Remove the wing nut.
5. Gently pull the lamp assembly away from the vehicle.

# Maintenance

## Remove Rear Lamp Assembly, Wagon

## Remove the Bulb



E193238

1. Carefully remove the screw caps and remove the screws.
2. Gently pull the lamp assembly away from the vehicle.



E145779

1. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove the bulb holder.



E145780

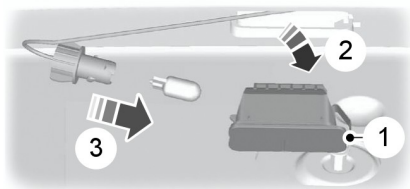
2. Remove the bulb from the bulb holder.



# Maintenance

## Replacing the License Plate Lamp Bulb

1. Carefully release the spring clip.
2. Remove the lamp.
3. Remove the bulb.



E72789

## BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

### Exterior Lamps

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watt)
Brake and rear lamp.	LED	LED
Central high mounted brake lamp.	LED	LED
Daytime running lamps.	LED	LED
Front direction indicator.	PWY24W	24
Front fog lamp.	H11	55
Front side lamp.	W5W	5
Headlamp high beam.	H7LL	55
Headlamp low beam.	H11LL	55
License plate lamp.	W5W	5
Rear direction indicator.	LED	LED
Rear fog lamp.	921	21
Reversing lamps.	921	21
Side direction indicator.	LED	LED

**Note:** LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

# Maintenance

---

## Interior Lamps

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watt)
Interior lamp.	LED	LED
Luggage compartment lamp.	W5W	5
Map lamp.	LED	LED

**Note:** LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

# Vehicle Care

## CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

**Note:** If you use a car wash with a waxing cycle, make sure that you remove the wax from the windshield and the wiper blades.

**Note:** Prior to using a car wash facility check the suitability of it for your vehicle.

**Note:** Some car washes use water at high pressure. Due to this, water droplets may enter inside your vehicle and could also damage certain parts of your vehicle.

**Note:** Remove the aerial before using an automatic car wash.

**Note:** Switch the heater blower off to prevent contamination of the fresh air filter.

We recommend that you wash your vehicle with a sponge and lukewarm water containing a car shampoo.

### Cleaning the Headlamps

**Note:** Do not scrape the headlamp lenses or use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean them.

**Note:** Do not wipe the headlamps when they are dry.

### Cleaning the Rear Window

**Note:** Do not scrape the inside of the rear window or use abrasives or chemical solvents to clean it.

Use a clean, lint free cloth or a damp chamois leather to clean the inside of the rear window.

### Cleaning the Chrome Trim

**Note:** Do not use abrasives or chemical solvents. Use soapy water.

**Note:** Do not apply cleaning product to hot surfaces and do not leave cleaning product on chrome surfaces for a period of time exceeding that which is recommended.

**Note:** Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, may cause damage over a period of time.

## Body Paintwork Preservation

### WARNINGS



Do not polish your vehicle in strong sunshine.



Do not allow polish to touch plastic surfaces. It could be difficult to remove.



Do not apply polish to the windshield or rear window. This could cause the wipers to become noisy and they may not clear the window properly.

We recommend that you wax the paintwork once or twice a year.

## CLEANING THE WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

Car wash chemicals and environmental fallout can result in windshield and wiper blade contamination. Dirty windshield and wipers will result in poor windshield wiper operation. Keep the windshield and wiper blades clean to maintain windshield wiper performance.

To clean the windshield and wiper blades:

- Clean the windshield with a non-abrasive glass cleaner.
- For windshields contaminated with tree sap, chemicals, wax or bugs, clean the entire windshield using steel wool (no greater than 0000 grade) in a circular motion and rinse with water.
- Clean the wiper blades with isopropyl rubbing alcohol or windshield washer concentrate.

# Vehicle Care

---

**Note:** Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. The vehicle warranty does not cover damage caused to the heated rear window grid lines.

## CLEANING THE INTERIOR

**Note:** Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill on interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, wipe off immediately. Damage may not be covered by your warranty.

### Safety Belts

**Note:** Do not use abrasives, or chemical solvents to clean them.

**Note:** Do not allow moisture to penetrate the safety belt retractor mechanism.

Clean them with interior cleaner or water applied with a soft sponge. Let them dry naturally, away from artificial heat.

### Instrument Cluster Screens, LCD Screens and Radio Screens

**Note:** Do not use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean them.

### Rear Windows

**Note:** Do not use any abrasive materials to clean the interior of the rear windows.

**Note:** Do not install stickers or labels to the interior of the rear windows.

## REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

You should repair paintwork damage caused by stones from the road or minor scratches as soon as possible. A choice of products are available from an authorized dealer.

Remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout before repairing paint chips.

Always read and follow the manufacturer's instructions before using the products.

## CLEANING THE ALLOY WHEELS

**Note:** Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.

**Note:** Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clear coat finish over a period of time.

**Note:** Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergent.

**Note:** If you intend parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so. This will reduce the risk of increased corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

**Note:** Some automatic car washes may cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims and covers.

Alloy wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clear coat paint finish. To maintain their condition we recommend that you:

- Clean them weekly with the recommended wheel and tire cleaner.
- Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust accumulation.
- Rinse them thoroughly with a pressurized stream of water when you have completed the cleaning process.

## Vehicle Care

---

We recommend that you use Ford service wheel cleaner. Make sure that you read and follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Using other non-recommended cleaning products can result in severe and permanent cosmetic damage.

# Wheels and Tires

## GENERAL INFORMATION

A decal with tire pressure data is located in the driver's door opening.

Check and set the tire pressure at the ambient temperature in which you are intending to drive your vehicle and when the tires are cold.

**Note:** Check your tire pressures regularly to optimize fuel economy.

**Note:** Use only approved wheel and tire sizes. Using other sizes could damage your vehicle and will make the National Type Approval invalid.

**Note:** If you change the diameter of the tires from that fitted at the factory, the speedometer may not display the correct speed. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to have the engine management system reprogrammed.

**Note:** If you intend to change the size of the wheels from that fitted at the factory, check the suitability with an authorized dealer.

## TEMPORARY MOBILITY KIT

Your vehicle may not have a spare wheel and tire. In these cases it will be supplied with a temporary mobility kit which will only repair one damaged tire.

The kit is located in the spare wheel well.

### General Information

#### WARNINGS



Depending on the type and extent of tire damage, some tires can only be partially sealed or not sealed at all.

Loss of tire pressure can affect vehicle handling, leading to loss of vehicle control.



Do not use the temporary mobility kit on a previously damaged tire. For example, when a tire has been driven under inflated.

#### WARNINGS



Do not use the temporary mobility kit on run flat tires.



Do not use the temporary mobility kit to repair the sidewall of a damaged tire.

The temporary mobility kit seals most tire punctures with a diameter of up to ¼ in (6 mm) to temporarily restore mobility.

You must observe the following rules when using the temporary mobility kit:

- Drive with caution and avoid making sudden steering or driving manoeuvres especially if your vehicle is heavily loaded or towing a trailer.
- Only continue your journey to the next vehicle or tire dealer or drive a maximum distance of 125 mi (200 km).
- Do not exceed a maximum speed of 50 mph (80 km/h).
- Keep the temporary mobility kit out of the reach of children.
- Only use the temporary mobility kit when the ambient temperature is between -30° and 70° C (-22° and 158° F).

### Using the Temporary Mobility Kit

#### WARNINGS



Park your vehicle so that you do not obstruct the flow of traffic or place yourself in any danger and set up a warning triangle.



Compressed air can act as an explosive or propellant.



Never leave the temporary mobility kit unattended while in use.



Do not keep the compressor operating for longer than 10 minutes.

# Wheels and Tires

## WARNINGS



You must only use the temporary mobility kit for the vehicle with which it was supplied.

Before you use the temporary mobility kit:

- Apply the parking brake.
- Do not attempt to remove foreign material that is penetrating the tire, for example, nails or screws.
- Leave the engine running while the temporary mobility kit is in use. If your vehicle is in an enclosed or poorly ventilated area use the temporary mobility kit with the engine switched off.
- You must replace the sealant bottle with a new one before the expiry date which is printed on the top of sealant bottle.
- Inform all vehicle users that a tire has been repaired using the temporary mobility kit. Make them aware of the special driving conditions that apply.

## Inflating the Tire

### WARNINGS



Check the sidewall of the tire prior to using the temporary mobility kit. If there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage do not attempt to inflate the tire.



Do not stand directly beside the tire while the compressor is operating.



Watch the sidewall of the tire. If any cracks, bumps or similar damage appears, switch off the compressor immediately and deflate the tire using the pressure relief valve B.

## WARNINGS



The sealant contains natural rubber latex. Avoid contact with skin or clothing. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact a physician.



If the tire inflation pressure does not reach the recommended pressure within 10 minutes, the tire may have suffered excessive damage, making a temporary repair impossible. Do not continue driving with this tire.

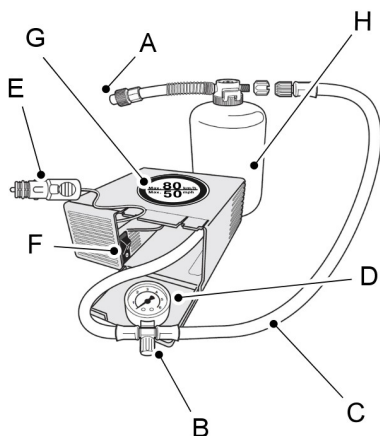


Screwing the sealant bottle onto the bottle holder will pierce the seal of the sealant bottle. Do not unscrew the sealant bottle from the bottle holder prior to completing a temporary repair as the sealant will escape.



If you experience heavy vibrations, unsteady steering behavior or noises while driving, reduce your speed and drive with caution to a place where it is safe for you to stop your vehicle. Recheck the tire and its pressure. If the tire pressure is less than 45 psi (3 bar) or if there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage visible, do not continue driving with this tire.

# Wheels and Tires



E146784

- A Protective cap.
- B Pressure relief valve.
- C Hose.
- D Pressure gauge.
- E Power plug with cable.
- F Compressor switch.
- G Label.
- H Sealant bottle.

1. Open the lid of the temporary mobility kit.
2. Peel off the label G showing the maximum permissible speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) from the casing and attach it to the instrument panel in the driver's field of view. Make sure the label does not obscure anything important.
3. Take the hose C and the power plug with cable E out of the temporary mobility kit.
4. Screw the hose C onto the sealant bottle.
5. Remove the valve cap from the damaged tire.
6. Remove the protective cap A from the sealant bottle hose and screw the hose firmly onto the valve of the damaged tire.
7. Make sure that the compressor switch F is in position 0.
8. Insert the power plug E into the auxiliary power point. See **Auxiliary Power Points** (page 135).
9. Start the engine.
10. Move the compressor switch F to position 1.
11. After a minimum of two minutes move the compressor switch F to position 0 and unscrew the hose C from the sealant bottle. Unscrew the sealant bottle hose from the tire valve.
12. Screw the hose C onto the tire valve and move the compressor switch F to position 1.
13. Inflate the tire for no longer than 10 minutes or to the recommended inflation pressure. Move the compressor switch F to position 0 and check the current tire pressure with pressure gauge D. Unscrew the hose C from the tire valve.
14. Remove the power plug E from the auxiliary power point.
15. Make sure the temporary mobility kit, the bottle lid and the orange cap are stored safely, but still easily accessible in your vehicle. The temporary mobility kit will be required again when you check the tire pressure.
16. Immediately drive approximately six miles (10 kilometers) so that the sealant can seal the damaged area.



# Wheels and Tires

**Note:** When pumping in the sealant through the tire valve, the pressure may rise up to 87 psi (6 bar) but will drop again after about 30 seconds.

## WARNING



If you experience heavy vibrations, unsteady steering behavior or noises while driving, reduce your speed and drive with caution to a place where it is safe for you to stop your vehicle. Recheck the tire and its pressure. If the tire pressure is less than the recommended pressure or if there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage visible, do not continue driving with this tire.

## Checking the Tire Pressure

### WARNING



Before driving make sure the tire is adjusted to the recommended inflation pressure. See **Tire**

**Pressures** (page 273). Monitor the tire pressure until the sealed tire is replaced.

1. Stop your vehicle after driving about six miles (10 kilometers). Check, and where necessary, adjust the pressure of the damaged tire.
2. Attach the temporary mobility kit and check the tire pressure from the pressure gauge D.
3. If the pressure of the sealant-filled tire is more than the recommended pressure, adjust it to the recommended pressure. See **Tire Pressures** (page 273).
4. Follow the inflation procedure once again to inflate the tire.
5. Check the tire pressure again from the pressure gauge D. If the tire pressure is too high, deflate the tire to the specified pressure using the pressure relief valve B.

6. If the tire pressure is less than the recommended pressure, repeat steps 13 to 16 and steps 1 to 5 (Checking the Tire Pressure).
7. Once you have inflated the tire to its correct tire pressure, move the compressor switch F to position 0, remove the power plug E from the auxiliary power point, unscrew the sealant bottle hose, fasten the valve cap and replace the protective cap A.
8. Drive to the nearest tire specialist to get the damaged tire replaced. Before the tire is removed from the wheel, inform the tire specialist that the tire contains sealant. Renew the sealant bottle as soon as possible after it has been used once.

**Note:** The temporary mobility kit only provides an emergency repair. Regulations concerning tire repair after using the temporary mobility kit may differ from country to country. You should consult a tire specialist for advice.

Empty sealant bottles can be disposed of together with normal household waste. Return remaining sealant to an authorized dealer or dispose of it in compliance with local waste disposal regulations.

## TIRE CARE



E70415

# Wheels and Tires

To make sure the front and rear tires of your vehicle wear evenly and last longer, we recommend that you swap the tires from front to rear and vice versa at regular intervals of between 3000 and 6000 miles (5000 and 10000 kilometers).

## WARNING



Do not scrub the sidewalls of the tires when you are parking.

If you have to mount a curb, do so slowly and approach it with the wheels at right-angles to the curb.

Examine the tires regularly for cuts, foreign objects and uneven wear of the tread. Uneven wear could mean that the wheel alignment is outside specification.

Check the tire pressures (including the spare) when cold, every two weeks.

## USING WINTER TIRES

If winter tires are used you must inflate them to the same tire pressures as those listed in the tire pressure table. See **Tire Pressures** (page 273).

## USING SNOW CHAINS

### WARNINGS



Do not exceed 30 mph (50 km/h).



Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.



Only fit snow chains to specified tires.



If your vehicle has wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.

Only use snow chains of 10 millimeters or smaller.

Only use snow chains on the front wheels.

**Note:** *The anti-lock braking system will continue to operate normally.*

## Vehicles with Stability Control

When stability control is on, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics. To reduce this, switch traction control off. See **Using Stability Control** (page 166).

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

### WARNING



The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



You must check the tire pressures (including the spare tire where applicable) every two weeks when the tires are cold.

You must inflate the tires to the correct pressure.

See **Wheels and Tires** (page 260). The tire pressures are also on the tire inflation pressure label (located on the edge of driver door or the B-Pillar).

# Wheels and Tires

As a driver assistance feature, your vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system. A warning lamp will illuminate when one or more of the tires are significantly under-inflated. If the low tire pressure warning lamp illuminates, you should stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, check the tires and inflate them to the correct pressure.

Driving on under-inflated tires can:

- Cause them to overheat.
- Lead to tire failure.
- Reduce fuel efficiency.
- Reduce tire life.
- Affect vehicle handling or stopping ability.

The system is not a substitute for correct tire maintenance.

You must maintain the correct tire pressures, even if low tire pressure has not illuminated the warning lamp.

The tire pressure monitoring system has a system malfunction indicator to warn you when the system is not operating correctly. The malfunction indicator and low tire pressure warning lamp have a combined function. When the system detects a malfunction, the warning lamp will flash for approximately one minute and then remain illuminated. This sequence will occur every time you switch the ignition on while the malfunction remains. The system has detected a fault that requires service.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressures. A malfunction may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of a replacement tire or wheel that prevents the system from functioning correctly. Always check the tire pressure monitoring system malfunction warning after

replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle. Make sure the replacement tires or wheels allow the system to continue to function correctly. See **When the Temporary Spare Tire is Installed** in this section.

## Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System



E142549

You should always have tires serviced by an authorized dealer.

**Note:** Each road wheel and tire is fitted with a tire pressure sensor located inside the wheel and tire assembly cavity. The pressure sensor attaches to the valve stem. The tire covers the pressure sensor and it is not visible unless the tire is removed. Take care when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor.

## Understanding the Tire Pressure Monitoring System

The system measures the pressure in the four road tires and sends the tire pressure readings to your vehicle.

The system detects this lower pressure as being significantly below the correct inflation pressure and the warning lamp illuminates. You must inflate the tires to the correct pressure.

# Wheels and Tires

## When the Temporary Spare Tire is Installed

If you need to replace a road wheel and tire with the temporary spare wheel, the system will continue to identify a defect. This is to remind you to repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit the repaired road wheel and tire assembly to your vehicle. To restore the correct operation of the system, you must have the repaired

road wheel and tire assembly refitted to your vehicle.

## When You Believe the System is Not Operating Correctly

The main function of the system is to warn you when the tire pressures are low. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of operating correctly. See the following chart for information concerning the system:

Warning lamp	Description	Action
Solid warning lamp	Tire(s) under-inflated	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Make sure tires are at the correct pressure. See <b>Wheels and Tires</b> (page 260). The tire pressures are also on the tire inflation pressure label (located on the edge of driver door or the B-Pillar).</li> <li>2. After inflating the tires to the correct pressure you must carry out the tire pressure monitoring system reset procedure. See <b>Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure</b> in this chapter.</li> </ol>
	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit the repaired road wheel and tire assembly to your vehicle to restore the correct operation of the system.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are correctly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, the system has detected a fault that requires service.
Solid warning lamp initially followed by a flashing warning lamp	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit the repaired road wheel and tire assembly to your vehicle to restore the correct operation of the system.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are correctly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, the system has detected a fault that requires service.

# Wheels and Tires

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure

### Overview

You must carry out the system reset procedure after each tire replacement or adjustment of the tire pressures.

To maintain your vehicle load carrying capability, your vehicle requires different tire pressures in the front tires compared to the rear tires.

The system illuminates the warning lamp at different pressures for the front and rear tires.

The tires need to be periodically rotated to provide consistent performance and maximum tire life, the system needs to know when the tires have been rotated to determine which set of tires are on the front and rear axles. With this information, the system can detect and correctly warn of low tire pressures.

### Carrying Out the System Reset Procedure

Switch the ignition on. Using the information display control select:

Message	Description and Action
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Driver assist	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Tire Monitor	Press and hold the <b>OK</b> button until confirmation appears. Alternatively, if your vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system reset button, press and hold the button until confirmation appears.

## How Temperature Affects the Tire Pressures

Under normal driving conditions tire pressures may increase by up to 4 psi (0.3 bar) from a cold start situation.

If the vehicle is stationary overnight and the temperature significantly lower than the daytime temperature, tire pressures may decrease by up to 3 psi (0.2 bar) when there is a drop in the ambient temperature of 63°F (17°C) or more. The system detects this pressure decrease as being significantly below the correct inflation pressure and the warning lamp illuminates.

## When Inflating the Tires

When inflating the tires the system may not respond immediately to the air added to the tires.

### If the Warning Lamp is On:

1. Check each tire to verify that none are flat.
2. If one or more tires are flat, repair as necessary.
3. Check the tire pressures and inflate all the tires to the correct pressure.
4. Carry out the tire pressure monitoring system reset procedure.

# Wheels and Tires

## CHANGING A ROAD WHEEL

### Lug Nuts

You can obtain a replacement locking lug nut key and replacement locking lug nuts from your dealer using the reference number certificate.

### Vehicles with a Spare Wheel

If the spare wheel is exactly the same type and size as the other fitted road wheels, you can replace the existing road wheel with the spare wheel and continue to drive in the normal manner.

If the spare wheel is different to the other road wheels, it will carry a yellow label with the appropriate speed limit.

Refer to the following information before changing the road wheel.

#### WARNINGS



Drive the shortest possible distances.



Do not fit more than one spare wheel on your vehicle at any one time.



Do not carry out any tire repairs on a spare wheel.



Do not drive through an automatic car wash.



If you are unsure what type of spare wheel you have do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).



Only fit snow chains to specified tires. See **Using Snow Chains** (page 264).



The ground clearance of your vehicle may be reduced. Take care when parking next to a curb.

**Note:** Your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.

### Vehicle Jack

#### WARNINGS



The vehicle jack supplied with your vehicle should only be used when changing a wheel in emergency situations.



Before using the vehicle jack, check that it is not damaged or deformed and that the thread is lubricated and free from foreign matter.



Never place anything between the jack and the ground, or the jack and your vehicle.

**Note:** Vehicles with a temporary mobility kit do not have a vehicle jack or a lug nut wrench

It is recommended to use a workshop type hydraulic jack for changing between summer and winter tires.

**Note:** Use a jack with a minimum lifting capacity of 1.5 tonnes and a lifting plate with a minimum diameter of 3.1 inches (80 millimeters).

### Vehicles without a Temporary Mobility Kit

Your vehicle jack, lug nut wrench and screw-in towing eye are located in the spare wheel well or behind the rear seat with the fuel funnel.

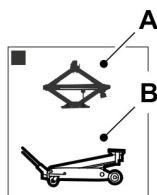
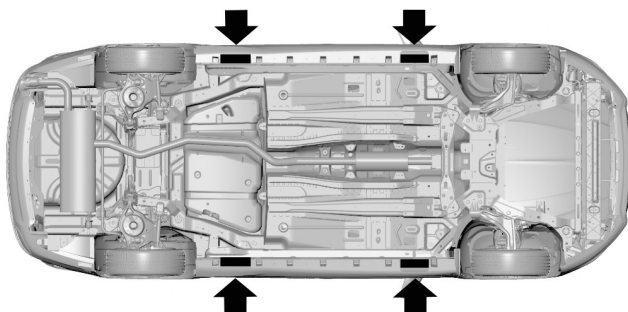
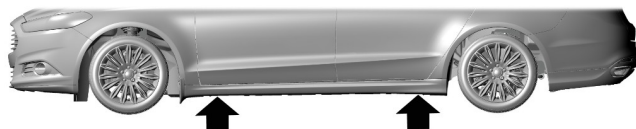
### Jacking and Lifting Points

#### WARNING



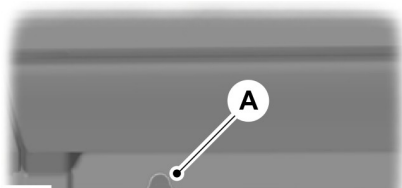
Use only the specified jacking points. If you use other positions, you may damage the body, steering, suspension, engine, braking system or the fuel lines.

# Wheels and Tires



E185120

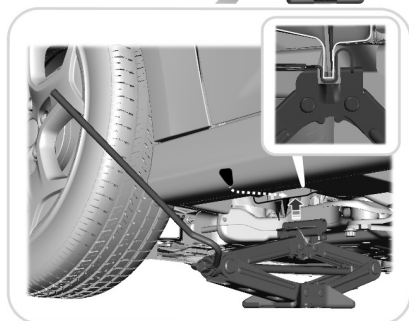
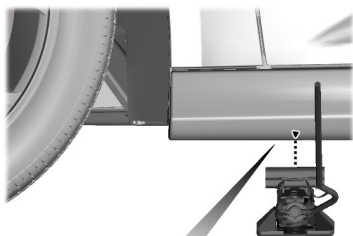
- A Emergency use only
- B Maintenance



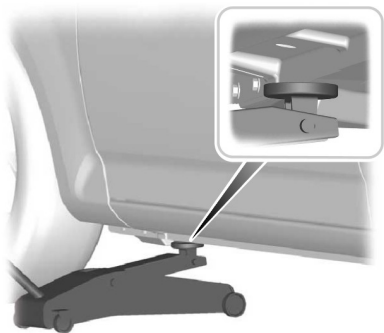
E93184

Indentations in the sills show the location of the jacking points.

# Wheels and Tires

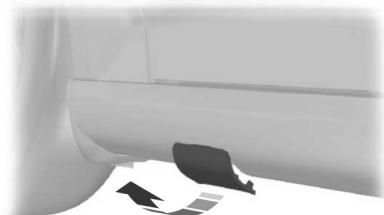


E174775



E93020









## Vehicles with Side Skirts



E95345

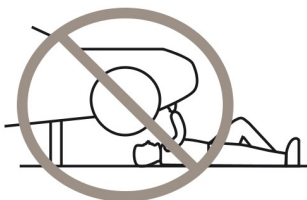
## Removing a Road Wheel

### WARNINGS

-  Park your vehicle in such a position that neither the traffic nor you are hindered or endangered.
-  Set up a warning triangle.
-  Make sure that your vehicle is on firm, level ground with the wheels pointing straight ahead.
-  Switch the ignition off and apply the parking brake.
-  If your vehicle has a manual transmission, move the selector lever to first or reverse gear. If it has an automatic transmission, move the selector lever to position **(P)**.
-  Have the passenger's leave your vehicle.
-  Secure the diagonally opposite wheel with an appropriate block or wheel chock.
-  Do not work underneath your vehicle when it is supported only by a jack.





# Wheels and Tires



E166722

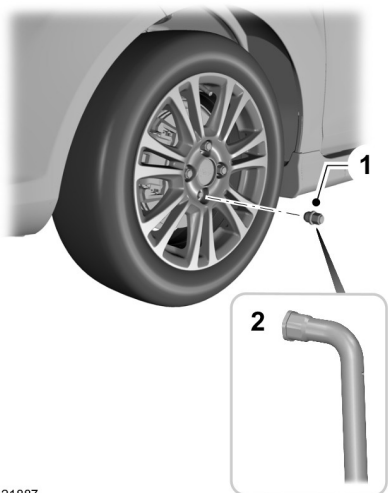
## WARNINGS

 Make sure that the jack is vertical to the jacking point and the base is flat on the ground.

 Do not lay alloy wheels face down on the ground, this will damage the paint.

**Note:** The spare wheel is located under the floor cover in the luggage compartment.

1. Install the locking lug nut key.




E121887

2. Slacken the lug nuts.


3. Jack up your vehicle until the tire is clear of the ground.
4. Remove the lug nuts and the wheel.


## Installing a Road Wheel

### WARNINGS


 Make sure that the arrows on directional tires point in the direction of rotation when your vehicle is moving forward. If you have to fit a spare wheel with the arrows pointing in the opposite direction, have the tire refitted in the correct direction by an authorized dealer.


 Use only approved wheel and tire sizes. Using other sizes could damage the vehicle and will make the National Type Approval invalid. See **Tire Pressures** (page 273).

 Make sure there is no lubrication (grease or oil) on the threads or the surface between the wheel lugs and nuts. This can cause the lug nuts to loosen while driving.

 Do not fit run flat tires on vehicles that were not originally fitted with them. Contact an authorized dealer for more details about compatibility.

### WARNINGS

 Do not install alloy wheels using lug nuts designed for use with steel wheels.

 Lug nuts are subject to change. You must make sure that you use only the specific lug nuts and wheels supplied for your vehicle. If in doubt please contact your authorized dealer.

**Note:** The lug nuts of alloy wheels and spoked steel wheels can also be used for the steel spare wheel for a short time (maximum two weeks).

# Wheels and Tires

---

**Note:** Make sure the wheel and hub contact surfaces are free from foreign matter.

**Note:** Make sure that the cones on the lug nuts are against the wheel.

1. Install the wheel.
2. Install the lug nuts finger tight.
3. Install the locking lug nut key.

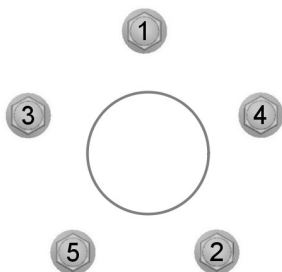
4. Partially tighten the lug nuts in the sequence shown.
5. Lower your vehicle and remove the jack.
6. Fully tighten the lug nuts in the sequence shown.
7. Install the wheel trim using the ball of your hand.

## WARNING



Have the lug nuts checked for tightness and the tire pressure checked as soon as possible.

---



E75442

# Wheels and Tires

## TIRE PRESSURES

Up to 100 mph (160 km/h)

Engine	Tire size	Normal load		Full load		
		Front	Rear	Front	Rear	
		psi (bar)	psi (bar)	psi (bar)	psi (bar)	
1.0L EcoBoost	215/60R16*	35 psi (2.4 bar)	35 psi (2.4 bar)	-	-	
1.5L EcoBoost	235/50R17	32 psi (2.2 bar)	32 psi (2.2 bar)	36 psi (2.5 bar)	42 psi (2.9 bar)	
1.5L Duratorq-TDCI						
1.6L Duratorq-TDCI						
1.5L EcoBoost	235/45R18	32 psi (2.2 bar)	32 psi (2.2 bar)			
1.5L Duratorq-TDCI						
1.6L Duratorq-TDCI	235/40R19	35 psi (2.4 bar)	35 psi (2.4 bar)			
1.5L EcoBoost						
2.5L Duratec	215/60R16*	35 psi (2.4 bar)	35 psi (2.4 bar)			
	235/50R17 235/45R18		32 psi (2.2 bar)			
2.5L Duratec	235/40R19					
2.0L Duratorq-TDCI	215/60R16*		35 psi (2.4 bar)			
	235/50R17 235/45R18 235/40R19		32 psi (2.2 bar)			
2.0L EcoBoost	215/60R16*		35 psi (2.4 bar)			

## Wheels and Tires

Engine	Tire size	Normal load		Full load	
		Front	Rear	Front	Rear
		psi (bar)	psi (bar)	psi (bar)	psi (bar)
	235/50R17 235/45R18 235/40R19		32 psi (2.2 bar)		
All engines	T125/80R16	60 psi (4.2 bar)			
All engines	T125/70R17	60 psi (4.2 bar)			

\*Only fit snow chains to specified tires. See **Using Snow Chains** (page 264).

# Wheels and Tires

## Continuous Speed in Excess of 100 mph (160 km/h)

Engine	Tire size	Normal load		Full load	
		Front	Rear	Front	Rear
		psi (bar)	psi (bar)	psi (bar)	psi (bar)
1.0L EcoBoost	215/60R16	35 psi (2.4 bar)	35 psi (2.4 bar)	36 psi (2.5 bar)	42 psi (2.9 bar)
1.5L EcoBoost	235/50R17	35 psi (2.4 bar)	32 psi (2.2 bar)		
1.5L Duratorq-TDCI					
1.6L Duratorq-TDCI					
1.5L EcoBoost	235/45R18	35 psi (2.4 bar)	32 psi (2.2 bar)		
1.5L Duratorq-TDCI					
1.6L Duratorq-TDCI	235/40R19	35 psi (2.4 bar)	32 psi (2.2 bar)		
1.5L EcoBoost					
2.5L Duratec					
2.5L Duratec	215/60R16	35 psi (2.4 bar)	35 psi (2.4 bar)		
	235/50R17 235/45R18		32 psi (2.2 bar)		
2.5L Duratec	235/40R19				
2.0L Duratorq-TDCI	215/60R16	38 psi (2.6 bar)	38 psi (2.6 bar)	41 psi (2.8 bar)	46 psi (3.2 bar)
2.0L EcoBoost	235/50R17 235/45R18 235/40R19	36 psi (2.5 bar)	33 psi (2.3 bar)	39 psi (2.7 bar)	45 psi (3.1 bar)

# Wheels and Tires

---

## LUG NUTS

### Lug Nut Torque

Wheel type	lb.ft (Nm)
All	100 lb.ft (135 Nm)

# Capacities and Specifications

## VEHICLE DIMENSIONS

### 4-Door

Dimension description	in (mm)
Maximum length	191.8 in (4,871 mm)
Overall width including exterior mirrors	83.5 in (2,121 mm)
Overall height - EC curb weight	57.6–58.6 in (1,464–1,488 mm)
Wheelbase	112.2 in (2,850 mm)
Front track	62.3–62.7 in (1,583–1,593 mm)
Rear track	62.0–62.4 in (1,576–1,586 mm)

### 5-Door

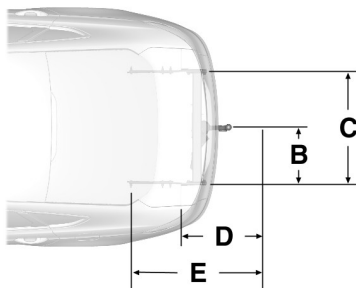
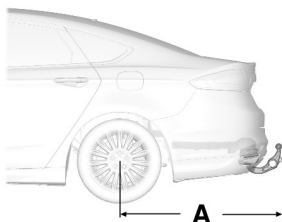
Dimension description	in (mm)
Maximum length	191.8 (4,871)
Overall width including exterior mirrors	83.5 in (2,121 mm)
Overall height - EC curb weight	57.6–58.4 in (1,464–1,484 mm)
Wheelbase	112.2 in (2,850 mm)
Front track	62.3–62.7 in (1,583–1,593 mm)
Rear track	62.0–62.4 in (1,576–1,586 mm)

# Capacities and Specifications

## Wagon

Dimension description	in (mm)
Maximum length	191.6 (4,867)
Overall width including exterior mirrors	83.5 in (2,121 mm)
Overall height - EC curb weight	58.2–59.0 in (1,479–1,499 mm)
Wheelbase	112.2 in (2,850 mm)
Front track	62.3–62.7 in (1,583–1,593 mm)
Rear track	62.0–62.4 in (1,576–1,586 mm)

## TOWBAR DIMENSIONS



E180201



# Capacities and Specifications

## Sedan and 5-Door

Measurement	Dimension description	in (mm)
A	Wheel center – end of tow ball	43.0 in (1,091 mm)
B	Center of tow ball – side member	16.8 in (426 mm)
C	Inner side of side member	33.5 in (852 mm)
D	Center of tow ball to attachment point one	17.7 in (450 mm)
E	Center of tow ball to center of attachment point two	29.6 in (753 mm)

## Maximum Permissible Nose Weight

lb (kg)
198.4 lb (90 kg)

## Wagon

Measurement	Dimension description	in (mm)
A	Wheel center – end of tow ball	46.8 in (1,189 mm)
B	Center of tow ball – side member	16.8 in (426 mm)
C	Inner side of side member	33.5 in (852 mm)
D	Center of tow ball to attachment point one	17.6 in (448 mm)
E	Center of tow ball to center of attachment point two	29.6 in (751 mm)

# Capacities and Specifications

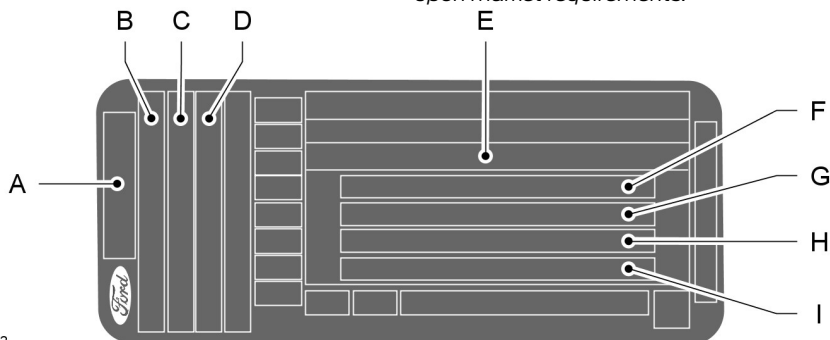
## Maximum Permissible Nose Weight

lb (kg)
198.4 lb (90 kg)

## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

**Note:** Your vehicle identification plate design may vary to that shown.

**Note:** The information shown on your vehicle identification plate is dependent upon market requirements.



E135662

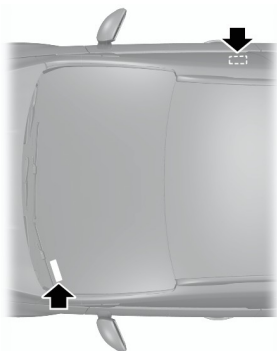
- A Model
- B Variant
- C Engine designation
- D Engine power and emission level
- E Vehicle identification number
- F Gross vehicle weight
- G Gross train weight
- H Maximum front axle weight
- I Maximum rear axle weight

You can find your vehicle identification number and maximum weights on a plate, which is located at the bottom of the lock side of the passenger door aperture.

# Capacities and Specifications

## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

The vehicle identification number is stamped into the floor panel on the right-hand side, beside the front seat. It is also shown on the left-hand side of the instrument panel.



E87496

## CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 1.0L ECOBOOST™

### Capacities

Item	Capacity
Engine lubrication system - including the oil filter	0.9 gal (4.1 L)
Engine lubrication system - excluding the oil filter	0.9 gal (4 L)
Engine cooling system	1.5 gal (6.89 L)
Fuel tank	13.7 gal (62.5 L)
Windshield and rear window washer system - including headlamp washer	1.0 gal (4.5 L)

### Engine Oil Adding Capacities

Engine	Quantity
All	0.2 gal (0.8 L)

# Capacities and Specifications

## Specifications

**Note:** Use fluids which meet the specifications or requirements defined. Use of other fluids may lead to damage which is not covered by your vehicle's warranty.

## Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - 5W-20	WSS-M2C948-B
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium 4U7J-19544-xxxx	WSS-M97B44-D
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium Ready Mix 2U2J-19544-xxxx	WSS-M97B44-D2
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2
Screen Wash 5U7J-19C544-AA, 3U7J-19523-GA, 2U7J-M8B16-AA/CA/DA	WSS-M14P19-A

The engine has been designed to be used with Castrol and Ford Engine Oil, which gives a fuel economy benefit while maintaining the durability of the engine.

Adding oil: If you are unable to find an oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C948-B, you must use SAE 5W-20 that meets the specification defined by ACEA A5/B5.

**Note:** Do not use more than 0.2 gal (1 L) between scheduled service intervals.

Using oils other than the one specified can result in longer engine cranking periods, reduced engine performance, reduced fuel economy and increased emission levels.



Castrol engine oil recommended.

# Capacities and Specifications

## CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 1.5L ECOBOOST™

### Capacities

Item	Capacity
Engine lubrication system - including the oil filter	0.9 gal (4.1 L)
Engine lubrication system - excluding the oil filter	0.8 gal (3.8 L)
Engine cooling system	2.3 gal (10.5 L)
Fuel tank	13.7 gal (62.5 L)
Windshield and rear window washer system - including headlamp washer	1.3 gal (5.7 L)

### Engine Oil Adding Capacities

Engine	Quantity
All	0.2 gal (0.8 L)

### Specifications

**Note:** Use fluids which meet the specifications or requirements defined. Use of other fluids may lead to damage which is not covered by your vehicle's warranty.

#### Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - 5W-20	WSS-M2C948-B
Engine Oil - 5W-30	WSS-M2C913-C
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium 4U7J-19544-xxxx	WSS-M97B44-D
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium Ready Mix 2U2J-19544-xxxx	WSS-M97B44-D2
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2
Screen Wash 5U7J-19C544-AA, 3U7J-19523-GA, 2U7J-M8B16-AA/CA/DA	WSS-M14P19-A

## Capacities and Specifications

The engine has been designed to be used with Castrol and Ford Engine Oil, which gives a fuel economy benefit while maintaining the durability of the engine.

Adding oil: If you are unable to find an oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C948-B or WSS-M2C913-C, you must use SAE 5W-20 or SAE 5W-30 that meets the specification defined by ACEA A5/B5.

**Note:** Do not use more than 0.2 gal (1 L) between scheduled service intervals.

Using oils other than the one specified can result in longer engine cranking periods, reduced engine performance, reduced fuel economy and increased emission levels.



Castrol engine oil recommended.

## CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 2.0L ECOBOOST™

### Capacities

Item	Capacity
Engine lubrication system - including the oil filter	1.2 gal (5.4 L)
Engine lubrication system - excluding the oil filter	1.1 gal (5.1 L)
Engine cooling system	1.8 gal (8.4 L)
Fuel tank	13.7 gal (62.5 L)
Windshield and rear window washer system - including headlamp washer	1.3 gal (5.7 L)

### Engine Oil Adding Capacities

Engine	Quantity
All	0.2 gal (0.9 L)

### Specifications

**Note:** Use fluids which meet the specifications or requirements defined. Use of other fluids may lead to damage which is not covered by your vehicle's warranty.

## Capacities and Specifications

### Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - 5W-20	WSS-M2C948-B
Engine Oil - 5W-30	WSS-M2C913-C
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium 4U7J-19544-xxxx	WSS-M97B44-D
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium Ready Mix 2U2J-19544-xxxx	WSS-M97B44-D2
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2
Screen Wash 5U7J-19C544-AA, 3U7J-19523-GA, 2U7J-M8B16-AA/CA/DA	WSS-M14P19-A

The engine has been designed to be used with Castrol and Ford Engine Oil, which gives a fuel economy benefit while maintaining the durability of the engine.

Adding oil: If you are unable to find an oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C948-B or WSS-M2C913-C, you must use SAE 5W-20 or SAE 5W-30 that meets the specification defined by ACEA A5/B5.

**Note:** Do not use more than 0.2 gal (1 L) between scheduled service intervals.

Using oils other than the one specified can result in longer engine cranking periods, reduced engine performance, reduced fuel economy and increased emission levels.



Castrol engine oil recommended.

## CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 2.5L

### Capacities

Item	Capacity
Engine lubrication system - including the oil filter	1.1 gal (5 L)
Engine lubrication system - excluding the oil filter	1.0 gal (4.6 L)
Engine cooling system	1.5 gal (6.8 L)
Fuel tank	13.7 gal (62.5 L)
Windshield and rear window washer system - including headlamp washer	1.3 gal (5.7 L)

# Capacities and Specifications

## Engine Oil Adding Capacities

Engine	Quantity
All	0.2 gal (0.9 L)

## Specifications

**Note:** Use fluids which meet the specifications or requirements defined. Use of other fluids may lead to damage which is not covered by your vehicle's warranty.

### Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - 5W-20	WSS-M2C948-B
Engine Oil - 5W-30	WSS-M2C913-C
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium 4U7J-19544-xxxx	WSS-M97B44-D
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium Ready Mix 2U2J-19544-xxxx	WSS-M97B44-D2
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2
Screen Wash 5U7J-19C544-AA, 3U7J-19523-GA, 2U7J-M8B16-AA/CA/DA	WSS-M14P19-A

The engine has been designed to be used with Castrol and Ford Engine Oil, which gives a fuel economy benefit while maintaining the durability of the engine.

Adding oil: If you are unable to find an oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C948-B or WSS-M2C913-C, you must use SAE 5W-20 or SAE 5W-30 that meets the specification defined by ACEA A5/B5.

**Note:** Do not use more than 0.2 gal (1 L) between scheduled service intervals.

Using oils other than the one specified can result in longer engine cranking periods, reduced engine performance, reduced fuel economy and increased emission levels.



Castrol engine oil recommended.



# Capacities and Specifications

## CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 1.5L DURATORQ-TDCI DIESEL

### Capacities

Item	Capacity
Engine lubrication system - including the oil filter	0.8 gal (3.8 L)
Engine lubrication system - excluding the oil filter	0.8 gal (3.5 L)
Engine cooling system	1.6 gal (7.3 L)
Fuel tank	13.7 gal (62.5 L)
Windshield and rear window washer system - including headlamp washer	1.0 gal (4.5 L)

### Engine Oil Adding Capacities

Engine	Quantity
All	0.4 gal (1.6 L)

### Specifications

**Note:** Use fluids which meet the specifications or requirements defined. Use of other fluids may lead to damage which is not covered by your vehicle's warranty.

#### Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - 0W-30	WSS-M2C950-A
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium 4U7J-19544-xxxx	WSS-M97B44-D
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium Ready Mix 2U2J-19544-xxxx	WSS-M97B44-D2
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2
Screen Wash 5U7J-19C544-AA, 3U7J-19523-GA, 2U7J-M8B16-AA/CA/DA	WSS-M14P19-A

## Capacities and Specifications

The engine has been designed to be used with Castrol and Ford Engine Oil, which gives a fuel economy benefit while maintaining the durability of the engine.

Adding oil: If you are unable to find an oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C950-A, you must use SAE 0W-30 oil that meets the specification defined by ACEA A5/B5.

Using oils other than the one specified can result in longer engine cranking periods, reduced engine performance, reduced fuel economy and increased emission levels.



Castrol engine oil recommended.

### CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 1.6L DIESEL

#### Capacities

Item	Capacity
Engine lubrication system - including the oil filter	0.8 gal (3.8 L)
Engine lubrication system - excluding the oil filter	0.8 gal (3.5 L)
Engine cooling system	2.2 gal (10.2 L)
Fuel tank	13.7 gal (62.5 L)
Windshield and rear window washer system - including headlamp washer	1.0 gal (4.5 L)

#### Engine Oil Adding Capacities

Engine	Quantity
All	0.4 gal (1.6 L)

#### Specifications

**Note:** Use fluids which meet the specifications or requirements defined. Use of other fluids may lead to damage which is not covered by your vehicle's warranty.

#### Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - 5W-30	WSS-M2C913-D

## Capacities and Specifications

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - 0W-30	WSS-M2C950-A
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium 4U7J-19544-xxxx	WSS-M97B44-D
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium Ready Mix 2U2J-19544-xxxx	WSS-M97B44-D2
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2
Screen Wash 5U7J-19C544-AA, 3U7J-19523-GA, 2U7J-M8B16-AA/CA/DA	WSS-M14P19-A

The engine has been designed to be used with Castrol and Ford Engine Oil, which gives a fuel economy benefit while maintaining the durability of the engine.

Adding oil: If you are unable to find an oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C913-D or WSS-M2C950-A, you must use SAE 5W-30 or SAE 0W-30 that meets the specification defined by ACEA A5/B5.

Using oils other than the one specified can result in longer engine cranking periods, reduced engine performance, reduced fuel economy and increased emission levels.



Castrol engine oil recommended.

## CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 2.0L DIESEL

### Capacities

Item	Capacity
Engine lubrication system - including the oil filter	1.3 gal (6.1 L)
Engine lubrication system - excluding the oil filter	1.3 gal (5.7 L)
Engine cooling system	2.0 gal (9 L)
Fuel tank	13.7 gal (62.5 L)
Windshield and rear window washer system - including headlamp washer	1.0 gal (4.5 L)

# Capacities and Specifications

## Engine Oil Adding Capacities

Engine	Quantity
All	0.4 gal (1.8 L)

## Specifications

**Note:** Use fluids which meet the specifications or requirements defined. Use of other fluids may lead to damage which is not covered by your vehicle's warranty.

### Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - 0W-30	WSS-M2C950-A
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium 4U7J-19544-xxxx	WSS-M97B44-D
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium Ready Mix 2U2J-19544-xxxx	WSS-M97B44-D2
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2
Screen Wash 5U7J-19C544-AA, 3U7J-19523-GA, 2U7J-M8B16-AA/CA/DA	WSS-M14P19-A

The engine has been designed to be used with Castrol and Ford Engine Oil, which gives a fuel economy benefit while maintaining the durability of the engine.

**Adding oil:** If you are unable to find an oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C950-A, you must use SAE 0W-30 that meets the specification defined by ACEA A5/B5.

Using oils other than the one specified can result in longer engine cranking periods, reduced engine performance, reduced fuel economy and increased emission levels.



Castrol engine oil recommended.

## Capacities and Specifications

### FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES

Variant	Urban	Extra-Urban	Combined	CO2 Emissions
	mpg ( L/100 km)	mpg ( L/100 km)	mpg ( L/100 km)	g/km
1.0L EcoBoost	36.8–37.9 (6.4–6.2)	50.0–53.5 (4.7–4.4)	44.4–46.1 (5.3–5.1)	119–124
1.5L EcoBoost	26.7–30.2 (8.8–7.8)	44.4–51.1 (5.3–4.6)	35.6–40.6 (6.6–5.8)	134–154
2.0L EcoBoost	22.6–23.1 (10.4–10.2)	39.9–42.0 (5.9–5.6)	30.9–32.2 (7.6–7.3)	169–176
1.6L Duratorq-TDCi	56.0–57.4 (4.2–4.1)	67.2–71.3 (3.5–3.3)	61.9–65.3 (3.8–3.6)	94–99
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi	42.8–51.1 (5.5–4.6)	51.1–63.6 (4.6–3.7)	47.0–57.4 (5–4.1)	107–130

# Audio System

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### Radio Frequencies and Reception Factors

Radio reception factors	
Distance and Strength	The further you travel away from an FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.
Terrain	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.
Station overload	When you pass near a radio transmission tower, a stronger signal can override a weaker signal and can cause interference in the audio system.

### CD and CD Player Information

**Note:** *CD units play commercially pressed 4.75-inch (12 centimeter) audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD players.*

**Note:** *Do not insert CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels into the CD player as the label may peel and cause the CD to become jammed. You should use a permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels on your homemade CDs. Ballpoint pens may damage CDs. Please contact an authorized dealer for further information.*

**Note:** *Do not use any irregularly shaped discs or discs with a scratch protection film attached.*

Always handle discs by their edges only. Clean the disc with an approved CD cleaner only. Wipe it from the center of the disc toward the edge. Do not clean in a circular motion.

Do not expose discs to direct sunlight or heat sources for extended periods.

### MP3 and WMA Track and Folder Structure

Audio systems capable of recognizing and playing MP3 and WMA individual tracks and folder structures work as follows:

- There are two different modes for MP3 and WMA disc playback: MP3 and WMA track mode (system default) and MP3 and WMA folder mode.
- MP3 and WMA track mode ignores any folder structure on the MP3 and WMA disc. The player numbers each MP3 and WMA track on the disc (noted by the MP3 or WMA file extension) from T001 to a maximum of T255. The maximum number of playable MP3 and WMA files may be less depending on the structure of the CD and exact model of radio present.

# Audio System

---

- MP3 and WMA folder mode represents a folder structure consisting of one level of folders. The CD player numbers all MP3 and WMA tracks on the disc (noted by the MP3 or WMA file extension) and all folders containing MP3 and WMA files, from F001 (folder) T001 (track) to F253 T255.
- Creating discs with only one level of folders helps with navigation through the disc files.

If you are burning your own MP3 and WMA discs, it is important to understand how the system reads the structures you create. While various files may be present, (files with extensions other than MP3 and WMA), only files with the MP3 and WMA extension are played; other files are ignored by the system. This enables you to use the same MP3 and WMA disc for a variety of tasks on your work computer, home computer and your in-vehicle system.

In track mode, the system displays and plays the structure as if it were only one level deep (all MP3 and WMA files play, regardless of being in a specific folder). In folder mode, the system only plays the MP3 and WMA files in the current folder.

## AUDIO UNIT

### WARNING

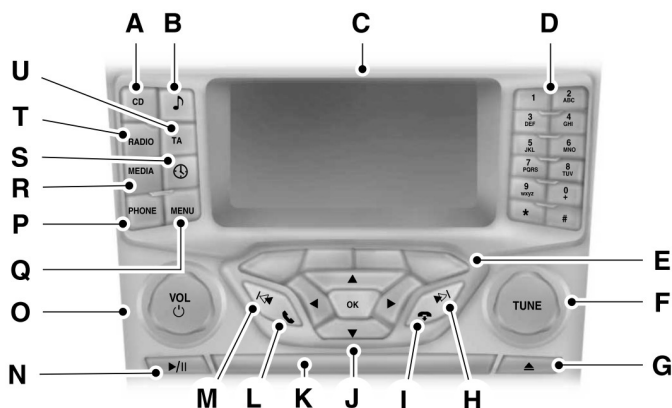


Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

**Note:** Depending on your vehicle option package, your system may look different from what you see here.

**Note:** Some features, such as Sirius satellite radio, may not be available in your location. Check with an authorized dealer.

# Audio System



E181142

- A **CD:** Press this button to listen to a CD. Press the function buttons below the radio screen to select on-screen options of Repeat or Shuffle.
- B **SOUND:** Press this button to access settings for Treble, Midrange, Bass, Fade and Balance. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the various settings. When you make your selection, press the left and right arrow buttons to change the settings. Press **OK** to set or press **MENU** to exit. Sound settings can be set for each audio source independently.
- C **Display screen:** Shows audio and SYNC information.
- D **Number block:** In radio mode, store and recall your favorite stations for later access. When tuned to any station, press and hold a preset button until sound returns. In CD mode, press a button to select a track. In phone mode, press the buttons to enter a phone number.
- E **Function buttons:** Select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode you are in (such as Radio mode or CD mode).
- F **TUNE:** Turn to search the frequency in individual increments.
- G **Eject:** Press this button to eject a CD.
- H **Seek:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press this button. The system stops at the first station up the band. Press and hold the button to move quickly to the next strong radio station. In CD mode, press this button to select the next track. Press and hold the button to move quickly forward through the current track.
- I **End phone call:** Press this button to end a phone call.



# Audio System

---


- J **Cursor arrows and OK:** Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the various settings. When you make your selection, press the left and right arrow buttons to change the settings. Press **OK** to set or press **MENU** to exit.
- K **CD slot:** Insert a CD.
- L **Pick-up or Make phone call:** Press this button to either pick-up an incoming phone call or to make a phone call.
- M **Seek:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press this button. The system stops at the first station down the band. Press and hold the button to move quickly to the previous strong radio station. In CD mode, press this button to select the previous track. Press and hold the button to move quickly backward through the current track.
- N **Play/Pause:** Press to either play or pause a track when listening to a CD.
- O **VOL and Power:** Press this button to switch the system off and on. Turn it to adjust the volume.
- P **PHONE:** Press this button to access the phone features of the SYNC® system. See **SYNC™** (page 305).
- Q **MENU:** Press this button to access different audio system features. See **Menu Structure** later in this chapter.
- R **MEDIA:** Press this button to access your auxiliary input jack or switch between devices you plug into the input jack or USB port.
- S **Clock:** Press this button to access the clock setting. Use the center arrow controls to change the hours and minutes. You can also set the clock by pressing the **MENU** button and scrolling to Clock Settings.
- T **RADIO:** Press this button to listen to the radio or change radio frequency bands. Press the function buttons below the radio screen to select different radio functions.
- U **TA:** The system interrupts the active audio source to provide incoming traffic announcements.

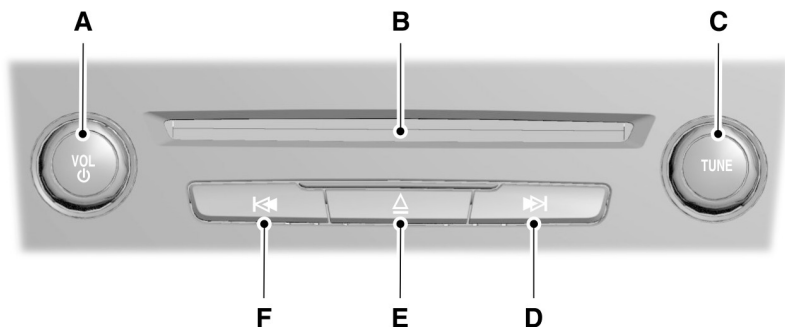
## Audio System

### AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: AM/FM/CD/SYNC

**Note:** Depending on your vehicle option package, your system may look different from what you see here.

#### WARNING

 Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



E185815

- A **VOL and Power:** Press this button to turn the system off and on. Turn it to adjust the volume.
- B **CD slot:** Insert a CD.
- C **TUNE:** Turn to search the frequency in individual increments.

# Audio System

---

- D **Seek:** In radio mode, select a frequency and press this button. The system stops at the first station up the band. Press and hold the button to move quickly to the next strong radio station. In CD mode, press this button to select the next track. Press and hold the button to move quickly forward through the current track.
- E **Eject:** Press this button to eject a CD.
- F **Seek:** In radio mode, select a frequency and press this button. The system stops at the first station down the band. Press and hold the button to move quickly to the previous strong radio station. In CD mode, press this button to select the previous track. Press and hold the button to move quickly backward through the current track.

**Note:** *The touchscreen system controls most of the audio features. See **SYNC™ 2** (page 343).*

## AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: SONY AM/FM/CD

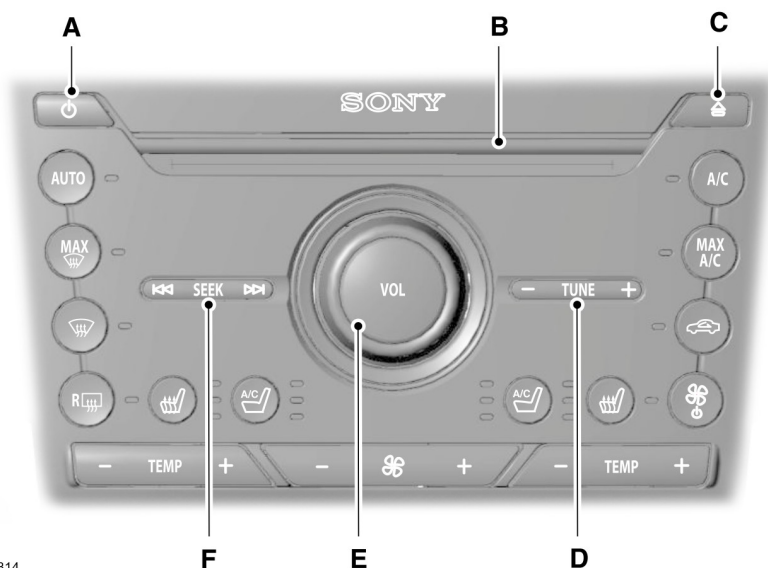
### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

---

# Audio System



E185814

- A **Power:** Press this button to switch the system off and on.
- B **CD slot:** Insert a CD.
- C **Eject:** Press this button to eject a CD.
- D **-TUNE +:** Press these buttons to search the frequency in individual increments.
- E **VOL:** Turn the control to adjust the volume.
- F **Seek, Reverse and Fast Forward:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press one of these buttons. The system stops at the first station it finds in that direction. Press and hold one of these buttons to move quickly in that direction to the next strong radio station. In CD mode, press one of these buttons to select the previous or next track. Press and hold one of these buttons to move quickly in that direction within the current track.

## Menu Structure

**Note:** Depending on your system, some options may appear slightly different.

Press **MENU**.

Press the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through the options.

Press the right arrow to enter a menu.  
Press the left arrow to exit a menu.

Press **OK** to confirm a selection.

# Audio System

Radio	
Scan	Select for a brief sampling of all available channels.
AST	Select to store the six strongest local stations on the AM-AST and FM-AST frequency bands.
Radio Text *	Select to display extra information such as artist name.
Alternative Frequency	With the alternative frequency option active, the system re-tunes to a different frequency with better reception for the same station.
Regional Mode	Regional mode controls the behavior of alternative frequencies, switching between regionally related networks.
News announcement	With the news announcement option active, the system interrupts the active audio source to provide incoming news announcements, if the currently tuned station (or last tuned station in case of other active media ) supports news.
Service Linking **	With Service Linking active the system automatically switches from DAB to FM, in case DAB becomes unavailable.

\*Extra information may not always be available.

\*\* Only within DAB variants.

# Audio System

Audio Settings	
Speed Compensated Volume	Automatically adjusts the volume to compensate for speed and wind noise. You can set the system between 0 and +7.
Sound	Select to adjust settings for Treble, Midrange, Bass, Fade and Balance.
Occupancy Mode	Select to optimize sound quality for the chosen seating position.
DPS	Choose between STEREO SURROUND mode and STEREO mode. Only with the external sound systems.

CD Settings	
Scan All	Select to scan all disc selections.
Scan Folder	Select to scan all music in the current MP3 folder.

Clock Settings	
Set Time	Select to set the time.
Set Date	Select to set the calendar date.
24h Mode	Select to view clock time in a 12-hour mode or 24-hour mode.

Display Settings	
Dimming	Select to change display brightness.
Language	Select to display the language in English, French or Spanish.
Temp. setting	Select to display the outside temperature in Fahrenheit or Celsius.

# Audio System

## DIGITAL RADIO

### General Information

The system allows you to listen to DAB (Digital Audio Broadcast) radio stations.

**Note:** Coverage differs from region to region and influences the quality of reception. It is broadcast nationwide, regionally and locally.

The following formats are supported:

- DAB.
- DAB+.
- DMB-Audio (Digital Multimedia Broadcasting).

### Ensembles

Ensembles contain a group of radio stations. Each ensemble can consist of several different radio stations.

The radio station name displays below the ensemble name.

**Note:** When you tune from one ensemble to another, it can take a while until the system synchronizes to the next ensemble. The system mutes during synchronization.

### Service Linking

If you leave the coverage area of a DAB radio station, the system automatically switches to the corresponding FM radio station.

You can switch this feature on and off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 292).

**Note:** If a DAB radio station has no corresponding FM radio station, the audio mutes when attempting to switch.

**Note:** The system displays the FM symbol when DAB and FM radio stations link.

**Note:** The sound quality changes when your system switches from DAB to the corresponding FM station.

### Using Digital Audio Broadcast on a Non-Touchscreen

#### Selecting Radio Band

DAB1 and DAB2 operate in the same way. You can store up to 10 different presets on each band.

1. Press the **RADIO** button.
2. Press the left arrow button to display the available wavebands.
3. Select **DAB1** or **DAB2**.

#### Radio Station Tuning Control

Press the **RADIO** button and select **DAB1** or **DAB2**. All preset banks operate in the same way and can store up to 10 different preset radio stations.

**Note:** When you reach the first or last radio station within an ensemble, further tuning skips to the next ensemble. There may be a delay during this change and the audio briefly mutes.

#### Seek Tuning

1. Press a seek button. The system stops at the first radio station it finds in the direction chosen.

#### Radio Station List

This feature displays all the available radio stations in a list.

1. Press function button 1.
2. Press the left or right arrow buttons to change ensembles. Press the up or down arrow button to navigate to your required radio station.
3. Press **OK** to confirm your selection.

**Note:** The display only shows radio stations in the current ensemble.

# Audio System

## Manual Tuning

1. Press function button 2.
2. Press the left or right arrow button to tune up or down the waveband in small increments. Press and hold to move through the waveband quickly.
3. Press **OK** to confirm your selection.

**Note:** *Seek tuning is also possible within this screen.*

## Radio Station Preset Buttons

This feature allows you to store up to 10 favorite radio stations from any ensemble in each preset bank.

1. Select a radio station.
2. Press and hold one of the preset buttons. A progress bar and message appear. When the progress bar completes, the radio station has been stored. The system mutes momentarily as confirmation.

Once stored, press a preset button at any time to select a favorite radio station.

**Note:** *Radio stations stored on the preset buttons may not always be available if you have left the coverage area. The system will mute when this happens.*

## Radio Text

You can display extra information. For example; artist name. To switch this option on, select a radio station and press function button 3.

**Note:** *Extra information may not always be available.*

## Using Digital Audio Broadcast and SYNC with Touchscreen

### Selecting Radio Band

DAB1, DAB2 and DAB3 operate in the same way. You can store up to 6 different presets on each band.

1. Press the **RADIO** button.
2. Press the left arrow button to display the available wavebands.
3. Select **DAB1**, **DAB2** or **DAB3**.

## Radio Station Tuning Control

Press the **RADIO** button and select **DAB1**, **DAB2** or **DAB3**. All preset banks operate in the same way and can store up to 10 different preset radio stations.

**Note:** *When you reach the first or last radio station within an ensemble, further tuning skips to the next ensemble. There may be a delay during this change and the audio briefly mutes.*

## Seek Tuning

1. Press a seek button. The system stops at the first radio station it finds in the direction chosen.

## Radio Station List

This feature displays all the available radio stations in a list.

1. Press the browse button.
2. Press the previous ensemble or next ensemble to change ensembles. Navigate through the list and select the station by pressing the touchscreen area displaying your selection.
3. Press **OK** to confirm your selection.

**Note:** *The display only shows radio stations in the current ensemble.*

## Manual Tuning

1. Press the + tune - button.

## Radio Station Preset Buttons

This feature allows you to store up to 6 favorite radio stations from any ensemble in each preset bank.

1. Select a radio station.



# Audio System

- Press and hold one of the preset buttons. A message appears when the radio station has been stored. The system mutes momentarily as confirmation.

Once stored, press a preset button at any time to select a favorite radio station.

**Note:** *Radio stations stored on the preset buttons may not always be available if you have left the coverage area. The system will mute when this happens.*


## Radio Text


You can display extra information. For example; artist name. To switch this option on select **Options > Radio Text On**.

**Note:** *Extra information may not always be available.*


## AUDIO INPUT JACK

### WARNINGS

 Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

 For safety reasons, do not connect or adjust the settings on your portable music player while your vehicle is moving.

### WARNINGS

 Store the portable music player in a secure location, such as the center console or the glove box, when your vehicle is moving. Hard objects may become projectiles in a collision or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury. The audio extension cable must be long enough to allow the portable music player to be safely stored while your vehicle is moving.



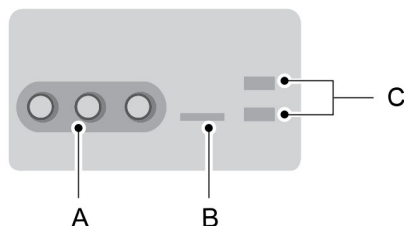
E149149

The auxiliary input jack allows you to connect and play music from your portable music player through your vehicle speakers. You can use any portable music player designed for use with headphones. Your audio extension cable must have male 1/8th-inch (3.5 millimeter) connectors at each end.

- Switch off the engine, radio and portable music player. Set the parking brake and put the transmission in position **P** (vehicle with an automatic transmission) or neutral (vehicle with a manual transmission).
- Plug the extension cable from the portable music player into the auxiliary input jack.
- Switch the radio on. Select either a tuned FM station or a CD.
- Adjust the volume as desired.

## Audio System

5. Switch your portable music player on and adjust its volume to half its maximum level.
6. Press **AUX** until **LINE** or **LINE IN** appears in the display. You should hear music from your device even if it is low.
7. Adjust the volume on your portable music player until it reaches the volume level of the FM station or CD. Do this by switching back and forth between the AUX and FM or CD controls.



E142605

- A A/V inputs
- B SD card slot
- C USB ports

## USB PORT



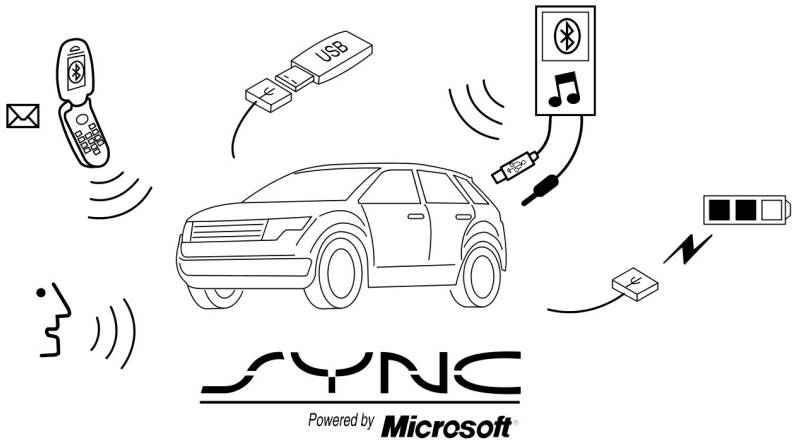
E149148

The USB port allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks and charge devices (if supported).

## MEDIA HUB

The media hub is located in the center console and has the following features:

## GENERAL INFORMATION



E142598

SYNC is an in-vehicle communications system that works with your Bluetooth-enabled cell phone and portable media player.

This allows you to:

- Make and receive calls
- Access and play music from your media player
- Use Emergency Assistance
- Access phonebook contacts and music using voice commands
- Stream music from your connected cell phone
- Select pre-defined text messages

- Use the advanced voice recognition system
- Charge your USB device (if your device supports this).

Make sure that you review your device's manual before using it with SYNC.

### Support

For further support, see an authorized dealer. For more information, visit the regional Ford website.

## Safety Information

### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

When using SYNC:

- Do not operate playing devices if the power cords or cables are broken, split or damaged. Carefully place cords and cables where you cannot step on them or they do not interfere with the operation of pedals, seats, compartments or safe driving abilities.
- Do not leave playing devices in your vehicle during extreme conditions as it could cause them damage. Refer to your device's manual for further information.
- Do not attempt to service or repair the system. See an authorized dealer.

## Privacy Information

When a cell phone is connected to SYNC, the system creates a profile that is linked to that cell phone. The system creates the profile to offer you more mobile features and to operate more efficiently. Among other things, this profile may contain data about your phonebook, text messages (read and unread) and call history. This will include the history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system. If you connect a media player, the system creates and retains an index of

supported media content. The system also records a short development log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity. The log profile and other system data may be used to improve the system and help diagnose any problems that may occur.

The cell phone profile, media player index and development log will remain in the system unless deleted. They are generally accessible in your vehicle only when you connect your cell phone or media player. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you complete a master reset to erase all stored information. See **Information Displays** (page 86).

Special equipment is required to access system data. Access to your vehicle's SYNC module is also required. We will not access the system data for any purpose other than as described without consent. Examples where system data can be accessed are for a court order, where required by law enforcement, other government authorities or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of us. Further privacy information is available. See **SYNC™ Applications and Services** (page 320).

## USING VOICE RECOGNITION

This system helps you control many features using voice commands. This allows you to keep your hands on the steering wheel and focus on what is around you.

### Helpful Hints

Make sure the interior of your vehicle is as quiet as possible. Wind noise from open windows and road vibrations may prevent the system from correctly recognizing spoken commands.

Before giving a voice command, wait for the system announcement to finish followed by a single beep. Any command spoken before this does not register with the system.

Speak naturally, without long pauses between words.

You can interrupt the system at any time while it is speaking by pressing the voice button. You can also cancel a voice session at any time by pressing and holding the voice button.

## Initiating a Voice Session



Press the voice button. A list of available commands appears in the display.

Command	Description
Bluetooth audio	Stream audio from your cell phone.
(cancel   stop   exit)	Cancel the requested action.
((line   AV   audio video) in   AUX   audio video)	Access the device connected to the auxiliary input jack.
(phone   Blackberry   iPhone   Mobile)	Make calls.
(USB [stick]   iPod   MP3 [player])	Access the device connected to your USB port.
voice settings	Adjust the level of voice interaction and feedback.
[main menu] help	Hear a list of voice commands available in the current mode.

## System Interaction and Feedback

The system provides feedback through audible tones, prompts, questions and spoken confirmations depending on the situation and your chosen level of interaction. You can customize the voice recognition system to provide more or less instruction and feedback.

The default setting is to a higher level of interaction in order to help you learn to use the system. You can change these settings at any time.

## Adjusting the Interaction Level



Press the voice button. When prompted:

Command	Description
voice settings	Provides access to change the interaction level.

Then any of the following:

Command	Description
interaction mode advanced	Provides less audible interaction and more tone prompts.
interaction mode novice	Provides more detailed interaction and guidance.

Confirmation prompts are short questions the system asks when it is not sure of your request or when there is more than one possible response to your request. For example, the system may ask if the command phone is correct.

Press the voice button. When prompted:

Command	Description
voice settings	Provides access to change the confirmation prompt setting.

Then any of the following:

Command	Description
confirmation prompts off	Makes a best guess from the command. You may still occasionally be asked to confirm settings.
confirmation prompts on	Clarifies your voice command with a short question.

The system creates suggestion lists when it has the same confidence level of several options based on your voice commands. When switched on, the system may prompt you with as many as four possibilities for clarification.

Command	Description
media candidate lists off	Makes a best guess from the media suggestion list. The system may occasionally ask you questions.
media candidate lists on	Clarifies your voice command for media suggestions.
phone candidate lists off	Makes a best guess from the cell phone suggestion list. The system may occasionally ask you questions.
phone candidate lists on	Clarifies your voice command for cell phone suggestions.

## Changing the Voice Settings

You can change the voice settings using

the information and entertainment display.

Press the **MENU** button.

Action	Message
1	SYNC-Settings
2	Voice settings

## USING SYNC™ WITH YOUR PHONE

Hands-free calling is one of the main features of SYNC. While the system supports a variety of features, many are dependent on your cell phone's functionality.

At a minimum, most cell phones with Bluetooth wireless technology support the following functions:

- Answering an incoming call.
- Ending a call.
- Using privacy mode.
- Dialing a number.
- Redialing.
- Call waiting notification.
- Caller ID.

Other features such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download are cell phone dependent features. To check your cell phone's compatibility, refer to your device's manual or visit the regional Ford website.

## Pairing a Cell Phone For the First Time

Wirelessly pairing your cell phone with the system allows you to make and receive hands-free calls.

**Note:** You must switch the ignition and radio on.

**Note:** To scroll through the menus, press the up or down arrows on your audio system.

1. Make sure the Bluetooth feature on your cell phone is switched on before starting the search. Refer to your device's manual if necessary.
2. Press the **PHONE** button. When the audio display indicates that no phones are paired, select the option to add.
3. When a message to begin pairing appears in the audio display, search for SYNC on your cell phone to start the pairing process.
4. Select SYNC on your cell phone.
5. Wait until the PIN appears on the phone display. Compare the PIN on the phone with the PIN shown in the audio display and accept the request on the phone and the vehicle display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

**Note:** In some cases the phone will request to enter a PIN. Enter the six-digit PIN provided by the system in the audio display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

Depending on your cell phone's capability and your market, the system may prompt you with questions such as setting the current cell phone as the primary cell phone (the cell phone the system automatically tries to connect with first when you switch the ignition on) or downloading your phonebook.



The information display may show your cell phone's battery charge level and signal strength.

## Pairing Subsequent Cell Phones

Wirelessly pairing your cell phone with the system allows you to make and receive hands-free calls.

**Note:** You must switch the ignition and radio on.

**Note:** To scroll through the menus, press the up or down arrows on your audio system.

1. Make sure the Bluetooth feature on your cell phone is switched on before starting the search. Refer to your device's manual if necessary.
2. Press the **PHONE** button.
3. Select the option for Bluetooth devices.
4. Press the **OK** button.
5. Select the option to add. This starts the pairing process.

6. When a message to begin pairing appears in the audio display, search for SYNC on your device to start the pairing process.
7. Select SYNC on your cell phone.
8. Wait until the PIN appears on the phone display. Compare the PIN on the phone with the PIN shown in the audio display and accept the request on the phone and the vehicle display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

**Note:** In some cases the phone will request to enter a PIN. Enter the six-digit PIN provided by the system in the audio display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

The system may prompt you with questions such as setting the current cell phone as the primary cell phone or downloading your phonebook.

## Cell Phone Voice Commands



Press the voice button and when prompted say either:

Command	Action
call (someone   [[a] name])	You do not need to say "phone" prior to these commands.
Call <name> at home	You do not need to say "phone" prior to these commands.
Call <name> at work	You do not need to say "phone" prior to these commands.
Call <name> in office	You do not need to say "phone" prior to these commands.
Call <name> on cell	You do not need to say "phone" prior to these commands.
Call <name> on other	You do not need to say "phone" prior to these commands.
dial [[a] number]	You do not need to say "phone" prior to these commands.
([go to] privacy [on]   transfer to phone   handsfree off)	These commands are only available during a call.



Command	Action
(hold call [on]   (put   place) call on hold)	These commands are only available during a call.
(hold call off   take call off hold)	These commands are only available during a call.
mute [call] [on]	These commands are only available during a call.
(mute [call] off   Unmute [call])	These commands are only available during a call.
join (call   calls)	These commands are only available during a call.

## Phonebook Commands

Press the voice button and when prompted say either:

When you ask the system to access a phonebook name or number the requested information appears in the audio display.

Command	Action
call (someone   [[a] name])	To call the contact.
dial [[a] number]	112 (one-one-two), 700 (seven hundred) etc.
Pound	
Number	0 (zero) to 9 (nine)
Asterisk	
clear	Deletes all entered digits
(delete   correct)	Deletes the last set of entered digits.
Plus	
Star	

**Note:** To exit dial mode, press and hold the phone button or any button on the audio unit.

## Menu Commands

Press the voice button and when prompted say either:

Command
(turn ringer on   silent mode off)
(turn ringer off   silent mode [on])

Words in parentheses or brackets are optional and do not have to be spoken for the system to understand the command.

## Making a Call

Press the voice button and when prompted say either:

Command	Action
call (someone   [[a] name])	
dial [[a] number]	Followed by a number. When the system confirms the number say: dial [[a] number]

To erase the last spoken digit say:

Command	Action
(delete   correct)	Or press the left arrow button on the audio unit.

To erase all spoken digits say:

Command	Action
clear	Or press and hold the left arrow button on the audio unit.

To end the call, press the end call button on the steering wheel or select the end call option in the audio display and press **OK**.

## Receiving a Call

When receiving a call, you can:

- Answer the call by pressing the accept call button on the steering wheel or by selecting the accept call option in the audio display. Press the **OK** button.
- Reject the call by pressing the reject call button on the steering wheel or by selecting the reject call option in the audio display. Press the **OK** button.

- Ignore the call by doing nothing.

## Cell Phone Options During an Active Call

During an active call, you have extra menu features which become available, for example putting a call on hold.

To access this menu, choose one of the options available at the bottom of the audio display or select the option for more.

Message	Description and Action
Mic. off	Turn your vehicle's microphone off. To turn the microphone on, select the option again.
Privacy	Switch a call from an active hands-free environment to your cell phone for a more private conversation. When selected, the audio display will indicate the call is private.
Hold	Put an active call on hold. When selected, the audio display will indicate the call is on hold.
Dial a number	Enter numbers using the audio system numeric keypad, for example numbers for passwords.
Join calls	Join two separate calls. The system supports a maximum of three callers on a multi-party or conference call. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the option for more.</li> <li>2. Access the desired contact through the system or use voice commands to place the second call. Once actively in the second call, select the option for more.</li> <li>3. Scroll to the option to join calls and press the <b>OK</b> button.</li> </ol>
Phonebook	Access your phonebook contacts. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the option for more.</li> <li>2. Scroll to the option for phonebook and press the <b>OK</b> button.</li> <li>3. Scroll through your phonebook contacts.</li> </ol>

Message	Description and Action
	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. Press the <b>OK</b> button again when the desired selection appears in the audio display.</li> <li>5. Press the <b>OK</b> button or dial button to call the selection.</li> </ol>
Call history	<p>Access your call history log.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the option for more.</li> <li>2. Scroll to the option until call history appears. Press the <b>OK</b> button.</li> <li>3. Scroll through your call history options (incoming, outgoing or missed).</li> <li>4. Press the <b>OK</b> button again when the desired selection appears in the audio display.</li> <li>5. Press the <b>OK</b> button or dial button to call the selection.</li> </ol>

## Accessing Features Through the Cell Phone Menu

You can access your call history, phonebook, sent text messages as well as access cell phone and system settings. You can also access advanced features such as emergency assistance.

The system attempts to automatically re-download your phonebook and call history each time your cell phone connects to the system. You must turn on the auto download feature if your cell phone supports it.

**Note:** *This is a cell phone dependent feature.*

1. Press the **PHONE** button to enter the cell phone menu.
2. Select one of the options available.

Message	Description and Action
Dial a number	Dial a number using the audio system numeric keypad.
Redial	Redial the last number called (if available). Press the <b>OK</b> button to select.
Phonebook	<p>Access your downloaded phonebook.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button to confirm and enter. You can use the options at the bottom of the screen to quickly access an alphabetical category. You can also use the letters on the keypad to jump in the list.</li> <li>2. Scroll through your phonebook contacts.</li> </ol>

Message	Description and Action
	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the <b>OK</b> button again when the desired selection appears in the audio display.</li> <li>4. Press the <b>OK</b> button or dial button to call the selection.</li> </ol>
Call history	<p>Access any previously dialed, received or missed calls.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button to select.</li> <li>2. Scroll to select either incoming calls, outgoing calls or missed calls. Press the <b>OK</b> button to make your selection.</li> <li>3. Press the <b>OK</b> button or dial button to call the selection.</li> </ol>
Speed Dial	<p>Select one of 10 speed dial entries. To set a speed dial entry, go to the phonebook and press and hold one of the numbers on the audio system numeric keypad.</p>
Text messaging	<p>Send, download and delete text messages.</p>
BT Devices	<p>Access the option for Bluetooth device menu listings (add, connect, set as primary, on or off, delete).</p>
Phone settings	<p>View various settings and features on your cell phone.</p>
Emergency Assistance	<p>Turn the SYNC emergency assistance feature on or off.</p>

## Text Messaging

The system allows you to receive, send, download and delete text messages. The system can also read incoming text messages to you so that you do not have to take your eyes off the road.

**Note:** *This is a cell phone dependent feature.*

### Receiving a Text Message

When a new message arrives, an audible tone sounds and the audio display indicates you have a new message.

You have these options:

- Select the listen option to have the system read the message to you.
- Select the view option to open the text message. Select the ignore option or do nothing and the message goes into your text message inbox. Once selected, you have the ability to have the message read out to you, to view other messages or to select the more option.
- Press the voice button and say "Read text message".
- Select the more option and use the arrow buttons to scroll through further options.

**Note:** *Your cell phone must support downloading text messages using Bluetooth to receive incoming text messages.*

Choose from the following:

Message	Action
Reply to sender	Press the <b>OK</b> button to access and then scroll through the list of pre-defined messages to send.
Call sender	Press the <b>OK</b> button to call the sender of the message.
Forward msg.	Press the <b>OK</b> button to forward the message to anyone in your phonebook or call history. You can also choose to enter a number.

## Sending, Downloading and Deleting Your Text Messages

1. Press the **PHONE** button.

2. Select the text messaging option, then press the **OK** button.

Choose from the following:

Message	Description and Action
New	When you select the option to send a text message, a list of pre-defined messages appear in the audio display. Allows you to send a new text message based on a pre-defined set of 15 messages.
View	Allows you to read the full message and in addition provides the option to have the message read out to you by the system. To go to the next message select the more option. This allows you to reply to the sender, call the sender or forward the message.
Delete	Allows you to delete current text messages from the system (not your cell phone). The audio display indicates when all your text messages have been deleted.
More...	Allows you to delete all messages or to manually trigger a download of all unread messages from your cell phone.

## Sending a Text Message

1. Select the send option when the desired selection is highlighted in the audio display.
2. Select the confirmation option when the contact appears and press the **OK** button again to confirm when the system asks if you would like to send the message. Each text message is sent with a pre-defined signature.

**Note:** You can send text messages either by choosing a contact from the phonebook and selecting the text option from the audio display or by replying to a received message in the inbox.

**Note:** Only one recipient is allowed per text message.

## Accessing Your Cell Phone Settings

These are cell phone dependent features. Your cell phone settings allow you to access and adjust features such as your ringtone, text message notification, modify your phonebook and set up automatic

download.

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Scroll until the phone settings option appears, then press the **OK** button.
3. Scroll to select from the following options:

Message	Description and Action
Set as master	If this option is checked, the system will use this cell phone as the master when there is more than one cell phone paired to the system. This option can be changed for all paired cell phones (not only for the active one) using the Bluetooth devices menu.
Phone status	See the cell phone name, provider name, cell phone number, signal level and battery level. When done, press the left arrow button to return to the cell phone status menu.
Set ringtone	Select which ringtone sounds during an incoming call (one of the system's or your cell phone's). If your cell phone supports in-band ringing, your cell phone's ringtone sounds when you choose the cell phone ringtone option. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button to select and scroll to hear each ringtone.</li> <li>2. Press the <b>OK</b> button to select.</li> </ol>
Text msg notify	Have the option of hearing an audible tone to notify you when a text message arrives. Press the <b>OK</b> button to turn the audible tone on or off.
Phonebook pref.	Modify the contents of your phonebook, e.g. add, delete, download. Press the <b>OK</b> button to select and scroll between the options in the table below.

To modify the phone book preferences, choose from the following:

Message	Description and Action
Add contacts	Push the desired contacts on your cell phone. Refer to your device's manual on how to push contacts. Press the <b>OK</b> button to add more contacts from your phonebook.
Delete	When a message asking you to delete appears, select the option to confirm. Press the <b>OK</b> button to delete the current phonebook and call history. The system takes you back to the menu for phone settings.
Download now	Press the <b>OK</b> button to select and download your phonebook to the system.
Auto-download	When automatic download is switched on, any changes, additions or deletions saved in the system since your last download are deleted. When automatic download is switched off, your phonebook will not be downloaded when your cell phone connects to the system. Your phonebook, call history and text messages can only be accessed when your paired cell phone is connected to the system. Check or uncheck this option to automatically download your phonebook each time your cell phone connects to the system. Downloading times are cell phone dependent and quantity dependent.

## Bluetooth Devices

This menu provides access to your Bluetooth devices. Use the arrow buttons to scroll through the menu options. It allows you to add, connect and delete devices and set a cell phone as primary.

## Bluetooth Devices Menu Options

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Scroll until the Bluetooth device option appears, then press the **OK** button.
3. Scroll to select from the following options:

Message	Description and Action
Add	<p>Pair additional cell phones to the system.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the option to add to start the pairing process.</li> <li>2. When a message to begin pairing appears in the audio display, search for <b>SYNC</b> on your cell phone. Refer to your device's manual if necessary.</li> <li>3. Select SYNC on your cell phone.</li> </ol>



Message	Description and Action
	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Wait until the PIN appears on the phone display. Compare the PIN on the phone with the PIN shown in the audio display and accept the request on the phones and the vehicles display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.*</li> <li>When the option to set the cell phone as the primary cell phone appears, select either yes or no.</li> <li>Depending on the functionality of your cell phone, the system may ask you extra questions (for example, if you would like to download your phonebook). Select either yes or no to confirm your response.</li> </ol>
Delete	After deleting a cell phone from the list, the cell phone can only be connected again by repeating the full pairing process. Select the delete option and confirm when the system asks to delete the selected device.
Master	The system attempts to connect with the primary cell phone every time you switch the ignition on. When a cell phone is selected as primary, it appears first in the list and is marked with an asterisk. Set a previously paired cell phone as your primary cell phone. Select the master option to confirm the primary cell phone.
Conn.	Connect a previously paired cell phone. You can only have one cell phone connected at a time to use the cell phone functionality. When another cell phone is connected, the previous cell phone will be disconnected from the telephone services. The system allows you to use different Bluetooth devices for the cell phone functionality and the Bluetooth audio music playback feature at the same time.
Discon.	Disconnects the selected cell phone. Select this option and confirm when asked to. After disconnecting a cell phone, it can be connected again without repeating the full pairing process.

\*In some cases the phone will request to enter a PIN. Enter the six-digit PIN provided by the system in the audio display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

## System Settings

- Press the **MENU** button.
- Select the SYNC settings option, then press the **OK** button.
- Scroll to select from the following options:

Message	Description and Action
Bluetooth on	Check or uncheck this option to turn the Bluetooth interface of the system on or off. Select this option then press the <b>OK</b> button to change the option's status.
Set defaults	This selection does not erase your indexed information (phonebook, call history, text messages and paired devices). Select this option and confirm when prompted in the audio display. Return to the factory default settings.
Master reset	Completely erase all information stored on the system (phonebook, call history, text messages and paired devices) and return to the factory default settings. Select this option and confirm when prompted in the audio display. The display indicates when complete and the system takes you back to the previous menu.
Install on SYNC	Install applications or software updates you have downloaded. Select this option and confirm when prompted in the audio display. There must be a valid SYNC application or update available on the USB thumb drive in order to finish an installation successfully.
System info	Display the system's version numbers as well as its serial number. Press the <b>OK</b> button to select.
Voice settings	The voice settings submenu contains various options. See <b>Using Voice Recognition</b> (page 306).
Browse USB	Browse the actual menu structure of the connected USB device. Press the <b>OK</b> button and use the up or down arrows to scroll through the folders and files. Use the left or right arrows to enter and leave a folder. Media content can be directly selected for playback from this menu.
Emergency Assistance	You can turn the emergency assistance feature on or off. See <b>SYNC™ Applications and Services</b> (page 320).

Press the **MENU** button to enter the system menu.

## SYNC™ APPLICATIONS AND SERVICES

A list of available applications appears. Each application may have its own specific settings.

Message	Description and Action
SYNC-Apps	Scroll to this option, and then press <b>OK</b> .

## SYNC Emergency Assistance

### WARNINGS



For this feature to work, your cell phone must have Bluetooth and be compatible with the system.



Always place your cell phone in a secure location inside your vehicle. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the cell phone which could prevent this feature from working correctly.



Unless the feature setting is switched on prior to a crash, the system will not attempt to place an emergency call which could delay the response time, potentially increasing the risk of serious injury or death. Do not wait for the system to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear Emergency Assistance within five seconds of the crash, the system or cell phone may be damaged or non-functional.

If a crash deploys an airbag or triggers the fuel pump shut off, the system may contact emergency services by dialing 112 (the wireless emergency number that works in most European countries) through a paired and connected cell phone. For more information about the system and Emergency Assistance, visit the regional Ford website.

**Note:** Before selecting this feature, you must read the Emergency Assistance privacy notice later in this section for important information.

**Note:** When you switch this feature on or off, that setting applies for all paired cell phones. If you have turned this feature off and a previously paired phone connects when you switch on the ignition, either a voice message plays, a display message or icon is shown, or both.

**Note:** Every cell phone operates differently. While this feature works with most cell phones, some cell phones may experience difficulties using this feature.

**Note:** Make sure you are familiar with the information about airbag deployment. See **Supplementary Restraints System** (page 27).

## Switching Emergency Assistance On and Off

Press the **MENU** button then select:

Message	Action
SYNC-Apps	Press <b>OK</b> .
Emergency Assistance	Press <b>OK</b> . Select the option you require and press <b>OK</b> .

## Display Options

If you switch on this feature, a confirmation message appears in the display.

If you switch off this feature, a dialog will appear in the display, which allows you to set a voice reminder.

Off with voice reminder provides a display and voice reminder when your cell phone connects and your vehicle starts.

Off without voice reminder provides a display reminder only without a voice reminder when your cell phone connects.

To make sure that Emergency Assistance works correctly:

- The system must have power and be working correctly at the time of the crash and during feature activation and use.
- You must switch on the feature before a crash.
- You must have a cell phone connected to the system.
- In certain countries, it may be necessary to have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in order to place and maintain an emergency call.
- A connected cell phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the crash.
- A connected cell phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- Your vehicle must have battery power.

**Note:** *This feature only works in a European country or region where SYNC Emergency Assistance can call the local emergency services. Visit the regional Ford website for details.*

## In the Event of a Crash

**Note:** *Not every crash deploys an airbag or triggers the fuel pump shut off (which may turn on Emergency Assistance). However, if Emergency Assistance is triggered the system tries to contact the emergency services. If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses connection to the system, it searches for and tries to connect to any available previously paired cell phone. The system attempts to dial 112.*

Before making a call:

- If you do not cancel the call and SYNC makes a successful call, an introductory message plays for the emergency operator. After this message, there is hands-free communication between your vehicle's occupants and the operator.
- The system provides a short window of time (approximately 10 seconds) to cancel the call. If you do not cancel the call, the system attempts to dial 112.
- The system plays a message letting you know when it attempts to make an emergency call. You can cancel the call by selecting the relevant function button or by pressing the end call button on the steering wheel.

During a call:

- Emergency Assistance uses your vehicle GPS or cellular network information when available to determine the most appropriate language to use. It alerts the emergency operator of the crash and delivers the introductory message. This may include your vehicle GPS coordinates.
- The language the system uses to interact with the occupants of your vehicle may differ from the language used to deliver information to the emergency operator.

- After the delivery of the introductory message the voice line opens so that you can speak hands-free with the emergency operator.
- When the line is connected, you must be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location information immediately.

**Note:** While the system provides information to the emergency operator, the system plays a message letting you know it is sending important information. It then lets you know when the line is open to start hands-free communication.

**Note:** During an Emergency Assistance call, an emergency priority screen appears which contains vehicle GPS coordinates when available.

**Note:** It is possible that GPS location information is not available at the time of the crash; in this case, Emergency Assistance will still attempt to place an emergency call.

**Note:** It is possible that the emergency services will not receive the GPS coordinates; in this case, hands-free communication with an emergency operator is available.

**Note:** The emergency operator may also receive information from the cellular network such as cell phone number, cell phone location and cell phone carrier name independent from SYNC Emergency Assistance.

Emergency Assistance may not work if:

- Your cell phone or Emergency Assistance hardware sustains damage in the crash.
- The vehicle battery or the system has no power.
- A crash ejects your cell phone from your vehicle.

- You do not have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in your cell phone.
- You are in a European country or region where the SYNC Emergency Assistance cannot place the call. Visit the regional Ford website for details.

## Important Information about the Emergency Assistance Feature

Emergency Assistance does not currently call emergency services in the following markets: Albania, Belarus, Bosnia and Herzegovina, Macedonia, Netherlands, Ukraine, Moldova and Russia.

Visit the regional Ford website for the latest details.

## Emergency Assistance Privacy Notice

When you switch on Emergency Assistance, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut off. This feature has the capability to disclose your location information to the emergency operator or other details about your vehicle or crash to provide the most appropriate emergency services.

If you do not want to disclose this information, do not switch on the feature.

## SYNC AppLink

The system enables voice and manual control of SYNC AppLink enabled smartphone apps. Once an app is running through AppLink, you can control main features of the app through voice commands and manual controls.

**Note:** You must pair and connect your smartphone to SYNC to access AppLink.

**Note:** iPhone users need to connect the phone to the USB port.

**Note:** Android users need to connect the phone to SYNC using Bluetooth.

**Note:** For information on available apps, supported smartphone devices and troubleshooting tips please visit the Ford website.

**Note:** Make sure you have an active account for the app that you have downloaded. Some apps will work automatically with no setup. Other apps will want you to configure your personal settings and personalize your experience by creating stations or favorites. We recommend you do this at home or outside of your vehicle.

## To Access Using the SYNC Menu

Scroll through the list of available applications and press **OK** to select an app. Once an app is running through SYNC, press the right arrow button to access the app menu. You can access various app features from here, for example thumbs up and thumbs down. Press the left arrow button to exit the app menu.

Press the **MENU** button then select:

Message	Description and Action
SYNC-Apps	
Mobile Apps	Scroll to this option, and then press <b>OK</b> .
Find new Apps	Select this option if the app required is not listed.

**Note:** If a SYNC AppLink compatible app cannot be found, make sure the required app is running on the mobile device.

## To Access Using Voice Commands

Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Command	Description and Action
mobile (apps   applications)	Say the name of the application after the tone. The application will start. While an app is running through SYNC, you can press the voice button and speak commands specific to the app.

The following voice commands are always available:

Command	Description and Action
[main menu] help	Use this command to hear a list of available voice commands.
mobile (apps   applications)	The system will prompt you to say the name of the app to start it.
list [mobile] (apps   applications)	The system will list all of the currently available mobile apps.

Command	Description and Action
find [new] [mobile] (apps   applications)	The system will search your connected mobile device for SYNC compatible apps.
<the name of the app>	Say the name of an app to start it on SYNC.
<the name of the app> Help	The system will list the available voice commands for the requested app.
(quit   exit   close)	Use this command followed by the name of the app.

Press the **MENU** button then select:

## Enabling and Disabling Push Notifications

Some apps can send push notifications. A push notification is an alert from an app running in the background and is delivered by voice, pop up or both. This may be particularly useful for news or location based apps.

Message	Description and Action
SYNC-Apps	
Mobile Apps	
Settings	
All Apps	If push notifications are supported, this setting will be listed. Select to enable or disable the feature as required.

## Enabling SYNC Mobile Apps

To use the system you must consent to send and receive app authorization information and updates, using the data plan associated with the connected device.

Data is sent to Ford in the United States through the connected device. The information is encrypted and includes your VIN, SYNC module number, anonymous usage statistics and debugging information. Updates may take place automatically.

**Note:** You must enable mobile apps for each connected device the first time you select a mobile app using the system.

**Note:** Standard data rates will apply. Ford is not responsible for any additional charges you may receive from your service provider, when your vehicle sends or receives data through the connected device. This includes any additional charges incurred due to driving in areas when roaming out of a home network.

## App Status

You can view the current status of an app

in the settings menu. There are three possible statuses:

Message	Description and Action
Update needed	The system has detected a new app requiring authorization or a general permissions update is required.
Up-to-date	No update is required.
Updating...	The system is trying to receive an update.

Options in the settings menu:

Message	Description and Action
Request Update	If an update is required and you want to manually request the update, for example when you are in a Wi-Fi hotspot.
Disable Updates	Select this option to disable automatic updates.

## App Permissions

Permissions are divided by groups. You can grant these group permissions individually. You can change a permission group status any time when not driving, by using the settings menu.

When you launch an app using SYNC, the system may ask you to grant certain permissions, for example:

- To allow your vehicle to provide vehicle information to the app including, but not limited to: Fuel level, fuel consumption, engine speed, battery voltage, odometer, VIN, external temperature, gear position, tire pressure, ambient temperature, date and time.
- To allow your vehicle to provide driving characteristic information, including, but not limited to: MyKey, seat belt status, engine speeds, braking events, brake pedal switch, acceleration, accelerator pedal position, clutch pedal switch, trip length, trip time, trip cost, percent engine on time, and percent of time at speed.



- To allow your vehicle to provide location information, including: GPS and speed.
- To allow the app to send push notifications using the vehicle display and voice capabilities while running in a background state.

**Note:** You will only need to grant permissions the first time you use an app with SYNC.

**Note:** We are not responsible or liable for any damages or loss of privacy relating to usage of an app, or dissemination of any vehicle data that you approve us to provide to an app.

## USING SYNC™ WITH YOUR MEDIA PLAYER

You can access and play music from your media player through your vehicle's speaker system using the system's media menu or voice commands. You can also sort and play your music by specific categories, for example artist or albums.

SYNC is capable of hosting nearly any media player including: iPod, Zune, Plays from device players, and most USB drives. SYNC also supports audio formats, for example MP3, WMA, WAV and AAC.

Confirm that the USB device has been formatted correctly and has the following specifications:

- USB 2.0.
- File format must be FAT16/32.

**Note:** NTFS file format is not supported.

The format of the audio files on the USB device must be:

- MP3.
- Non DRM protected WMA.
- WAV.
- AAC.

## Connecting Your Media Player to the USB Port

**Note:** If your media player has a power switch, make sure you switch on the device.

### To Connect Using Voice Commands

1. Plug the device into your vehicle's USB port.
2. Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice Command	Description and Action
(USB [stick]   iPod   MP3 [player])	You can now play music by saying any of the appropriate voice commands. Refer to the media voice commands.

Words in brackets [ ] are optional and do not have to be spoken for the system to understand the command. For example, for where (USB [stick] | iPod | MP3 [player]) appears, you can say USB or USB stick.

### To Connect Using the System Menu

1. Plug the device into your vehicle's USB port.

2. Press the **Media** button (next to the audio display) until an initializing message appears in the display.

Message	Description and Action
Browse USB	Depending on how many media files are on your connected device, an indexing message may appear in the display. When indexing is complete, the screen returns to the playback menu.

Choose from the following:

Message
Play all
Playlists
Songs
Artists
Albums
Genres
Browse USB
Reset USB
Exit

## What's Playing?

At any time during playback, you can press the voice button and ask the system what is playing. The system reads the metadata tags of the current track, if populated.

## Media Voice Commands



Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice Command	Description and Action
(USB [stick]   iPod   MP3 [player])	You can now play music by saying any of the appropriate voice commands.

You can say any of the voice commands that appear within open and close brackets that are separated by |. For example, where; (what's | what is) appears you say; what's or what is.

You must say any of the voice commands that appear outside of open and close brackets. For example, where; who plays this (what's | what is) playing, you must say; who plays this (what's or what is) playing.

## Then any of the following:

Voice Command	
play	
pause	
play all	
play [artist]	*
play [album]	*
play [genre]	*
[play] next track	
play [playlist]	*
[play] previous track	
play [song   track   title   file]	*
repeat off	
repeat one [on]	
(browse   search   show) album	
(browse   search   show) artist	
(browse   search   show) genre	
(browse   search   show) playlist	
(browse   search   show) all (album   albums)	
(browse   search   show) all (artist   artists)	
(browse   search   show) all (genre   genres)	
(browse   search   show) all (playlist   playlists)	
(browse   search   show) all (song   songs   title   titles   file   files   track   tracks)	
shuffle [all] [on]	
shuffle off	

Voice Command
[play] (similar music   more like this)
((who's   who is) this   who plays this   (what's   what is) playing [now]   (what   which) (song   track   artist) is this   (who's   who is) playing   (what's   what is) this)

\* This voice command is not available until indexing is complete.

## Voice Command Guide

Voice Command	Description and Action
(browse   search   show) genre	The system searches all the data from your indexed music and if available, begins to play the chosen type of music.
[play] (similar music   more like this)	The system compiles a playlist and then plays similar music to what is currently playing from the USB port using indexed metadata information.
(browse   search   show) artist	The system searches for a specific artist, track or album from the music indexed through the USB port.
(browse   search   show) album	The system searches for a specific artist, track or album from the music indexed through the USB port.

The system is also capable of playing music from your cell phone through Bluetooth.

To switch the Bluetooth audio on, use the **MEDIA** button (next to the audio display) or **Source** button, or press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice Command	Description and Action
Bluetooth audio	

Then any of the following:

Voice Command	Description and Action
pause	
play	
[play] next track	
[play] previous track	

## Media Menu Features

The media menu allows you to select how to play your music, for example by artist,

genre, shuffle or repeat, and to find similar music or reset the index of your USB devices.

Press **AUX** to select USB playback.

Message	Description and Action
Options	This will enter the media menu.

Then any of the following:

Message	Description and Action
Shuffle	Choose to shuffle or repeat your music. Once you make your choice, it remains on until you switch it off.
Repeat track	Choose to shuffle or repeat your music. Once you make your choice, it remains on until you switch it off.
Similar music	You can play similar types of music to the current playlist from the USB port. The system uses the metadata information of each track to compile a playlist. The system then creates a new list of similar tracks and then begins playing. Each track must have the metadata tags populated for this feature. With certain playing devices, if your metadata tags are not populated, the tracks will not be available in voice recognition, the play menu or this option. However, if you place these tracks onto your playing device in mass storage device mode they are available in voice recognition, the play menu or this option. The system places unknowns into any unpopulated metadata tag.
Reset SYNC USB	Resets the USB index. After the new indexing is complete you can choose what to play from the USB song library.

## Accessing Your USB Song Library

1. Plug the device into your vehicle's USB port.

2. Press **MEDIA** button (next to the audio display) to select USB playback.

Message	Description and Action
Browse USB	This menu allows you to select and play your media files by artist, album, genre, playlist and track or even to browse what is on your USB device.

If there are no media files to access, the display indicates there is no media. If there

are media files, you have the following options to scroll through and select:

Message	Description and Action
Play all	Play all indexed media files from your playing device one at a time in numerical order.* 1. Press <b>OK</b> to select. The first track title appears in the display.
Playlists	Access your playlists from formats, ASX, M3U, WPL or MTP.* 1. Press <b>OK</b> to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired playlist, and then press <b>OK</b> .
Songs	Search for and play a specific indexed track.* 1. Press <b>OK</b> to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired track, and then press <b>OK</b> .
Artists	Sort all indexed media files by artist. Once selected, the system lists and then plays all artists and tracks alphabetically.* 1. Press <b>OK</b> to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired artist, and then press <b>OK</b> .
Albums	Sort all indexed media files by albums.* 1. Press <b>OK</b> to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired albums, and then press <b>OK</b> .
Genres	Sort indexed music by genre type.* 1. Press <b>OK</b> to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired genre, and then press <b>OK</b> .

Message	Description and Action
Browse USB	<p>Browse all supported media files on your media player connected to the USB port. You can only view media files that are compatible with SYNC; other saved files are not visible.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press <b>OK</b> to select.</li> <li>2. Scroll to browse indexed media files on your flash drive, and then press <b>OK</b>.</li> </ol>
Reset USB	Resets the USB index. After the new indexing is complete, you can choose what to play from the USB song library.

\* You can use the buttons at the bottom of the audio display to jump to a certain alphabetical category quickly. You can also use the letters on the numeric keypad to jump in the list.

## Bluetooth Devices and System Settings

You can access these menus using the audio display. See **Using SYNC™ With Your Phone** (page 309).

## SYNC™ TROUBLESHOOTING

Your SYNC system is easy to use. However, should questions arise, please refer to the tables below.

To check your cell phone's compatibility, visit the regional Ford website.

Cell phone issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
A lot of background noise during a phone call.	The audio control settings on your cell phone may be affecting SYNC performance.	Refer to your device's manual about audio adjustments.
During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
		Make sure that the microphone for SYNC is not set to off.
SYNC is not able to download my phone-book.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.

Cell phone issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
The system says "Phone-book down-loaded" but my SYNC phone-book is empty or is missing contacts.	Limitations on your cell phone's capability.	Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by selecting the option to add.
		You must switch on your cell phone and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC.
		Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by selecting the option to add.
		If the missing contacts are stored on your SIM card, try moving them to your cell phone's memory.
I am having trouble connecting my cell phone to SYNC.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Remove any pictures or special ring tones associated with the missing contact.
		You must switch on your cell phone and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
		Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
		Try deleting your device from SYNC and deleting SYNC from your device, then trying again.
		Always check the security and auto accept prompt settings relative to the SYNC Bluetooth connection on your cell phone.
Text messaging is not working on SYNC.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Update your cell phone's firmware.
		Switch off the auto download setting.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	iPhone	Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.



Cell phone issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure the connection status shows Not Connected.</li> <li>• Press the blue circle to enter the next menu.</li> <li>• Turn on Show Notifications.</li> <li>• Turn on Sync Contacts.</li> </ul> <p>Your iPhone is now set up to forward incoming text messages to SYNC. Repeat these steps for every other Sync vehicle you are connected to. Your iPhone will only forward incoming text messages to SYNC if it is unlocked. Replying to text messages using SYNC is not supported by iPhone. Text messages from WhatsApp and Facebook Messenger are not supported.</p>
Audible text messages do not work on my cell phone.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	<p>Your cell phone must support downloading text messages through Bluetooth to receive incoming text messages.</p> <p>Access the text messaging menu of SYNC to see if your cell phone supports the feature. Press the <b>PHONE</b> button and then scroll and select the option for text messaging, then press <b>OK</b>.</p>
	This is a cell phone limitation.	<p>Because each cell phone is different, refer to your device's manual for the specific cell phone you are pairing. In fact, there can be differences between cell phones due to brand, model, service provider and software version.</p>

USB and media issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
I am having trouble connecting my device.	Possible device malfunction.	Try switching off the device, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
		Make sure you are using the manufacturer's cable.
		Make sure correctly insert the USB cable to the device and your vehicle's USB port.
		Make sure that the device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings.
SYNC does not recognize my device when I start my vehicle.	This is a device limitation.	Make sure you are not leaving the device in your vehicle during very hot or cold temperatures.
Bluetooth audio does not stream.	This is a device-dependent feature.	Make sure you connect the device to SYNC and press play on your device.
	The device is not connected.	
SYNC does not recognize music that is on my device.	Your music files may not contain the correct artist, song title, album or genre information.	Make sure that all song details are populated.
	The file may be corrupted.	Try replacing the corrupt file with a new version.
	The song may have copyright protection that does not allow it to play.	Some devices require you to change the USB settings from mass storage to media transfer protocol class.
When I connect my iPhone or iPod Touch through the USB and Bluetooth Audio at the same time, I sometimes do not hear any sound.	This is a device limitation.	From the iPhone or iPod Touch music now playing screen, select the audio device airplay icon at the very bottom of your iPhone or iPod Touch screen.
		To listen to the iPhone or iPod Touch through Bluetooth Audio, select SYNC.
		To listen to the iPhone or iPod Touch through USB, select Dock Connector.

Voice command issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
SYNC does not understand what I am saying.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the cell phone voice commands and the media voice commands at the beginning of their respective sections.
		Refer to the audio display during an active voice session to find a list of voice commands there.
	You may be speaking too soon or at the wrong time.	The microphone for the system is either in your rear view mirror or in the headliner just above the windshield.
SYNC does not understand the name of a song or artist.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the media voice commands at the beginning of the media section.
	You may not be saying the name exactly as the system saved it.	Say the song or artist exactly as the system saved it. If you say, "Play Artist Prince", the system does not play music by Prince and the Revolution or Prince and the New Power Generation.
		Make sure you are saying the complete title such as "California remix featuring Jennifer Nettles".
		If the song titles are in capital letters, you have to spell them. LOLA requires you to say "L-O-L-A".
SYNC does not understand or is calling the wrong contact when I want to make a call.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	The system may not be reading the name the same way you are saying it.
		Do not use special characters in the title, as the system does not recognize them.
		Review the cell phone voice commands at the beginning of the cell phone section.
		You can also use the cell phone and media suggestion lists to get a list of possible suggestions when the system cannot fully understand you. See <b>Using Voice Recognition</b> (page 306).

Voice command issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
	You may not be saying the name exactly as the system saved it.	Make sure you are saying the name exactly as the system saved it. For example, if the contact name is Joe Wilson, say "Call Joe Wilson".
		The system works better if you list full names such as "Joe Wilson" rather than "Joe".
	Contacts in your phonebook may be very short and similar or they may contain special characters.	Do not use special characters such as 123 or ICE as the system does not recognize them.
	Your phonebook contacts may be in capital letters.	If the contacts are in capital letters, you have to spell them. JAKE requires you to say "Call J-A-K-E".
The SYNC voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign names stored on my cell phone.	You may be saying the foreign names using the currently selected language for SYNC.	SYNC applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the contact names stored on your cell phone.
		<b>Helpful Hint:</b> You can select your contact manually. Press <b>PHONE</b> . Select the option for phonebook and then contact name. Press the soft-key option to hear it. SYNC will read the contact name to you, giving you some idea of the pronunciation it is expecting.
The SYNC voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign tracks, artists, albums, genres and playlist names from my media player or USB flash drive.	You may be saying the foreign names using the currently selected language for SYNC.	SYNC applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names stored on your media player or USB flash drive. It is able to make some exceptions for very popular artist names (for example, U2) such that you can always use the English pronunciation for these artists.

Voice command issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
The system generates voice prompts and the pronunciation of some words may not be accurate for my language.	SYNC uses text-to-speech voice prompt technology.	SYNC uses a synthetically generated voice rather than pre-recorded human voice.
		SYNC offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, "call John Smith") or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, "play artist Madonna").
My previous Bluetooth voice control system allowed me to control the radio, CD, and climate control systems. Why can I not control these systems with SYNC?	The focus of SYNC is to control your mobile devices and the content stored on them.	SYNC offers significant capability beyond the previous system such as dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, "call John Smith") or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, "play artist Madonna").

General		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
The language selected for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display does not match the SYNC language (phone, USB, Bluetooth audio, voice control and voice prompts).	SYNC does not support the currently selected language for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display.	SYNC only supports four languages in a single module for text display, voice control and voice prompts. The country where you bought your vehicle dictates the four languages based on the most popular languages spoken. If the selected language is not available, SYNC remains in the current active language.
		SYNC offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, "call John Smith") or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, play artist Madonna).

AppLink issues		
Issue	Possible cause(s)	Possible solution(s)
AppLink Mobile Applications: When I select "Find New Apps," SYNC does not find any applications.	An AppLink capable phone is not connected to SYNC.	Ensure you have a compatible smartphone; an Android with OS 2.3 or higher or an iPhone 3GS or newer with iOS 5.0 or higher. Additionally, ensure your phone is paired and connected to SYNC in order to find AppLink-capable apps on your device. iPhone users must also connect to SYNC's USB port with an Apple USB cable.
My phone is connected, but I still cannot find any apps.	AppLink-enabled apps are not installed and running on your mobile device.	Ensure you have downloaded and installed the latest version of the app from your phone's app store. Ensure the app is running on your phone. Some apps require you to register or login on the app on the phone before using them with AppLink. Also, some may have a "Ford SYNC" setting, so check the app's settings menu on the phone.
My phone is connected, my app(s) are running, but I still cannot find any apps.	Sometime apps do not properly close and re-open their connection to SYNC, over ignition cycles, for example.	Closing and restarting apps may help SYNC find the application if you cannot discover it inside the vehicle. On an Android device, if apps have an "Exit" or 'Quit' option, select that then restart the app. If the app does not have that option, you can also manually "Force Close" the app by going to the phone's settings menu, selecting 'Apps,' then finding the particular app and choosing 'Force stop.' Don't forget to restart the app afterwards, then select "Find New Apps" on SYNC.
		On an iPhone with iOS7+, to force close an app, double tab the home button then swipe up on the app to close it. Tab the home button again, then select the app again to restart it. After a few seconds, the app should then appear in SYNC's Mobile App's Menu.

AppLink issues		
Issue	Possible cause(s)	Possible solution(s)
My Android phone is connected, my app(s) are running, I restarted them, but I still cannot find any apps.	There is a bluetooth bug on some older versions of the Android OS that may cause apps that were found on your previous vehicle drive to not be found again if you have not turned off bluetooth.	Reset the Bluetooth on your phone by turning it off and then turning Bluetooth back on. If you are in your vehicle, SYNC should be able to automatically re-connect to your phone if you press the "Phone" button.
My iPhone phone is connected, my app is running, I restarted the app but I still cannot find it on SYNC.	The USB connection to SYNC may need to be reset.	Unplug the USB cable from the phone, wait a moment, and plug the USB cable back in to the phone. After a few seconds, the app should appear in SYNC's Mobile Apps Menu. If not, "Force Close" the application and restart it.
I have an Android phone. I found and started my media app on SYNC, but there is no sound or the sound is very low.	The bluetooth volume on the phone may be low.	Try increasing the Bluetooth volume of the device by using the device's volume control buttons which are most often found on the side of the device.
I can only see some of the AppLink apps running on my phone listed in SYNC's Mobile Apps Menu.	Some Android devices have a limited number of bluetooth ports apps can use to connect. If you have more AppLink apps on your phone than the number of available Bluetooth ports, you will not see all of your apps listed in SYNC's mobile apps menu.	Force close or uninstall the apps you do not want SYNC to find. If the app has a "Ford SYNC" setting, disable that setting in the app's settings menu on the phone.

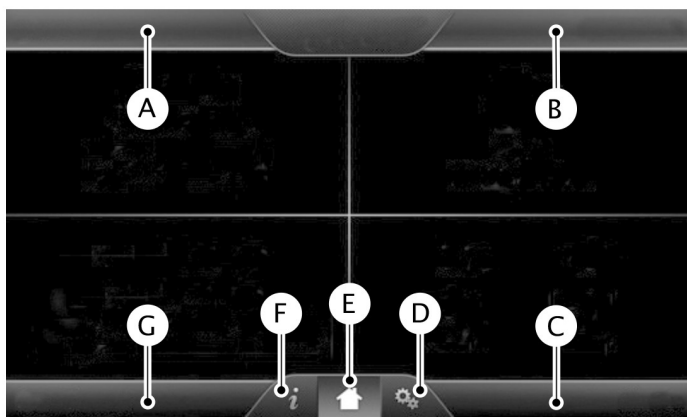


## GENERAL INFORMATION

### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



E161891

Item	Message
A	Phone
B	Navigation
C	Climate
D	Settings

Item	Message
E	Home
F	Information
G	Entertainment

This system uses a four-corner strategy to provide quick access to several vehicle features and settings. The touchscreen provides easy interaction with your cellular phone, multimedia, climate control and navigation system. The corners display any active modes within those menus, such as phone status or the climate temperature.

**Note:** Some features are not available while your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** Your system is equipped with a feature that allows you to access and control audio features for 10 minutes after you switch the ignition off (and no doors open).

## PHONE

**Press to select any of the following:**

Message
Phone
Quick Dial
Phonebook
History
Messaging
Settings

## NAVIGATION

**Press to select any of the following:**

Message
My Home
Favorites
Previous Destinations
Point of Interest
Emergency
Street Address

Message
Intersection
City Center
Latitude/Longitude
Edit Route
Cancel Route

## CLIMATE

Press the corresponding icons to control the following options:

- Driver Settings
- Recirculated Air
- Auto
- Dual
- Passenger Settings
- A/C
- Defrost

## SETTINGS



**Press to select any of the following:**

Message
Clock
Display
Sound
Vehicle
Settings
Help

## HOME



Press to access your home screen. Depending on your vehicle's option package and software, your screens may vary in appearance from the descriptions in this section. Your features may also be limited depending on your market. Check with an authorized dealer for availability.

## INFORMATION



**Press to select any of the following:**

Message
Traffic
Alerts
Calendar
Apps
Where Am I?

## Using the Audio Controls

**Depending on your vehicle, it may also have the following controls:**

Message	Action and Description
Power	Switch the media features on or off.
Vol:	Adjust the volume of playing media.
Seek	Use as you normally would in media modes.
Tune	Use as you normally would in media modes.
Eject	Eject a CD from the entertainment system.
Display	Press this button to switch the display screen off. Press again, or touch the screen to switch the display screen on.
Source	Touch the control repeatedly to switch between media modes.

## ENTERTAINMENT

**Press to select any of the following:**

Message
AM
FM
DAB *
CD
USB
BT Stereo
SD Card
A/V In

\* If equipped.

Message	Action and Description
Sound	Adjust the settings for:
	Bass
	Treble
	Midrange
	Set Balance and Fade
	DSP
	EQ Mode
	Speed Compensated Volume

## Using the Steering Wheel Controls

Depending on your vehicle and option package, you can use your steering wheel controls to interact with the touchscreen system.

- **VOL:** Control the volume of audio output.
- **Mute:** Mute the audio output.
- **Voice:** Press to start a voice session. Press again and hold to end a voice session.
- **SEEK and PHONE ACCEPT:**
  - While in radio mode, press to seek between memory presets or press and hold to seek between stations.
  - While in USB or CD mode, press to seek between stations or press and hold to fast seek.
  - While in phone mode, press to answer a call, or to switch between calls.

## • **SEEK and PHONE REJECT:**

- While in radio mode, press to seek between memory presets or press and hold to seek between stations.
- While in USB or CD mode, press to seek between stations or press and hold to fast seek.
- While in phone mode, press to end a call, or to reject an incoming call.
- **Source:** Touch the control repeatedly to switch between media modes.
- **Sound:** Touch the control to adjust the sound settings. See **Settings** (page 352).

See **Steering Wheel** (page 56).

## Cleaning the Touchscreen Display

Use a dry, clean, soft cloth. If dirt or fingerprints are still visible, apply a small amount of alcohol to the cloth. Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the display. Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the display.

## Support

For further support, contact an authorized dealer. For more information, visit the regional Ford website.

## Safety Information

### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

- Do not attempt to service or repair the system. Have an authorized dealer check your vehicle.
- Do not operate playing devices if the power cords or cables are broken, split or damaged. Place cords and cables out of the way, so they do not interfere with the operation of pedals, seats, compartments or safe driving abilities.

- Do not leave playing devices in your vehicle during extreme conditions as it could cause them damage. See your device's user guide for further information.
- For your safety, some SYNC functions are speed-dependent. Their use is limited to when your vehicle is traveling at speeds under 5 mph (8 km/h).

Make sure that you review your device's manual before using it with SYNC.

### Speed-restricted Features

Some features of this system may be too difficult to use while your vehicle is moving so they are restricted from use unless your vehicle is stationary.

See the following chart for more specific examples.

Restricted features	
System Functionality	Editing settings while the rear view camera or active park assist are active.
Videos, Photos and Graphics	Playing video.
Text Messages	Composing text messages.
	Editing preset text messages.
Navigation	Demo navigation route.

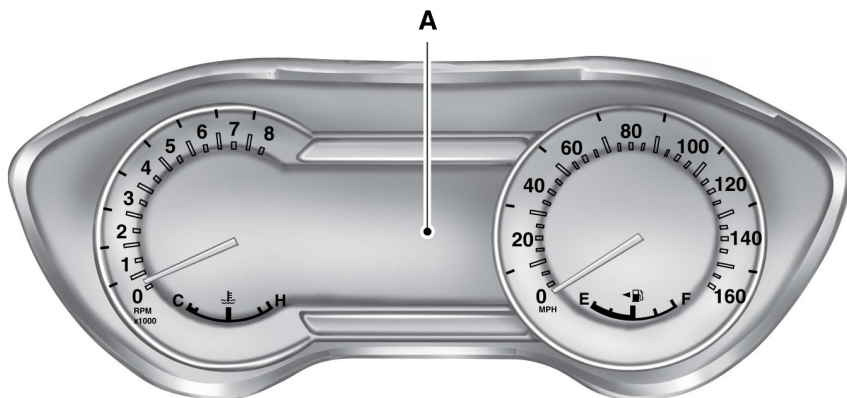
## Privacy Information

When a cell phone connects to SYNC, the system creates a profile that links to that cell phone. The system creates the profile to offer you more mobile features and to operate more efficiently. Among other things, this profile may contain data about your phonebook, text messages (read and unread) and call history. This includes the history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system. If you connect a media player, the system creates and retains an index of supported media content. The system also records a short development log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity. Use the log profile and other system data to improve the system and help diagnose any problems that may occur.

The cell phone profile, media player index and development log remain in the system unless deleted. They are generally accessible in your vehicle only when you connect your cell phone or media player. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you complete a master reset to erase all stored information. See **Information Displays** (page 86).

Special equipment is required to access system data. Access to your vehicle's SYNC module is also required. We will not access the system data for any purpose other than as described without consent. Examples where we can access system data are for a court order, where required by law enforcement, other government authorities or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of us. Further privacy information is available.

## Accessing and Adjusting Modes Through Your Right Vehicle Information Display



E185883

The display is located on the right side of your instrument cluster (A). You can use your steering wheel controls to view and make minor adjustments to active modes without taking your hands off the wheel. For example:

- In Entertainment mode, you can view what is now playing, change the audio source, select memory presets and make some adjustments.
- In Phone mode, you can accept or reject an incoming call.
- If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, you can view the current route or activate a route.



E144811

Use the **OK** and arrow buttons on the right side of your steering wheel to scroll through the available modes.

The selection menu expands and different options appear.

- Press the up and down arrows to scroll through the modes.
- Press the right arrow to enter the mode.
- Press the left or right arrows to make adjustments within the chosen mode.
- Press **OK** to confirm your selection.

**Note:** If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation, Compass appears in the display instead of Navigation. If you press the right arrow to go into the Compass menu, you can see the compass graphic. The compass displays the direction in which the vehicle is traveling, not true direction (for example, if the vehicle is traveling west, the middle of the compass graphic displays west; north displays to the left of west though its true direction is to the right of west).

## Using Voice Recognition

This system helps you control many features using voice commands. This allows you to keep your hands on the wheel and focus on what is in front of you. The system provides feedback through audible tones, prompts, questions and spoken confirmations depending on the situation and the chosen level of interaction (voice settings).

The system also asks short questions (confirmation prompts) when it is not sure of your request or when there are multiple possible responses to your request.

When using voice commands, words and icons may appear in the lower left status bar indicating the status of the voice command session.

## How to Use Voice Commands



The following are some of the voice commands that you can say at any time during a voice command session.

## Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice command
Main Menu
What Can I Say
Previous Page
Go Back
Help

## Helpful Hints

- Make sure the interior of your vehicle is as quiet as possible. Wind noise from open windows and road vibrations may prevent the system from correctly recognizing spoken voice commands.
- After pressing the voice command icon, wait until after the tone sounds and a message appears before saying a voice command. Any voice command spoken prior to this does not register with the system.
- Speak naturally, without long pauses between words.
- At any time, you can interrupt the system while it is speaking by pressing the voice command icon.

## Accessing a List of Available Voice Commands

To access a list of available voice commands you can do either of the following.

## Using the touchscreen, press:

Menu Item
Settings
Help
Voice Command List



**Using the steering wheel control, press the voice button and when prompted say one of the following:**

Voice Commands
List of Commands
Radio List of Commands
Phone List of Commands

## Voice Commands

Voice Instructions List of Commands

## Voice Command Settings

These allow you to customize the level of system interaction, help and feedback. The system defaults to standard interaction that uses candidate lists and confirmation prompts as these provide the highest level of guidance and feedback.

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Interaction Mode	Novice	In this mode the system provides detailed interaction and guidance.
	Advanced	This mode has less audible interaction and more tone prompts.
Confirmation Prompts	The system uses these short questions to confirm your voice command. If turned off, the system simply makes a best guess as to what you requested. The system may still occasionally ask you to confirm a voice command.	
Phone Candidate Lists	Candidate lists are lists of possible results from your voice commands. The system creates these lists when it has the same confidence level of several options based on your voice command	
Media Candidate Lists		

**Using the touchscreen, press the settings icon, then press:**

Menu Item
Voice Settings
Voice Control
<b>Select from the following:</b>
Interaction Mode
Confirmation Prompts

## Menu Item

Media Candidate Lists

Phone Candidate Lists

Voice Control Volume

## **Using Voice Commands with the Touchscreen Options**

The voice command system has a dual mode feature which allows you to switch between using voice commands and making on-screen selections. This is

available only when the system displays a list of candidates generated during a voice command session. For example, this can be used when entering a street address or trying to call a contact from a cell phone paired to the system.

## **SETTINGS**



Item	Menu Item
A	Clock
B	Display
C	Sound
D	Vehicle
E	Settings
F	Help

## Clock



Under this menu, you can set the clock, access and adjust the

display, sound and vehicle settings as well as access settings for specific modes or the help feature.

### To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
Clock	Press the + or - to adjust the time. From this screen, you can also make other adjustments such as 12-hour or 24-hour mode, activate GPS time synchronization and have the system automatically update new time zones. You can also switch the outside air temperature display off and on. It appears at the top center of the touchscreen, next to the time and date.

**Note:** You cannot manually set the date. Your vehicle's GPS does this for you.

**Note:** If the battery has been disconnected, your vehicle needs to acquire a GPS signal to update the clock. Once your vehicle acquires the signal, it may take a few minutes for the update to display the correct time.

## Display



You can adjust the display using the touchscreen or the voice button on the steering wheel

controls.

### To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
Display	

### Then select from the following:

Mode	Allows you to switch the display off. It also allows you to set the screen to a certain brightness or have the system automatically change based on the outside light level. If you also select:	
	Auto	These features will allow you to adjust the dimming of your screen.
	Night	

Menu Item	Action and Description
Edit Wallpaper	Allows you to display the default photo or upload your own.
Auto Dim	When set to <b>On</b> , lets you use the automatic dimming feature. When set to <b>Off</b> you are able to adjust the brightness of the screen.
	Brightness   Make the screen display brighter or dimmer.
Auto Dim Manual Offset	Allows you to adjust screen dimming as the outside lighting conditions change from day to night.



**To make adjustments using the voice button, press the button and when prompted, say:**

Voice command
Display Settings

**Note:** Photographs with extremely large dimensions (such as 2048 x 1536) may not be compatible and appear as a blank (black) image on the display.

The system allows you to upload and view up to 32 photos.



To access, press:

## Uploading Photos for Your Home Screen Wallpaper

**Note:** You cannot load photos directly from your camera. You must access the photos either from your USB mass storage device or from an SD card.

**To upload your photos, select:**

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
Display	
Edit Wallpaper	Follow the system prompts to upload your photographs.

Only the photograph(s), which meets the following conditions display:

- Compatible file formats are as follows: JPG, GIF, PNG, BMP.
- Each file must be 1.5 MB or less.
- Recommended dimensions: 800 x 384.

## Sound



**To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:**

Menu Item
Settings
Sound
<b>Then select from the following:</b>
Bass
Midrange
Treble
Set Balance and Fade
Occupancy Mode
EQ Mode
Speed Compensated Volume

**Note:** *Your vehicle may not have all of these sound settings.*

## Vehicle



**To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:**

Menu Item
Settings
Vehicle
<b>Then select from the following:</b>
Ambient Lighting
Camera Settings
Enable Valet Mode

## Ambient Lighting (If Equipped)

lighting illuminates footwells and cupholders with a choice of colors.

When you switch this feature on, ambient

### To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
Vehicle	
Ambient Lighting	

- You can then touch the desired color.
- Use the scroll bar to increase or decrease the intensity.
- To switch the feature on or off, press the power button.

## Camera Settings



This menu allows you to access settings for your rear view camera.

### To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
Vehicle	
Camera Settings	

### Then select from the following:

Enhanced Park Aids	
Rear Camera Delay	

You can find more information on the rear view camera system in another chapter. See **Parking Aids** (page 167).

## Enable Valet Mode



Valet mode allows you to lock the system. No information is accessible until the system is unlocked with the correct PIN.

**Note:** If the system locks, and you need to reset the PIN, enter 3681 and the system unlocks.

## To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
Vehicle	
Enable Valet Mode	Then enter a four digit PIN twice, as prompted.
Continue	After you press Continue the system locks until you enter the PIN again.

## Settings

Access and adjust system settings, voice features, as well as phone, navigation and wireless settings.

## System



## To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
System	

### Then select from the following:

Language	Select to have the touchscreen display in any of the selectable language options*.
Distance	Select to display units in kilometers or miles.
Temperature	Select to display units in Celsius or Fahrenheit.
System Prompt Volume	Adjust the volume of voice prompts from the system.
Touch Screen Button Beep	Select to have the system beep to confirm choices made through the touchscreen.
Keyboard Layout	Have the touchscreen keyboard display in QWERTY or ABC format.

Menu Item	Action and Description
Install Applications	Install any downloaded applications or view the current software licenses.
Master Reset	Select to restore factory defaults. This erases all personal settings and personal data.

\* The options include: English, Spanish, French, Portuguese, German, Italian, Dutch, Swedish, Polish, Turkish and Russian. Only four of these languages are available for voice input and output, depending on your location.

## Voice Control



### To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	
Voice Control	

### Then select from the following:

Interaction Mode	Standard interaction mode provides more detailed interaction and guidance. Advanced mode has less audible interaction and more tone prompts.
Confirmation Prompts	Have the system ask you short questions if it has not clearly heard or understood your request. <b>Note:</b> Even with confirmation prompts turned off, the system may occasionally ask you to confirm settings.
Media Candidate Lists	Candidate lists are possible results from your voice commands. The system simply makes a best guess at your request with these turned off.
Phone Candidate Lists	Candidate lists are possible results from your voice commands. The system simply makes a best guess at your request with these turned off.
Voice Control Volume	This allows you to adjust the system's voice volume level.



## Media Player



**To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:**

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
Media Player	

**Then select from the following:**

Autoplay	When this feature is on, the system automatically switches to the media source upon initial connection. This allows you to listen to music during the indexing process. When this feature is off, the system does not automatically switch to the inserted media source.
Bluetooth Devices	Select to connect, disconnect, add or delete a device. You can also set a device as your favorite so that the system automatically attempts to connect to that device at every ignition cycle.
Gracenote® Database Info	This allows you to view the version level of the Gracenote Database.
Gracenote® Mgmt	With this feature on, the Gracenote Database supplies metadata information for your music files. This overrides information from your device. This feature defaults to off.
Cover Art Priority	With this feature on, the Gracenote Database supplies cover art for your music files. This overrides any art from your device. This feature defaults to Media Player.

## Navigation



**To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:**

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
Navigation	

**Then select from the following:**

Menu Item	Action and Description
Map Preferences	Switch breadcrumbs on and off.
	Have the system display your turn list top to bottom or bottom to top.
	Switch the Parking POI notification on and off.
Route Preferences	Select shortest route, fastest route or ecological route as your preferred route. This route displays first.
	Always use preferred route. If set to yes, the system only calculates a single route. This speeds up your destination entry process.
	Select a low, medium or high cost for the calculated ecological route. This may incur a time penalty.
	Have the system avoid freeways.
	Have the system avoid toll roads.
	Have the system avoid ferries or car trains.
	Have the system avoid tunnels.
Navigation Preferences	Have the system use guidance prompts.
	Have the system automatically fill in State/Province information.
	Hazard Spot Warning Have the system activate hazard spot warning in countries where legally allowed.
Traffic Preferences	Have the system avoid traffic problems automatically.
	Switch traffic alert notifications on or off.
	Have the system display accident icons.
	Have the system display traffic jam icons.
	Have the system display closed roads.
	Have the system display road work icons.
	Have the system display incident icons.
	Have the system display icons for areas where difficult driving conditions may occur.
	Have the system display icons for areas where snow and ice on the road may occur.

Menu Item	Action and Description
	Have the system display any smog icons.
	Have the system display weather warning icons.
	Have the system display where there may be reduced visibility.
	Have the system display icons to recommend switching on your radio for traffic announcements.
Avoid Areas	Enter specific areas that you would like to avoid on planned navigation routes.

## Phone



### To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
Phone	

### Then select from the following:

Bluetooth Devices	Connect, disconnect, add or delete a device, as well as save it as a favorite.
Bluetooth	Switch Bluetooth on and off.
Do Not Disturb	Have all calls go directly to your voice mail and not ring inside your vehicle. With this feature turned on, text message notifications are also suppressed and do not ring inside your vehicle.
Emergency Assistance	Switch on or turn off the Emergency Assistance feature. See <b>Information</b> (page 383).
Phone Ringer	Select the type of notification for phone calls - ring tone, beep, text to speech or silent.
Text Message Notification	Select the type of notification for text messages - alert tone, beep, text to speech, or have it be silent.

Menu Item	Action and Description
Internet Data Connection	If compatible with your phone, you can adjust your internet data connection. Select to make your connection profile with the personal area network or to switch off your connection. You can also choose to adjust your settings or have the system always connect, never connect when roaming, or query on connect. Press ? for more information.
Manage Phonebook	Access features, such as automatic phonebook download, re-download your phonebook, add contacts from your phone as well as delete or upload your phonebook.
Roaming Warning	Have the system alert you when in Roaming mode.

## Wireless and Internet



Your system has a Wi-Fi feature that creates a wireless network within your vehicle, thereby allowing other devices (such as personal computers or phones) in your vehicle to speak to each other, share files or play

games. Using this Wi-Fi feature, everyone in your vehicle can also access the internet if you have a USB mobile broadband connection inside your vehicle, your phone supports personal area networking or if you park outside a wireless hotspot.

## To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
Wireless & Internet	

## Then select from the following:

Wi-Fi Settings	<p>Wi-Fi Network (Client) Mode</p> <p>Turns the Wi-Fi feature on and off in your vehicle. Make sure you switch it on for connectivity purposes.</p> <p>Choose a Wireless Network</p> <p>Allows you to use a previously stored wireless network. You can categorize by alphabetical listing, priority and signal strength. You can also choose to search for a network, connect to a network, disconnect from a network, receive more information, prioritize a network or delete a network.</p> <p>Gateway (Access Point) Mode</p>
----------------	--

# SYNC™ 2

Menu Item	Action and Description
	Makes SYNC an access point for a phone or a computer when turned on. This forms the local area network within your vehicle for things, such as game playing, file transfer and internet browsing. Press <b>?</b> for more information.
	Gateway (Access Point) Settings Allows you to view and change settings for using SYNC as the internet gateway.
	Gateway (Access Point) Devices List Allows you to view recent connections to your Wi-Fi system.
USB Mobile Broadband	Instead of using Wi-Fi, your system can also use a USB mobile broadband connection to access the internet. (You must switch on your mobile broadband device on your personal computer before connecting it to the system.) This screen allows you to set up what is your typical area for your USB mobile broadband connection. (USB mobile broadband settings may not display if the device is already on.) You can select the following:
	Country
	Carrier
	Phone Number
	User Name
	Password
Bluetooth Settings	Shows you the currently paired devices as well as giving you your typical Bluetooth options to connect, disconnect, set as favorite, delete and add device. Bluetooth is a registered trademark of the Bluetooth SIG.
Prioritize Connection Methods	Choose your connection methods and change them as needed. You can select to change order and have the system either always attempt to connect using a USB mobile broadband or using Wi-Fi.



The Wi-Fi CERTIFIED Logo is a certification mark of the Wi-Fi Alliance.

## Help



E142626

### To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Settings	Press the settings icon.	
Help		
<b>Then select from the following:</b>		
System Information	Touchscreen system serial number	
	Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)	
	Touchscreen system software version	
	Navigation system version	
	Map database version	
	Sirius satellite radio ESN	
	Gracenote® Database Information and Library version	
View Software Licenses	View the licenses for any software and applications installed on your system.	
Driving Restrictions	Certain features are not accessible when your vehicle is moving.	
Emergency Assistance	Switch on and off the Emergency Assistance feature. See <b>Information</b> (page 383).	
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>In Case of Emergency (ICE) Quick Dial</td><td>Allows you to save up to two numbers as ICE contacts for quick access if there is an emergency.</td></tr> </table>	In Case of Emergency (ICE) Quick Dial
In Case of Emergency (ICE) Quick Dial	Allows you to save up to two numbers as ICE contacts for quick access if there is an emergency.	

Menu Item	Action and Description	
		The ICE contacts you select appear at the end of the Emergency Assistance call process.
	Edit	Select to access your phone-book and then select the desired contacts. The numbers then appear as options on this screen for the ICE 1 and ICE 2 buttons.
Voice Command List	View categorized lists of voice commands.	



You can also access Help using the voice commands. The system provides allowable voice commands for the current mode.

## Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice command
help

You can say help at any time to get assistance with commands, menus or other information.

## ENTERTAINMENT



E161892

Message	Action and Description
A	AM
B	FM
C	DAB
D	CD
E	USB
F	Touch this button to scroll down for more options, such as SD Card, BT Stereo and A/V In
G	These buttons change with the media mode you are in.
H	Radio memory presets and CD controls.

**Note:** Some features may not be available in your area. Contact an authorized dealer for more information.

You can access these options using the touchscreen or voice commands.

### AM/FM Radio



Touch the **AM** or **FM** tab to listen to the radio.

To change between AM and FM presets, just touch the **AM** or **FM** tab.

### Memory Presets

Save a station by pressing and holding one of the memory preset areas. There is a brief mute while the radio saves the station. Sound returns when finished.

### TA

When active TA interrupts active audio source to provide incoming traffic announcements.

### Scan

Touch this button to scan through AM or FM band. The system will remain on any strong station for 10 seconds. The light on the button illuminates when the feature is on.



## Info (DAB only)

When the info button is pressed, the system shows the corresponding block

number for the active DAB radio station. If you press the info button a second time the radio station name is displayed again.

## Options

Menu Item	Action and Description
Sound Settings	Touch this button to adjust settings for:
	Bass
	Midrange
	Treble
	Set Balance and Fade
	Occupancy Mode
	EQ Mode
	Speed Compensated Volume
Radio Text	This allows you to view the information broadcast by FM stations.
AST	AST (Autostore) allows you to have the system automatically store the six strongest stations in your current location.
News announcement	With news announcement option active, the system interrupts active audio source to provide incoming news announcements, if currently tuned station (or last tuned station in case of other media active) supports news.
Regional	With Regional option active, the system stays on the regional subprogram instead of switching to a different frequency with better reception.
Alternate Frequency	With alternative frequency option active, the system re-tunes to a different frequency with better reception for the same station.
Service Linking	With Service Linking active, the system automatically switches from DAB to FM, in case DAB becomes unavailable.

# SYNC™ 2

**Note:** Your vehicle may not have all these sound settings.

## Radio Voice Commands



**Press the voice button and when prompted say:**

Voice command	
Radio	
<b>Then you can say a command similar to the following:</b>	
FM	Say a frequency or preset.
DAB	Say a frequency or preset.
Off	
help	

## CD



**To access, press the lower left corner on the touchscreen, then select:**

Menu Item
CD

## Insert your CD then select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Repeat	Touch this button to repeat the currently playing track, all tracks on the disc or switch the feature off if already on.
Shuffle	Touch this button to play the tracks or entire albums in random order, or switch the feature off if already on.
Scan	Touch this button to hear a brief sampling of all available tracks.
More Info	Touch this button to see disc information.
Browse	Touch this button to look through all available CD tracks.

## To adjust the Sound Settings, select:

Menu Item
Options
Sound Settings
<b>Then any of the following:</b>
Bass
Midrange
Treble
Set Balance and Fade
Occupancy Mode
EQ Mode
Speed Compensated Volume

**Note:** Your vehicle may not have all these sound settings.

## CD Voice Commands



If you are listening to a CD, press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following commands.

**If you are not listening to a CD, press the voice button and, after the tone, say:**

Voice command
CD Player

**When listening to a CD you can say many commands. Following are a few examples of what you can say.**

Voice command
Play
Pause
Next Track
Previous Track
help

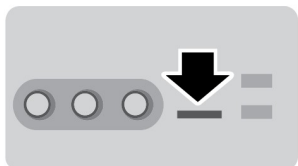
## SD Card Slot and USB Port

The SD card slot and USB port are located in the Media Hub. See **Media Hub** (page 304).

### SD Card

**Note:** Your SD card slot is spring-loaded. To remove the SD card, press the card in and the system ejects it. Do not attempt to pull the card to remove it as this could cause damage.

**Note:** The navigation system also uses this card slot. See **Navigation** (page 390).



E142619

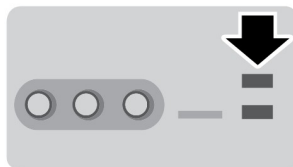
To access and play music from your device, press the lower left corner of the touchscreen.



E142620

SD logo is a trademark of SD-3C, LLC.

## USB Port



E142621

To access and play music from your device, press the lower left corner of the touchscreen.

This feature allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks, flash drives or thumb drives, and charge devices if they support this feature.

In order to playback video from your iPod or iPhone, you must have a special combination USB/RCA composite video cable (which you can buy from Apple). When you connect the cable to your iPod or iPhone, plug the other end into both the RCA jacks and the USB port.

### Playing Music from Your Device

**Note:** The system is capable of indexing up to 30,000 songs.



## Insert your device and select:

Message	Action and Description
USB SD Card	Once the system recognizes your USB or SD card you can then select from the following options:
Repeat	This feature replays the currently playing song or album.
Shuffle	Touch this button to play music on the selected album or folder in random order.
Similar Music	This feature allows you to choose music similar to what is currently playing.
More Info	Touch this button to see disc information, for example current track, artist name, album and genre.
Options	Touch this button to view and adjust various media settings.

## Sound

### Sound settings allows you to adjust settings for:

Message	Action and Description
Bass	
Midrange	
Treble	
Set Balance and Fade	
Occupancy Mode	
EQ Mode	
Speed Compensated Volume	
Media Player Settings	Allows you to select more settings, which is under Media Player. See <b>Settings</b> (page 352).

Message	Action and Description
Device Information	Displays software and firmware information about the currently connected media device.
Update Media Index	Indexes your device when you connect it for the first time and each time the content changes (for example adding or removing tracks) to make sure you have the latest voice commands available for all media on the device.

**Note:** *Your vehicle may not have all these sound settings.*

## Browse

This feature allows you to view the contents of the device. It also allows you to search by categories, for example genre, artist or album.

If you want to view song information, for example Title, Artist, File, Folder, Album, and Genre, touch the on-screen album art.

## You can also select:

Message	Action and Description
What's Playing?	To hear how the system pronounces the current band and song. This can be helpful when using voice commands to make sure the system correctly plays your request.

## Playing Video from Your Device

To access and play video from your device, your vehicle's transmission must be in park (P) with the ignition in accessory mode. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine** (page 138).

## USB and SD Card Voice Commands



The voice system allows you to control your media with voice commands. For example, if you are listening to music on your USB device, and wish to change songs, you can press the voice button and the system provides you with audio prompts.

## Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice command
SD Card
USB
<b>Then commands such as the following:</b>

Voice command	
Browse	
Next Track	
Pause	
Play	Say the name of what you would like to listen to such as a band, song, album or playlist.
Similar Music	
Help	

## Supported Media Players, Formats and Metadata Information

SYNC is capable of hosting nearly any digital media player, including iPod, Zune™, plays from device players, and most USB drives. Supported audio formats include MP3, WMA, WAV and AAC.

It is also able to organize your indexed media from your playing device by metadata tags. Metadata tags, which are descriptive software identifiers embedded in the media files, provide information about the file.

If your indexed media files contain no information embedded in these metadata tags, SYNC may classify the empty metadata tags as unknown.

In order to playback video from your iPod or iPhone, you must have a special combination USB/RCA composite video cable (which you can buy from Apple). When you connect the cable to your iPod or iPhone, plug the other end into both the RCA jacks and the USB port.

## Bluetooth Audio

The system allows you to stream audio over your vehicle's speakers from your connected, Bluetooth-enabled cell phone.



**To access, press the lower left corner on the touchscreen, then select:**

Message
BT Stereo

## Bluetooth Audio Voice Commands



The voice system allows you to control your media with a simple voice command. For example to change songs, press the voice button and follow the system prompts.

## A/V Inputs

### WARNINGS



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend

## WARNINGS

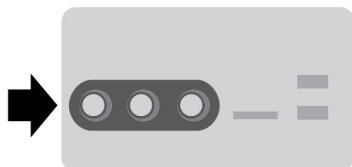
against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



For safety reasons, do not connect or adjust the settings on your portable music player while your vehicle is moving.



Store the portable music player in a secure location, such as the center console or the glove box, when your vehicle is moving. Hard objects may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury. The audio extension cable must be long enough to allow the portable music player to be safely stored while your vehicle is moving.



E142622

The A/V inputs allow you to connect an auxiliary audio/video source (for example gaming systems or a personal camcorder) by connecting RCA cords (not included) to these input jacks. The jacks are yellow, red and white and are located either behind a small access door on the instrument panel or in your center console.

You can also use the A/V inputs as an auxiliary input jack to play music from your portable music player over your vehicle's speakers. Plug in your 1/8 inch (3.5 millimeter) RCA adapter into the two left A/V input jacks (red and white).

To use the auxiliary input jack feature, make sure that your portable music player is designed for use with headphones and that it is fully charged. You also need an audio extension cable with stereo male 1/8-inch (3.5 millimeter) connectors at one end and a RCA jack at the other.

1. Switch off the engine, radio and portable music player. Set the parking brake and put the transmission in position P.
2. Attach one end of the audio extension cable to the headphone output of your player and the other end into the adapter in one of the two left A/V input jacks (white or red) inside the center console.
3. Press the lower left corner on the touchscreen. Select a tuned FM station.
4. Adjust the volume as desired.
5. Switch the portable music player on and adjust the volume to 1/2 the maximum.
6. Press the lower left corner on the touchscreen, then select:

Menu Item	
A/V In	You should hear audio from your portable music player although it may be low.



Menu Item	
	Adjust the sound on your portable music player until it reaches the level of the FM station by switching back and forth between the controls.

In order to playback video from your iPod or iPhone, you must have a special combination USB/RCA composite video cable (which you can buy from Apple). When you connect the cable to your iPod or iPhone, plug the other end into both the RCA jacks and the USB port.

## Troubleshooting

- Do not connect the audio input jack to a line level output. The jack only works correctly with devices that have a headphone output with a volume control.
- Do not set the portable music player's volume level higher than is necessary to match the volume of the FM radio as this causes distortion and reduces sound quality.
- If the music sounds distorted at lower listening levels, turn the portable music player volume down. If the problem persists, replace or recharge the batteries in the portable media player.
- Control the portable media player in the same manner when used with headphones, as the auxiliary input jack does not provide control (such as Play or Pause) over the attached portable media player.

## PHONE



E161968

Item	Menu Item
A	Phone
B	Quick Dial
C	Phonebook
D	Call History
E	Messaging
F	Settings

Hands-free calling is one of the main features of SYNC. Once you pair your cell phone, you can access many options using the touchscreen or voice commands. While the system supports a variety of features, many are dependent on your cell phone's functionality.

At a minimum, most cell phones with Bluetooth wireless technology support the following functions:

- Answering an incoming call.
- Ending a call.
- Dialing a number.
- Call waiting notification.
- Caller ID.

Other features, such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download, are phone-dependent features. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's user manual or the local Ford website.

## Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time

### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

The first thing you must do to use the phone features of SYNC is to pair your Bluetooth-enabled cell phone with SYNC. This allows you to use your cell phone in a hands-free manner.

## Touch the upper left corner of the touchscreen:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Add phone	
Find SYNC	Follow the on-screen instructions.

Menu Item	Action and Description
	<p>Make sure that Bluetooth is set to <b>On</b> and that your cell phone is in the correct mode. See your cell phone's manual if necessary.</p> <p>Select <b>SYNC</b> and a six-digit PIN appears on your device. If you are prompted to enter a PIN on your device, it does not support Secure Simple Pairing. To pair, enter the PIN displayed on the touchscreen. Skip the next step.</p> <p>When prompted on your cell phone's display, confirm that the PIN provided by SYNC matches the PIN displayed on your cell phone.</p> <p>The display indicates when the pairing is successful. SYNC may prompt you with more cell phone options. For more information on your cell phone's capability, see your cell phone's manual and visit the website.</p>

## Pairing Subsequent Cell Phones

Make sure that Bluetooth is set to **On** and that your cell phone is in the correct mode. See your device's manual if necessary.

### To pair a subsequent cell phone, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Phone	
Settings	
Bluetooth Devices	
Add Device	
Find SYNC	<p>Follow the on-screen instructions.</p> <p>Make sure that Bluetooth is set to <b>On</b> and that your cell phone is in the correct mode. See your cell phone's manual if necessary.</p> <p>Select <b>SYNC</b> and a six-digit PIN appears on your device. If you are prompted to enter a PIN on your device, it does not support Secure Simple Pairing. To pair, enter the PIN displayed on the touchscreen. Skip the next step.</p> <p>When prompted on your cell phone's display, confirm that the PIN provided by SYNC matches the PIN displayed on your cell phone.</p> <p>The display indicates when the pairing is successful.</p>

Menu Item	Action and Description
	SYNC may prompt you with more cell phone options. For more information on your cell phone's capability, see your cell phone's manual and visit the website.

## Making Calls



**Press the voice button and say a command similar to the following:**

Voice command
Call
Dial

You can say the name of a person from your phone book to call or say a number to dial. For example "Call Jenny" or "Dial 867-5309".



To end the call or exit phone mode, press and hold the phone button.

## Receiving Calls

During an incoming call, an audible tone sounds. Call information appears in the display if it is available.



**To accept the call, select:**

Menu Item
Accept

**Note:** You can also accept the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.



**To reject the call, select:**

Menu Item
Reject

**Note:** You can also reject the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.

Ignore the call by doing nothing. SYNC logs it as a missed call.

## Phone Menu Options

Press the top left corner on the touchscreen to select from the following options:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Phone	Touch this button to access the on-screen numerical pad to enter a number and place a call. During an active call, you can also choose any of these options:
	Mute Call
	Hold Call
	Privacy
	Join Calls
	End
Quick Dial	Select to call stored contacts.

Menu Item	Action and Description
Phone-book	Touch this button to access and call any contacts in your previously downloaded phonebook. The system places the entries in alphabetical categories summarized at the top of the screen
	To turn on contact picture settings, if your device supports this feature, select:
	Phone
	Settings
	Manage Phonebook
	Display Photos from Phone-book
	Certain smartphones may support transferring street addresses when listed with phonebook contact information. If your cell phone supports this feature, you can select and use these addresses as destinations and save them as favorites.
Call History	<p><b>Note:</b> This is a cell phone-dependent feature. If your cell phone does not support downloading call history using Bluetooth, SYNC keeps track of calls made with the SYNC system.</p> <p>After you connect your Bluetooth-enabled cell phone to SYNC, you can access any previously dialed, received or missed calls. You can also choose to save these to:</p>

Menu Item	Action and Description
	Favorites Quick Dial
Messaging	Send text messages using the touchscreen. See <b>Text Messaging</b> later in this section.
Settings	Touch this button to access various phone settings, for example turning Bluetooth on and off, managing your phonebook and more. See <b>Phone Settings</b> later in this section

## Text Messaging

**Note:** Downloading and sending text messages using Bluetooth are cell phone-dependent features.

**Note:** Certain features in text messaging are speed-dependent and not available when your vehicle is traveling at speeds over 5.0 mph (8 km/h).

**Note:** SYNC does not download read text messages from your cell phone.

You can send and receive text messages using Bluetooth, read them aloud and translate text messaging acronyms, for example LOL.

**Touch the top left corner of the display, then select:**

Menu Item
Phone
Messaging
<b>Then any of the following:</b>
Listen (speaker icon)
Dial
Send Text

Menu Item
View
Delete
Delete All

## Composing a Text Message

**Note:** This is a speed-dependent feature. It is unavailable when your vehicle is traveling at speeds over 5 mph (8 km/h).

**Note:** Downloading and sending text messages using Bluetooth are cell phone-dependent features.

## To compose and send a text message, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Phone	
Messaging	
Send Text	Enter a cell phone number or choose from your phonebook.
Edit Text	Allows you to customize the pre-defined message or create a message on your own.
Send	Sends the message as it is.

You can then preview the message, verify the recipient as well as update the message list, and send it to a connected device, for example a USB drive.

## Text Message Options

Messages
I'll call you back in a few minutes.
I just left, I'll be there soon.
Can you give me a call?
I'm on my way.
I'm running a few minutes late.
I'm ahead of schedule, so I'll be there early.

Messages
I'm outside.
I'll call you when I get there.
OK
Yes
No
Thanks
Stuck in traffic.
Call me later.
LOL

## Receiving a Text Message

**When a new message arrives, an audible tone sounds and the screen displays a pop-up with the caller name and ID, if supported by your cell phone. You can select:**

Menu Item	Action and Description
View	To view the text message.
Listen	For SYNC to read the message to you.
Dial	To call the contact.
Ignore	To exit the screen.

## Phone Settings

**To enter the phone settings menu select:**

Menu Item	Action and Description
Phone	
Settings	

**Then any of the following:**

Bluetooth Devices	Connect, disconnect, add or delete a device, as well as save it as a favorite.
Bluetooth	To turn Bluetooth off or on.
Do Not Disturb	If you want all calls to go directly to your voicemail and not ring in the vehicle. When this feature is on, text message notifications do not ring inside the cabin either.
Emergency Assistance	Switch the Emergency Assistance feature on or off. See <b>Information</b> (page 383).
Phone Ringer	Select the ring tone you want to hear when you receive a call. Choose from possible system ring tones, your currently paired cell phone's ring tone, a beep, text-to-speech or a silent notification.
Text Message Notification	Select a text message notification, if supported by your cell phone. Choose from possible system alert tones, text-to-speech or silent.

Menu Item	Action and Description
Internet Data Connection	If your cell phone is compatible, use this screen to adjust your internet data connection. Select to make your connection profile with the personal area network or to turn off your connection. You can also choose to adjust your settings or have the system always connect, never connect when roaming or query on connect. Press ? for more information.
Manage Phonebook	To access features such as automatic phonebook download, re-download your phonebook, add contacts from your cell phone as well as delete or upload your phonebook.
Roaming Warning	To have the system alert you when your cell phone is in roaming mode.

## Phone Voice Commands



**Press the voice button and when prompted say any of the following or a similar command:**

Voice command
Call Voicemail
Listen to Message
Reply to Message
Pair Phone
help



## INFORMATION



E161889

Item	Menu Item
A	Traffic
B	Alerts
C	Calendar
D	SYNC-Apps
E	Where Am I?



If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, press the **Information** button to access these features. If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation, press the corner of the touchscreen with the green tab.

## Notifications



If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, touch the **i** (Information) button to access these features. If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation, touch the corner of the touchscreen with the green tab.

## Press Notifications, and then choose from any of the following services:

Menu Item	Action and Description
View	The complete message
Delete	The message
Delete All	Messages

This screen displays any system messages (such as an SD card fault).

**Note:** The system alerts you to any messages by turning the information icon yellow. After you read or delete the messages, the icon returns to white.

## Calendar



If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, touch the I (Information) button to access these features. If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation, touch the corner of the touchscreen with the green tab.

Press **Calendar**. You can view the current calendar by day, week or month.

## Emergency Assistance (If Equipped)

### WARNINGS



For this feature to work, your mobile phone must be Bluetooth capable and compatible with the system.



Always place your mobile phone in a secure location inside your vehicle. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent Emergency Assistance from working correctly.



Unless the Emergency Assistance setting is set to on prior to a collision, the system will not attempt to place an emergency call which could delay the response time, potentially increasing the risk of serious injury or death. Do not wait

### WARNINGS

for Emergency Assistance to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear Emergency Assistance within five seconds of the crash, the system or cell phone may be damaged or non-functional.

**Note:** Before setting the feature on, please read the important notice about the Emergency Assistance feature and the Emergency Assistance privacy notice later in this section for important information.

**Note:** When you switch Emergency Assistance on or off, the setting apply to all paired mobile phones. If you switch Emergency Assistance off and a previously paired phone connects when you switch the ignition on, either a voice message plays, a display message or icon is shown, or both.

**Note:** Note: Every mobile phone operates differently. While Emergency Assistance works with most mobile phones, some mobile phones may experience difficulties using this feature.

In the event of a collision which deploys an airbag or activates the fuel pump shut-off, the system may contact the emergency services (including call center) through a paired and connected mobile phone. The emergency services operator contacts the relevant police agency and establishes communication among three parties (you, call center and the police agency). In the end, the local police agency coordinates the rescue.

**Note:** *In case of an emergency, Emergency Assistance, as a means of communication aid, can help you contact specific rescue departments of public security. Emergency Assistance does not implement the rescue operations. The local public security department deploys specific rescue operations according to the actual situation.*

See **Supplementary Restraints System** (page 27). Important information regarding airbag deployment is in this chapter.

See **Roadside Emergencies** (page 224). Important information regarding the fuel pump shut-off is in this chapter.

## Setting Emergency Assistance On



**If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, touch the I (Information) button to access these features. If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation, touch the corner of the touchscreen with the green tab. Then select:**

Menu Item
Apps
Emergency Assistance
On



## Display Options

If you switch on this feature, a confirmation message appears in the display when your cell phone connects and your vehicle starts.

If you switch off this feature, the dialog allows you to set a reminder.

Off with reminder provides a display and voice reminder when your cell phone connects and your vehicle starts.

Off without reminder provides a display reminder only without a voice reminder when your cell phone connects.

To make sure that Emergency Assistance works correctly:

- The system must have power and be working correctly at the time of the crash and during feature activation and use.
- You must switch on the feature before a crash.
- You must have a cell phone connected to the system.
- In certain countries, it may be necessary to have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in order to place and maintain an emergency call.
- A connected cell phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the crash.
- A connected cell phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- Your vehicle must have battery power.

**Note:** This feature only works in a European country or region where SYNC Emergency Assistance can call the local emergency services. Visit the regional Ford website for details.

## In the Event of a Crash

**Note:** Not every crash deploys an airbag or triggers the fuel pump shut off (which may turn on Emergency Assistance). However, if Emergency Assistance is triggered the system tries to contact the emergency services. If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses connection to the system, it searches for and tries to connect to any available previously paired cell phone. The system attempts to dial 112.

Before making a call:

- If you do not cancel the call and SYNC makes a successful call, an introductory message plays for the emergency operator. After this message, there is hands-free communication between your vehicle's occupants and the operator.
- The system provides a short window of time (approximately 10 seconds) to cancel the call. If you do not cancel the call, the system attempts to dial 112.
- The system plays a message letting you know when it attempts to make an emergency call. You can cancel the call by selecting the relevant button or by pressing the end call button on the steering wheel.

During a call:

- Emergency Assistance uses your vehicle GPS or cellular network information when available to determine the most appropriate language to use.
- The language the system uses to interact with the occupants of your vehicle may differ from the language used to deliver information to the emergency operator.
- After the delivery of the introductory message the voice line opens so that you can speak hands-free with the emergency operator.
- When the line is connected, you must be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location information immediately.

**Note:** While the system provides information to the emergency operator, the system plays a message letting you know it is sending important information. It then lets you know when the line is open to start hands-free communication.

**Note:** During an Emergency Assistance call, an emergency priority screen appears which contains vehicle GPS coordinates when available.

**Note:** It is possible that GPS location information is not available at the time of the crash; in this case, Emergency Assistance will still attempt to place an emergency call.

**Note:** It is possible that the emergency services will not receive the GPS coordinates; in this case, hands-free communication with an emergency operator is available.

**Note:** The emergency operator may also receive information from the cellular network such as cell phone number, cell phone location and cell phone carrier name independent from SYNC Emergency Assistance.

## Emergency Assistance may not work if:

- Your cell phone or Emergency Assistance hardware sustains damage in the crash
- The vehicle battery or the system has no power.
- A crash ejects your cell phone from your vehicle.
- You do not have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in your cell phone.
- You are in a European country or region where the SYNC Emergency Assistance cannot place the call. Visit the regional Ford website for details

## Important Information about the Emergency Assistance Feature

Emergency Assistance does not currently call emergency services in the following markets: Albania, Belarus, Bosnia and Herzegovina, Macedonia, Netherlands, Ukraine, Moldova and Russia.

Visit the regional Ford website for latest details.

## Emergency Assistance Privacy Notice

When you switch on Emergency Assistance, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut off. This feature has the capability to disclose your location information to the emergency operator or other details about your vehicle or crash to provide the most appropriate emergency services.

If you do not want to disclose this information, do not switch on the feature.

## Where Am I?

### For vehicle location and information select:

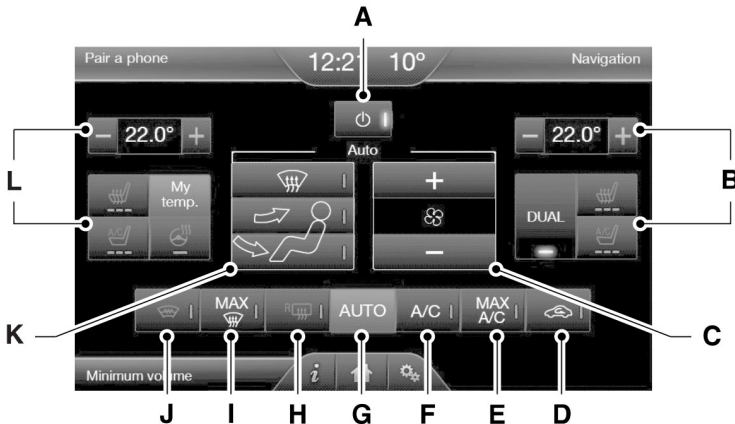
Menu Item	Action and Description
Information	
Help	
<b>Then select:</b>	
Where Am I?	View your vehicle's current location, if your vehicle is equipped with navigation. If your vehicle is not equipped with navigation, you do not see this button.

## CLIMATE

Touch the lower right corner on the touchscreen to access your climate control features. Depending on your vehicle line

and option package, your climate screen may look different from this screen.

**Note:** You can switch temperature units between Fahrenheit and Celsius. See **Settings** (page 352).



E191835

- A **Power:** Touch to switch the system off and on. Outside air cannot enter your vehicle when you switch off the system.
- B **Passenger settings:** Touch + or – to adjust the temperature.  
Touch the heated seat icon to turn the heated seat off and on (if equipped).  
Touch the climate-controlled seat icon to turn the climate-controlled seat off and on (if equipped).  
Touch **DUAL** to switch on the passenger temperature control.
- C **Fan speed:** Touch + or - to adjust fan speed.  
**Note:** When the system is controlling the fan speed automatically, all the fan speed indicators turn off.
- D **Recirculated air:** Touch to switch the recirculated air on or off which may reduce the amount of time needed to cool down the interior and help reduce odors from reaching the interior. Recirculated air also engages automatically when MAX A/C or MAX defrost is selected and may be engaged manually in any airflow mode except defrost. It may also turn off in all airflow modes except MAX A/C and MAX defrost to reduce fog potential.

- E **MAX A/C:** Touch to cool your vehicle with recirculated air. Touch again for normal A/C operation. MAX A/C distributes air through instrument panel vents and may help reduce odors from entering your vehicle. MAX A/C is more economical and efficient than normal A/C mode.
- F **A/C:** Touch to switch the air conditioning on or off. Use A/C with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency. A/C engages automatically in MAX A/C, defrost and footwell/defrost.
- G **AUTO:** Touch to engage automatic operation, then set the temperature using the temperature control. The system automatically controls fan speed, airflow distribution, A/C on or off and the use of fresh or recirculated air.
- H **Heated rear window:** Turns the heated rear window on and off. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 121).
- I **MAX Defrost:** Distributes outside air through the windshield air vents and automatically turns the air conditioning on. The fan is set to the highest speed and the temperature to HI. When the air distribution is set in this position, you are unable to select recirculated air or manually adjust the fan speed and temperature control.
- J **Heated windscreen:** Press the button to clear the heated windscreen of thin ice and fog.
- K **Manual airflow distribution controls: Footwell and Defrost:** Distributes air through the windshield defroster vents, demister vents, floor vents and rear seat floor vents, and provides outside air to reduce window fogging. **Panel:** Distributes air through the instrument panel vents. **Panel and Floor:** Distributes air through the instrument panel vents, demister vents, floor vents and rear seat floor vents. **Floor:** Distributes air through the demister vents, floor vents and rear seat floor vents. **Defrost:** Touch to clear the windshield of fog and thin ice. Touch again to return to the previous airflow selection. When on, defrost provides outside air to reduce window fogging and distributes air through the windshield defroster vents and demister vents.
- L **Driver settings:** Touch + or – to adjust the temperature.  
 Touch the heated seat icon to turn the heated seat off and on (if equipped).  
 Touch the climate-controlled seat icon to turn the climate-controlled seat off and on (if equipped).  
 Touch **MyTemp** to select your preset temperature setpoint. Touch and hold **MyTemp** to save a new preset temperature setpoint.  
 Touch the heated steering wheel icon to turn the heated steering wheel on and off (if equipped).

## Climate Control Voice Commands



Press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following or a similar command:

Voice commands	
Climate On	
Climate Off	
Set temperature	Adjust the temperature to between 15.0 - 30.0°C or 59 - 86°F.

## NAVIGATION

**Note:** The navigation SD card must be in the SD card slot to operate the navigation system. If you need a replacement SD card, contact an authorized dealer.

**Note:** The SD card slot is spring-loaded. To remove the SD card, just push the card in and release it. Do not attempt to pull the card out to remove it; this could cause damage.

Your navigation system is comprised of two main features, destination mode and map mode.

## Destination Mode

To set a destination press the green corner of your touchscreen, then the press:

Menu Item
Dest.
<b>Choose any of the following:</b>
My Home
Favorites
Previous Destinations
Point of Interest
Emergency
Street Address
Intersection
City Center



# SYNC™ 2

Menu Item
Latitude/Longitude
Edit Route
Cancel Route

To set your destination, enter the necessary information into the highlighted text fields (in any order).

**For an address destination entry, press:**

Menu Item	Action and Description
Go	Pressing the this button makes the address location appear on the map.

**To choose a previous destination, press:**

Menu Item	Action and Description
Previous Destinations	The last 20 destinations you have selected appear.

**Once you have chosen you destination press:**

Menu Item	Action and Description
Set as Dest	To make this your destination. You can also choose to set this as a waypoint (have the system route to this point on the way to your current destination) or save it as a favorite. You can then choose your route from three different options.
	Fastest Route Uses the fastest moving roads possible.
	Shortest Route Uses the shortest distance possible.
	Eco Route Uses the most fuel-efficient route.
Avoid Areas	Your pre-set selections are considered when your route is calculated. For more information on these selections, see <b>Setting Your Navigation Preferences</b> later in this chapter.

## To begin navigation press:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Start Route	You can cancel the route or have the system demo the route for you. During route guidance, you can press the talking bubble icon that appears in the upper right navigation corner (green bar) if you want the system to repeat route guidance information. When the system repeats the last guidance instruction, it updates the distance to the next guidance instruction, since it detects when the vehicle is moving.

## To set route preferences press:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Route Prefs	In route preferences you can to set preferences like avoiding motorways, tollroads, ferries and car trains or tunnels.

**Note:** If your vehicle is on a recognized road and you do not press the **Start Route** button, the system defaults to the Fastest Route option and begins guidance.

## Michelin Travel Guide

The Michelin travel guide is a service which provides additional information about certain places of interests (POI) such as restaurants, hotels and touristic sites (if available).

If you have paired your phone with the system, you can press the phone button to directly establish a call with the selected POI.

**Note:** Not all features are available in all languages and countries.

## Point of Interest (POI) Categories

Main categories
Fuel Station
Parking
Food, Drink and Dining
Automotive
Travel and Transportation
Shopping
Financial
Entertainment & Arts
Emergency
Recreation & Sports
Community

Main categories
Government
Health and Medicine
Domestic Services

To expand these listings, press the + in front of the listing.

The system also allows you to sort alphabetically or by distance.

## Setting Your Navigation Preferences



Select settings for the system to take into account when planning your route.

### To access the settings options, press

Menu Item
Settings
Navigation
<b>Then select any of the following:</b>

### Map Preferences

Menu Item	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions	
Map Preferences		
Then select any of the following:		
Breadcrumbs	Display your vehicle's previously traveled route with white dots. You can switch this feature:	
	On	Off
Turn List Format	Have the system display your turn list	
	Top to Bottom	Bottom to Top
Parking POI Notification	When parking point of interest notification is on, the icons display on the map when you get close to your destination. This may not be very useful in dense areas, and may clutter the map when other points of interest display. Set the automatic parking point of interest notification. You can switch this feature:	
	On	Off

## Route Preferences

Menu Item	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions	
Route Preferences		
Then select any of the following:		
Preferred Route	Set the automatic parking point of interest notification. When parking point of interest notification is on, the icons display on the map when you get close to your destination. This may not be very useful in dense areas, and may clutter the map when other points of interest display. Switch this feature:	
	On	Off
Always use Preferred Route	Bypass route selection in destination programming. The system only calculates one route based on preferred route setting.	
Eco Time Penalty	Select a low, medium or high cost for the calculated Eco Route. The higher the setting, the longer the time allotment is for the route.	
Avoid	These features allow you to choose to have the system avoid motorways, toll roads, ferries, car trains and tunnels when planning your route. Switch these features:	
	On	Off

## Navigation Preferences

Menu Item	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions	
Navigation Preferences		
Then select any of the following:		
Hazard Spot Warning	Have the system activate hazard spot warning in countries where legally allowed.	
Guidance Prompts	Select the type of prompts the system uses.	
Auto - Fill State/Province	Have the system automatically fill in the state and province based on the information already entered into the system. You can switch this feature:	
	On	Off

## Traffic Preferences

Menu Item	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions	
Traffic Preferences		
Then select any of the following:		
Avoid Traffic Problems	You can choose how you want the system to handle traffic problems along your route.	
	Automatic	Have the system reroute you to avoid traffic incidents that develop and impact the current route. The system does not provide a traffic alert notification
	Manual	Have the system always provide a traffic alert notification for traffic incidents along the planned route. You have a choice to accept or ignore the notification before making the route deviation.
Traffic alert notification	Activate traffic alert notifications on or off.	
Traffic Icon Settings	Have the system avoid traffic problems automatically.	
	Switch traffic alert notifications on or off.	
	Have the system display accident icons.	
	Have the system display traffic jam icons.	
	Have the system display closed roads.	
	Have the system display road work icons.	
	Have the system display incident icons.	
	Have the system display icons for areas where difficult driving conditions may occur.	
	Have the system display icons for areas where snow and ice on the road may occur.	
Have the system display any smog icons.		

Menu Item	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions
	Have the system display weather warning icons.
	Have the system display where there may be reduced visibility.
	Have the system display icons to recommend switching on your radio for traffic announcements.

## Avoid Area

Menu Item	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions
Avoid Areas	Choose areas which you want the system to avoid when calculating a route for you
<b>Then select any of the following:</b>	
Add	Once you make a selection, the system tries to avoid the area(s) if possible for all routes. To program an entry, press:
Delete	To delete a section choose the listing on the screen. The screen will change, then press:

## Map Mode

Press the green bar in the upper right area of the touchscreen to view map mode. Map mode shows advanced viewing comprised of both 2D city maps as well as 3D landmarks (when available).

2D city maps show detailed outlines of buildings, visible land use and land elements and detailed railway infrastructure for the most essential cities around the globe. These maps also contain features, such as town blocks, building footprints and railways.

3D landmarks appear as clear, visible objects that are typically recognizable and have a certain tourist value. The 3D landmarks appear in 3D map mode only. Coverage varies and improves with updated map releases.



E174016

Change the appearance of the map display by repeatedly pressing the arrow button in the upper left corner of the screen. It toggles between three different map modes:



**Heading up (2D map)** This always shows the direction of forward travel to be upward on the screen. This view is available for map scales up to 3 mph (5 km/h).



**North up (2D map)** always shows the northern direction to be upward on the screen.



**3D map mode** provides an elevated perspective of the map. This viewing angle can be adjusted and the map can be rotated 180

degrees by touching the map twice, and then dragging your finger along the shaded bar with arrows at the bottom of the map.

## You can also select the following options:

Menu Items	
View	Switches between full map, street list and exit view in route guidance.
Menu	Displays a pop-up box that allows direct access to navigation settings.



Press the speaker button on the map to mute route guidance. When the light on the button illuminates, the feature is on. The speaker button appears on the map only when route guidance is active.



Re-center the map by pressing this icon whenever you scroll the map away from your vehicle's current location.

## Auto Zoom

Press the green bar to access map mode, then select the **+** or **-** zoom button to bring up the zoom level and Auto buttons on the touchscreen. When you press **Auto**, Auto Zoom turns on and **Auto** displays in the bottom left corner of the screen in the map scale. The map zoom level then

synchronizes with vehicle speed. The slower your vehicle is traveling, the farther in the map zooms in; the faster your vehicle is traveling, the farther the map zooms out. To switch the feature off, just press the **+** or **-** button again.

In 3D mode, rotate the map view by swiping your finger across the shaded bar with the arrows.

The ETA box under the zoom buttons appears when a route is active and displays the distance and time to your destination. If the button is pressed, a pop up appears with the destination listed (and waypoint if applicable) along with mileage and time to destination. You may also select to have either the estimated time to reach your destination or your estimated arrival time.

## Map Icons



**Vehicle mark** shows the current location of your vehicle. It stays in the center of the map display, except when in scroll mode.



**Scroll cursor** allows you to scroll the map; the fixed icon is in the center of the screen. The map position closest to the cursor is in a window on the top center part of the screen.



**Address book entry default icon(s)** indicates the location on the map of an address book entry. This is the default symbol shown after the entry has been stored to the Address Book by any method other than the map. You can select from any of the 22 icons available. You can use each icon more than once.



**Home** indicates the location on the map currently stored as the home position. You can only save one address from the Address

Book as your Home entry. You cannot change this icon.



**POI (Point Of Interest) icons**

indicate locations of any point of interest categories you choose to display on the map. You can

choose to display three point of interest categories on the map at one time.



**Starting point** indicates the starting point of a planned route.



**Waypoint** indicates the location of a waypoint on the map. The number inside the circle is different for each waypoint and represents

the position of the waypoint in the route list.



**Destination symbol** indicates the ending point of a planned route.



**Next maneuver point** indicates the location of the next turn on the planned route.



**No GPS symbol** indicates that insufficient GPS satellite signals are available for accurate map positioning. This icon may display

under normal operation in an area with poor GPS access.

## Quick-touch Buttons

When in map mode, touch anywhere on the map display to access the following options:

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Set as Dest	Touch this button to select a scrolled location on the map as your destination. You may scroll the map by pressing your index finger on the map display. When you reach the desired location, simply let go and then touch this button.	
Set as Waypoint	Touch this button to set the current location as a waypoint.	
Save to Favorites	Touch this button to save the current location to your favorites.	
POI Icons	Touch this button to select icons to display on the map. You can select up to three icons to display on the map at the same time. You can switch these features:	
	On	Off
Cancel Route	Touch this button to cancel the active route.	



## View/Edit Route

**Access these features when a route is active:**

Menu Item
View Route
Edit Destination/Waypoints
Edit Turn List
Detour
Edit Route Preferences
Edit Traffic Preferences
Cancel Route

HERE is the digital map provider for the navigation application. If you find map data errors, you may report them directly to HERE by going to [www.here.com](http://www.here.com). HERE evaluates all reported map errors and responds with the result of their investigation by e-mail.

## Navigation Map Updates

Annual navigation map updates are available for purchase through your dealership.

## Navigation Voice Commands



When in navigation mode, press the voice button on the steering wheel controls.

**After the tone, say any of the following or a similar command:**

Voice command
Destination
Zoom Out
Zoom In
Where Am I
help

**The following commands can only be used when a navigation route is active:**

Voice command
Detour
Cancel Route
Show Route
Repeat Instruction
Turn List

## One-shot Destination Street Address

**To set a destination with voice commands, you can say:**

Voice Command	Action and Description
Find an Address	The system asks you to say the full address. The system displays an example on-screen.

You can then speak the address naturally, such as "One two three four Main Street, Anytown".

## SYNC™ TROUBLESHOOTING

Your SYNC system is easy to use. However, should questions arise, please refer to the tables below.

To check your cell phone's compatibility, visit the regional Ford website.

Cell phone issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
A lot of background noise during a phone call.	The audio control settings on your cell phone may be affecting SYNC performance.	Refer to your device's manual about audio adjustments.
During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
		Make sure that the microphone for SYNC is not set to off.
SYNC is not able to download my phonebook.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
		Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by selecting the option to add.
		You must switch on your cell phone and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC.

Cell phone issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
The system says "Phone-book down-loaded" but my SYNC phone-book is empty or is missing contacts.	Limitations on your cell phone's capability.	Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by selecting the option to add.
		If the missing contacts are stored on your SIM card, try moving them to your cell phone's memory.
		Remove any pictures or special ring tones associated with the missing contact.
		You must switch on your cell phone and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC.
I am having trouble connecting my cell phone to SYNC.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
		Try deleting your device from SYNC and deleting SYNC from your device, then trying again.
		Always check the security and auto accept prompt settings relative to the SYNC Bluetooth connection on your cell phone.
		Update your cell phone's firmware.
		Switch off the auto download setting.
Text messaging is not working on SYNC.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
	iPhone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Go to your cell phone's Settings.</li> <li>Go to the Bluetooth Menu.</li> <li>Make sure the connection status shows Not Connected.</li> <li>Press the blue circle to enter the next menu.</li> <li>Turn on Show Notifications.</li> <li>Turn on Sync Contacts.</li> </ul>

# SYNC™ 2

Cell phone issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
		Your iPhone is now set up to forward incoming text messages to SYNC. Repeat these steps for every other Sync vehicle you are connected to. Your iPhone will only forward incoming text messages to SYNC if it is unlocked. Replying to text messages using SYNC is not supported by iPhone. Text messages from WhatsApp and Facebook Messenger are not supported.
Audible text messages do not work on my cell phone.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	<p>Your cell phone must support downloading text messages through Bluetooth to receive incoming text messages.</p> <p>Access the text messaging menu of SYNC to see if your cell phone supports the feature. Press the <b>PHONE</b> button and then scroll and select the option for text messaging, then press <b>OK</b>.</p>
	This is a cell phone limitation.	Because each cell phone is different, refer to your device's manual for the specific cell phone you are pairing. In fact, there can be differences between cell phones due to brand, model, service provider and software version.

USB and media issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
I am having trouble connecting my device.	Possible device malfunction.	Try switching off the device, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
		Make sure you are using the manufacturer's cable.
		Make sure correctly insert the USB cable to the device and your vehicle's USB port.
		Make sure that the device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings.

# SYNC™ 2

USB and media issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
SYNC does not recognize my device when I start my vehicle.	This is a device limitation.	Make sure you are not leaving the device in your vehicle during very hot or cold temperatures.
Bluetooth audio does not stream.	This is a device-dependent feature.	Make sure you connect the device to SYNC and press play on your device.
	The device is not connected.	
SYNC does not recognize music that is on my device.	Your music files may not contain the correct artist, song title, album or genre information.	Make sure that all song details are populated.
	The file may be corrupted.	Try replacing the corrupt file with a new version.
	The song may have copyright protection that does not allow it to play.	Some devices require you to change the USB settings from mass storage to media transfer protocol class.
When I connect my iPhone or iPod Touch through the USB and Bluetooth Audio at the same time, I sometimes do not hear any sound.	This is a device limitation.	From the iPhone or iPod Touch music now playing screen, select the audio device airplay icon at the very bottom of your iPhone or iPod Touch screen.
		To listen to the iPhone or iPod Touch through Bluetooth Audio, select SYNC.
		To listen to the iPhone or iPod Touch through USB, select Dock Connector.

Voice command issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
SYNC does not understand what I am saying.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the cell phone voice commands and the media voice commands at the beginning of their respective sections.
		Refer to the audio display during an active voice session to find a list of voice commands there.
	You may be speaking too soon or at the wrong time.	The microphone for the system is either in your rear view mirror or in the headliner just above the windshield.
SYNC does not understand the name of a song or artist.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the media voice commands at the beginning of the media section.
	You may not be saying the name exactly as the system saved it.	Say the song or artist exactly as the system saved it. If you say, "Play Artist Prince", the system does not play music by Prince and the Revolution or Prince and the New Power Generation.
		Make sure you are saying the complete title such as "California remix featuring Jennifer Nettles".
		If the song titles are in capital letters, you have to spell them. LOLA requires you to say "L-O-L-A".
	The system may not be reading the name the same way you are saying it.	Do not use special characters in the title, as the system does not recognize them.
SYNC does not understand or is calling the wrong contact when I want to make a call.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the cell phone voice commands at the beginning of the cell phone section.
		You can also use the cell phone and media suggestion lists to get a list of possible suggestions when the system cannot fully understand you. See <b>Using Voice Recognition</b> (page 306).

Voice command issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
	You may not be saying the name exactly as the system saved it.	Make sure you are saying the name exactly as the system saved it. For example, if the contact name is Joe Wilson, say "Call Joe Wilson".
		The system works better if you list full names such as "Joe Wilson" rather than "Joe".
	Contacts in your phonebook may be very short and similar or they may contain special characters.	Do not use special characters such as 123 or ICE as the system does not recognize them.
	Your phonebook contacts may be in capital letters.	If the contacts are in capital letters, you have to spell them. JAKE requires you to say "Call J-A-K-E".
The SYNC voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign names stored on my cell phone.	You may be saying the foreign names using the currently selected language for SYNC.	SYNC applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the contact names stored on your cell phone.
		<b>Helpful Hint:</b> You can select your contact manually. Press <b>PHONE</b> . Select the option for phonebook and then contact name. Press the soft-key option to hear it. SYNC will read the contact name to you, giving you some idea of the pronunciation it is expecting.
The SYNC voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign tracks, artists, albums, genres and playlist names from my media player or USB flash drive.	You may be saying the foreign names using the currently selected language for SYNC.	SYNC applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names stored on your media player or USB flash drive. It is able to make some exceptions for very popular artist names (for example, U2) such that you can always use the English pronunciation for these artists.

# SYNC™ 2

Voice command issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
The system generates voice prompts and the pronunciation of some words may not be accurate for my language.	SYNC uses text-to-speech voice prompt technology.	SYNC uses a synthetically generated voice rather than pre-recorded human voice.
		SYNC offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, "call John Smith") or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, "play artist Madonna").
My previous Bluetooth voice control system allowed me to control the radio, CD, and climate control systems. Why can I not control these systems with SYNC?	The focus of SYNC is to control your mobile devices and the content stored on them.	SYNC offers significant capability beyond the previous system such as dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, "call John Smith") or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, "play artist Madonna").




General		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
The language selected for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display does not match the SYNC language (phone, USB, Bluetooth audio, voice control and voice prompts).	SYNC does not support the currently selected language for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display.	SYNC only supports four languages in a single module for text display, voice control and voice prompts. The country where you bought your vehicle dictates the four languages based on the most popular languages spoken. If the selected language is not available, SYNC remains in the current active language.
		SYNC offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, "call John Smith") or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, play artist Madonna).

SYNC with Touchscreen System Reset
<p>The system has System Reset feature that can be performed if the function of a SYNC feature is lost. This reset is intended to restore functionality and will not erase any information previously stored in the system (such as paired devices, phonebook, call history, text messages, or user settings). To perform a System Reset, press and hold the Seek Up (&gt;&gt;) button while pressing and holding the Radio Power button. After approximately 5 seconds the screen will go black. Allow a 1-2 minutes for the system reset to complete. You may then resume using the SYNC system.</p>


# Appendices


## ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY


### WARNINGS


 Your vehicle has been tested and certified to legislations relating to electromagnetic compatibility (72/245/EEC, UN ECE Regulation 10 or other applicable local requirements). It is your responsibility to make sure that any equipment you have fitted complies with applicable local legislations. Have any equipment fitted by an authorized dealer.

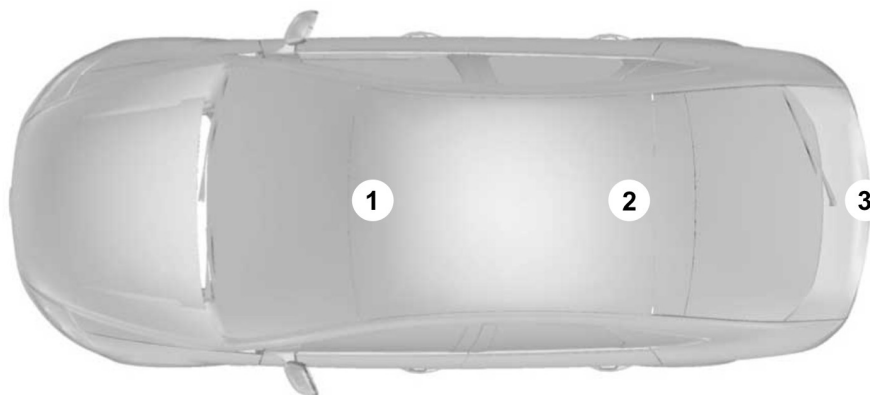
### WARNINGS

 The radio frequency transmitter equipment, for example cellular telephones and amateur radio transmitters, may only be fitted to your vehicle if they keep to the parameters shown in the table below. There are no special provisions or conditions for installations or use.

 Do not mount any transceiver, microphones, speakers, or any other item in the deployment path of the airbag system.

 Do not fasten antenna cables to original vehicle wiring, fuel pipes and brake pipes.

 Keep antenna and power cables at least 3.9 in (10 cm) from any electronic modules and airbags.



E170906

## Appendices

Frequency Band MHz	Maximum output power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
1-30	50 W	3
30-54	50 W	1, 2
68-87.5	50 W	1, 2
142-176	50 W	1, 2
380-512	50 W	1, 2
806-940	10 W	1, 2
1200-1400	10 W	1, 2
1710-1885	10 W	1, 2
1885-2025	10 W	1, 2

**Note:** After the installation of radio frequency transmitters, check for disturbances from and to all electrical equipment in your vehicle, both in the standby and transmit modes.

Check all electrical equipment:

- With the ignition on.
- With the engine running.
- During a road test at various speeds.

Check that electromagnetic fields generated inside your vehicle cabin by the transmitter installed do not exceed applicable human exposure requirements.

## END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

### SYNC End User License Agreement (EULA)

- You have acquired a device ("DEVICE") that includes software licensed by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY") from an affiliate of Microsoft Corporation ("MS"). Those installed software products of MS origin, as well as associated media, printed materials,

## Appendices

---

and "online" or electronic documentation ("MS SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The MS SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.

- The MS SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY. The additional software and systems of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("FORD SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The FORD SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The MS SOFTWARE and/or FORD SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by third party software and service suppliers. The additional software and services of third party origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The MS SOFTWARE, FORD SOFTWARE and THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE hereinafter collectively and individually will be referred to as "SOFTWARE".

**IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICE OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICE, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).**

**GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE:** This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICE and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

### **Description of Other Rights and Limitations**

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, or disassemble nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation.

# Appendices

---

- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation.
- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICE and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.
- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICE, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY or MS may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Security Updates/Digital Rights Management:** Content owners use the WMDRM technology included in your DEVICE to protect their intellectual property, included copyrighted content. Portions of the SOFTWARE on your DEVICE use WMDRM software to access WMDRM-protected content. If the WMDRM software fails to protect the content, content owners may ask Microsoft to revoke the SOFTWARE's ability to use WMDRM to play or copy protected content. This action does not affect unprotected content. When your DEVICE downloads licenses for protected content, you agree that Microsoft may include a revocation list with the licenses. Content owners may require you to upgrade the SOFTWARE on your DEVICE to access their content. If you decline an upgrade, you will not be able to access content that requires the upgrade.
- **Consent to Use of Data:** You agree that MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may collect and use technical information gathered in any manner as part of product support services related to the SOFTWARE or related services. MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and services suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may use this information solely to improve their products or to provide customized services or technologies to you. MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may disclose this information to others, but not in a form that personally identifies you.

# Appendices

- **Internet-Based Services**

**Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICE.

- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components").

If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply.

If MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent make available Supplemental Components, and no other EULA terms are provided, then the terms of this EULA shall apply, except that the MS, Microsoft Corporation or affiliate entity providing the Supplemental Component(s) shall be the licensor of the Supplemental Component(s).

FORD MOTOR COMPANY, MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The MS SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites through the use of the SOFTWARE. The third party sites are not under the control of MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent. Neither MS nor Microsoft Corporation nor their affiliates nor their designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent.

- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICE operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and assumes any risk associated with the use of the DEVICE.

**UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA:**

If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICE on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such

## Appendices

---

SOFTWARE onto the DEVICE as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

### **INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS:**

All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or their affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service providers, their affiliates and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

**EXPORT RESTRICTIONS:** You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including

the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments. For additional information, see <http://www.microsoft.com/exporting/>.

**TRADEMARKS:** This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, MS, Microsoft Corporation, third party software or service providers, their affiliates or suppliers.

**PRODUCT SUPPORT:** Product support for the SOFTWARE is not provided by MS, its parent corporation Microsoft Corporation, or their affiliates or subsidiaries. For product support, please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICE. Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICE.

### **No Liability for Certain Damages:**

EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, MS, MICROSOFT CORPORATION AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT SHALL MS, MICROSOFT CORPORATION AND/OR THEIR AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR ANY AMOUNT IN EXCESS OF U.S. TWO HUNDRED FIFTY DOLLARS (U.S. \$250.00).

# Appendices

- THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY EXPRESSLY BE PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

## Adobe

Contains Adobe® [Flash® Player] or [AIR®] technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated. This [Licensee Product] contains [Adobe® Flash® Player] [Adobe® AIR®] software under license from Adobe Systems Incorporated, Copyright ©1995-2009 Adobe Macromedia Software LLC. All rights reserved. Adobe, Flash and AIR are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

## End User Notice

### **Microsoft® Windows® Mobile for Automotive Important Safety Information**

This system Ford SYNC contains software that is licensed to Manufacturer FORD MOTOR COMPANY by an affiliate of Microsoft Corporation pursuant to a license agreement. Any removal, reproduction, reverse engineering or other unauthorized use of the software from this system in violation of the license agreement is strictly prohibited and may subject you to legal action.

**Read and follow instructions:** Before using your Windows Automotive- based system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("User's Guide"). Not following precautions found in this User's Guide can lead to an accident or other serious consequences.

**Keep User's Guide in vehicle:** When kept in the vehicle, the User's Guide will be a ready reference for you and other users unfamiliar with the Windows Automotive-based system. Please make certain that before using the system for the first time, all persons have access to the User's Guide and read its instructions and safety information carefully.

## WARNING



Operating certain parts of this system while driving can distract your attention away from the road, and possibly cause an accident or other serious consequences. Do not change system settings or enter data non-verbally (using your hands) while driving. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations. This is important since while setting up or changing some functions you might be required to distract your attention away from the road and remove your hands from the wheel.

## General Operation

**Voice Command Control:** Functions within the Windows Automotive-based system may be accomplished using only voice commands. Using voice commands while driving allows you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel.

**Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention. Even occasional short scans to the screen may be hazardous if your attention has been diverted away from your driving task at a critical time.



# Appendices

---

**Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.

**Use of Speech Recognition Functions:** Speech recognition software is inherently a statistical process which is subject to errors. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system and address any errors.

**Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.

**Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can seriously distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious consequences. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.

**Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

**Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.

**Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.

**Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

## **Telenav Software End User License Agreement**

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the Telenav Software. Your use of the Telenav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the Telenav Software.

These terms and conditions represent the agreement ("Agreement") between you and Telenav, Inc. ("Telenav") with respect to the Telenav Software (including upgrades, modifications, or additions thereto) (collectively "Telenav Software"). All references herein to "you" and "your" means you, your employees, agents, and contractors, and any other entity on whose behalf you accept these terms and

# Appendices

---

conditions, all of whom shall also be bound by this Agreement. Additionally, all of your account information, as well as other payment and personal information provided by you to Telenav (directly or through the use of the Telenav Software, is subject to Telenav's privacy policy located at <http://www.telenav.com>.

Telenav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit <http://www.telenav.com> from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

## **1. Safe and Lawful Use**

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the Telenav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the Telenav Software: (a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely; (b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the Telenav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions; (c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the Telenav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked; (d) do not use the Telenav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement; (e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the Telenav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold Telenav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the Telenav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

## **2. Account Information**

You agree: (a) when registering the Telenav Software, to provide Telenav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform Telenav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

## **3. Software License**

Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, Telenav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the Telenav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the Telenav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the Telenav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the Telenav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

### **3.1 License Limitations**

You agree not to do any of the following: (a) reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the Telenav Software or any part thereof; (b) attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the Telenav Software without the prior express written consent of Telenav; (c) remove from the Telenav Software, or alter, any of Telenav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or

# Appendices

---

copyright notices, or other notices or markings; (d) distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the Telenav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the Telenav Software; or (e) use the Telenav Software in any manner that (i) infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party, (ii) violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or (iii) is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the Telenav Software without advanced written permission of Telenav.

## **4. Disclaimers**

To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will Telenav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the Telenav Software. Telenav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the Telenav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the Telenav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the Telenav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the Telenav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.

TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

## **5. Limitation of Liability**

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENAV AND OF ALL OF TELENAV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR

# Appendices

---

THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

## **6. Arbitration and Governing Law**

You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the Telenav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial.

This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of laws provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both Telenav and you agree to submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

## **7. Assignment**

You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the Telenav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the

Telenav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to Telenav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the Telenav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, Telenav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

## **8. Miscellaneous**

### **8.1**

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between Telenav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

### **8.2**

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, Telenav retains all right, title and interest in and to the Telenav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and Telenav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

### **8.3**

By using the Telenav Software, you consent to receive from Telenav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the Telenav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. Telenav may provide such

# Appendices

---

Notices by posting them on Telenav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the Telenav Software.

## 8.4

Telenav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

## 8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

## 8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including," and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation."

## 9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this

Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav's third party vendor licensors:

## 9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav ("Telenav") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4.

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

## TERMS AND CONDITIONS

# Appendices

---

## 9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd ("NAV2") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 20xx. All rights reserved.

### ***Permitted Use.***

You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

### ***Restrictions.***

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any

positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

### ***Warning.***

The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

### ***No Warranty.***

This Data is provided to you "as is," and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

### ***Disclaimer of Warranty:***

TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

# Appendices

---

## ***Disclaimer of Liability:***

TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

## ***Export Control.***

You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent

that any such export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

## ***Entire Agreement.***

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

## ***Governing Law.***

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert "Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert "The Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

## ***Government End Users.***

If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use," and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

# Appendices

## NOTICE OF USE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/  
SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/  
SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425  
West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois  
60606

This Data is a commercial item as  
defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to  
these End-User Terms under which this  
Data was provided.

© 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal  
government agency, or any federal official  
refuses to use the legend provided herein,  
the Contracting Officer, federal  
government agency, or any federal official  
must notify HERE prior to seeking  
additional or alternative rights in the Data.

### I. US/Canada Territory

A. United States Data. The End-User  
Terms for any Application containing  
Data for the United States shall contain  
the following notices:

"HERE holds a non-exclusive license  
from the United States Postal  
Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4®  
information."

"©United States Postal Service®  
20XX. Prices are not established,  
controlled or approved by the United  
States Postal Service®. The following  
trademarks and registrations are  
owned by the USPS: United States  
Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4."

B. Canada Data. The following provi-  
sions apply to the Data for Canada,  
which may include or reflect data from  
third party licensors ("Third Party  
Data"), including Her Majesty the Queen  
in Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"),  
Canada Post Corporation ("Canada  
Post") and the Department of Natural  
Resources of Canada ("NRCan"):

1. Disclaimer and Limitation: Client  
agrees that its use of the Third Party  
Data is subject to the following provi-  
sions:

a. Disclaimer: The Third Party Data  
is licensed on an "as is" basis. The  
licensors of such data, including Her  
Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan,  
make no guarantees, representa-  
tions or warranties respecting such  
data, either express or implied,  
arising by law or otherwise, including  
but not limited to, effectiveness,  
completeness, accuracy or fitness  
for a particular purpose.

b. Limitation on Liability: The Third  
Party Data licensors, including Her  
Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan,  
shall not be liable: (i) in respect of  
any claim, demand or action, irre-  
spective of the nature of the cause  
of the claim, demand or action  
alleging any loss, injury or damages,  
direct or indirect, which may result  
from the use or possession of such  
Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of  
revenues or contracts, or any other  
consequential loss of any kind  
resulting from any defect in the  
Data.



## Appendices

---

2. Copyright Notice: In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: "This data includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved."

3. End-User Terms: Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources Canada ("NRCan"). Such data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data,

either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data.

End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.

# Appendices

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía ("INEGI"):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice:  
"Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"

## III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

### Territory Notice

Ecuador "INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION N° IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011"  
"source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®"

Guade-  
loupe,  
French  
Guiana  
and  
Marti-  
nique  
Mexico "Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"

## IV. Middle East Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

### Country Notice

Jordan "© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre". The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client's license with respect to the Jordan Data.

B. Jordan Data. Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE's database for the country of Jordan ("Jordan Data") for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes of the foregoing, "Enterprise Applications" shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization Internet applications or for providing geocoding services.

## V. Europe Territory

### A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1. General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes. Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium. Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: "Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministère de l'Équipement et des Transports."

B. Paper Maps. With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client's entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey ("OS") to create and sell paper maps, Client's paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client's complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic

is conditioned on Client's obtaining prior written consent from Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client's obtaining a permit from Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landvermessungsämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessungswesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey ("OS") may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies) Notice

# Appendices

Austria "© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen"

Croatia  
Cyprus,  
Estonia,  
Latvia,  
Lithuania,  
Moldova,  
Poland,  
Slovenia  
and/or  
Ukraine

"© EuroGeographics"

France "source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®"

Germany "Die Grundlegendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen"

Great Britain "Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010"

Greece "Copyright Geomatics Ltd."

Hungary "Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd."

Italy "La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana."

Norway "Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority"

Portugal "Source: IgeoE – Portugal"

Spain "Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG"

Sweden "Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden."

Switzerland "Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie."

E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client's compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.

## VI. Australia Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited ([www.pasma.com.au](http://www.pasma.com.au)).

# Appendices

---

Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelomatics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice: "Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors."

## VII. China Territory

### *Personal Use Only*

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i) view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

### *Restrictions*

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b)

with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

### *Limited Warranty*

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

### *rigCustomer Remedies*

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

# Appendices

---

## **No Other Warranty:**

EXCEPT FOR THE LIMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

## **Limited Liability:**

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2'S OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

## **Export Control**

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

## **IP Protection**

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

## **Entire Agreement**

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2 (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

## **Governing Law.**

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

## **Gracenote® Copyright**

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright© 2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents #5,987,525, #6,061,680, #6,154,773, #6,161,132, #6,230,192, #6,230,207, #6,240,459, #6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent: #6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDb are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

## **Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)**

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers ("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device.

This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote.

You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content"), Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide, including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at [www.gracenote.com](http://www.gracenote.com) for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

## Appendices

---

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER.

© Gracenote 2007.

### **Vehicle with SYNC only United States and Mexico**

FCC ID: KMHSG1G1

IC: 1422A-SG1G1

#### **Mexico**

Model: KMHSG1P1

NOM-121-SCT1-2009

The operation of this equipment is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This equipment or device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this equipment or device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### **Vehicle with SYNC with Touchscreen/My Touch**

FCC ID: KMHSYNGG2

IC: 1422A-SYNGG2

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

#### **WARNING**



Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

The antenna used for this transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.



# Index

## A

A/C	
See: Climate Control.....	111
About This Manual.....	7
ABS	
See: Brakes.....	160
ABS driving hints	
See: Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....	160
Accessories	
See: Replacement Parts Recommendation.....	10
ACC	
See: Using Adaptive Cruise Control.....	182
Active City Stop.....	200
Principle of Operation.....	200
Switching the System Off and On.....	201
Active Park Assist.....	172
Deactivating the Active Park Assist Feature.....	175
Parallel Parking, Perpendicular Parking, Park Out Assist.....	172
Troubleshooting the System.....	176
Adaptive Headlamps.....	68
Adjusting the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Manual Adjustable Steering Column.....	56
Adjusting the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Power Adjustable Steering Column.....	56
Easy Entry and Exit Feature.....	57
Memory Feature.....	57
AFS	
See: Adaptive Headlamps.....	68
Air Conditioning	
See: Climate Control.....	111
Air Vents.....	111
Center Air Vents.....	111
Side Air Vents.....	111
Alarm	
See: Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Integral Battery.....	53
See: Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Interior Sensor.....	51
Ambient Lighting.....	71
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Integral Battery.....	53
Alarm System.....	53
Arming the Alarm.....	54
Disarming the Alarm.....	54
Full and Reduced Guard.....	53
Triggering the Alarm.....	53
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Interior Sensor.....	51
Alarm System.....	51
Arming the Alarm.....	52
Disarming the Alarm.....	52
Full and Reduced Guard.....	52
Triggering the Alarm.....	51
Appendices.....	408
Ashtray.....	137
At a Glance.....	11
Audible Warnings and Indicators.....	85
Headlamps On Warning Chime.....	85
Key in Ignition Warning Chime.....	85
Keyless Warning Alert.....	85
Parking Brake On Warning Chime.....	85
Audio Control.....	57
MODE.....	57
Seek, Next or Previous.....	57
Audio Input Jack.....	303
Audio System.....	292
General Information.....	292
Audio Unit.....	293
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/CD/SYNC.....	296
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: Sony AM/FM/CD.....	297
Menu Structure.....	298
Autolamps.....	64
Windshield Wiper Activated Headlamps.....	64
Automatic Climate Control - Vehicles With: Heated Windshield.....	114
Automatic Climate Control - Vehicles With: Sony Audio System.....	117
Automatic Climate Control - Vehicles Without: Heated Windshield.....	116
Automatic High Beam Control.....	65
Activating the System.....	66
Manually Overriding the System.....	66

# Index

Automatic Transmission.....	155	Capacities and Specifications - 1.5L	
Automatic Transmission Adaptive Learning.....	159	Duratorq-TDCi Diesel.....	287
Emergency Park Position Release Lever.....	157	Capacities.....	287
If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow.....	159	Specifications.....	287
Selector Lever Positions.....	155	Capacities and Specifications - 1.5L	
SelectShift Automatic™ Transmission.....	156	EcoBoost™.....	283
Automatic Transmission Fluid		Capacities.....	283
Check.....	248	Specifications.....	283
Auto-Start-Stop.....	146	Capacities and Specifications - 1.6L	
Switching the System Off and On.....	147	Diesel.....	288
Using Start-Stop (Automatic Transmissions).....	146	Capacities.....	288
Using Start-Stop (Manual Transmissions).....	146	Specifications.....	288
Autowipers.....	60	Capacities and Specifications - 2.0L	
Auxiliary Heater.....	122	Diesel.....	289
Fuel Operated Heater.....	125	Capacities.....	289
Fuel Operated Parking Heater.....	122	Specifications.....	290
Auxiliary Power Points.....	135	Capacities and Specifications - 2.0L	
12 Volt DC Power Point.....	135	EcoBoost™.....	284
230 Volt Power Point.....	135	Capacities.....	284
		Specifications.....	284
<b>B</b>		Capacities and Specifications -	
Blind Spot Information System.....	194	2.5L.....	285
Blind Spot Information System (BLIS™) with Cross Traffic Alert.....	194	Capacities.....	285
Bonnet Lock		Specifications.....	286
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	237	Capacities and Specifications.....	277
Brake and Clutch Fluid Check.....	248	Cargo Nets.....	208
Brakes.....	160	Luggage retention net.....	208
General Information.....	160	Car Wash	
Breaking-In.....	221	See: Cleaning the Exterior.....	257
Brakes and Clutch.....	221	Catalytic Converter.....	152
Engine.....	221	Driving with a Catalytic Converter.....	152
Tires.....	221	Center Console.....	137
Bulb Specification Chart.....	255	Rear Seat Armrest.....	137
<b>C</b>		Changing a Bulb.....	252
Capacities and Specifications - 1.0L		Headlamp.....	252
EcoBoost™.....	281	LED Lamps.....	253
Capacities.....	281	Replacing the License Plate Lamp Bulb.....	255
Specifications.....	282	Reverse Lamp.....	253
		Changing a Fuse.....	236
Capacities and Specifications - 1.5L		Fuses.....	236
Duratorq-TDCi Diesel.....	287	Changing a Road Wheel.....	268
Capacities.....	287	Installing a Road Wheel.....	271
Specifications.....	287	Jacking and Lifting Points.....	268
Capacities and Specifications - 1.5L		Lug Nuts.....	268
EcoBoost™.....	283	Removing a Road Wheel.....	270
Capacities.....	283	Vehicle Jack.....	268
Specifications.....	283	Vehicles with a Spare Wheel.....	268
Capacities and Specifications - 1.6L			
Diesel.....	288		
Capacities.....	288		
Specifications.....	288		
Capacities and Specifications - 2.0L			
Diesel.....	289		
Capacities.....	289		
Specifications.....	290		
Capacities and Specifications - 2.0L			
EcoBoost™.....	284		
Capacities.....	284		
Specifications.....	284		
Capacities and Specifications -			
2.5L.....	285		
Capacities.....	285		
Specifications.....	286		
Capacities and Specifications.....	277		
Cargo Nets.....	208		
Luggage retention net.....	208		
Car Wash			
See: Cleaning the Exterior.....	257		
Catalytic Converter.....	152		
Driving with a Catalytic Converter.....	152		
Center Console.....	137		
Rear Seat Armrest.....	137		
Changing a Bulb.....	252		
Headlamp.....	252		
LED Lamps.....	253		
Replacing the License Plate Lamp Bulb.....	255		
Reverse Lamp.....	253		
Changing a Fuse.....	236		
Fuses.....	236		
Changing a Road Wheel.....	268		
Installing a Road Wheel.....	271		
Jacking and Lifting Points.....	268		
Lug Nuts.....	268		
Removing a Road Wheel.....	270		
Vehicle Jack.....	268		
Vehicles with a Spare Wheel.....	268		

# Index

Changing the 12V Battery.....	249	Cruise Control.....	58
Changing the Wiper Blades.....	249	Principle of Operation.....	181
Changing the Front Wiper Blades.....	249	Type 1.....	58
Changing the Rear Window Wiper		Type 2.....	58
Blades.....	249	Cruise control	
Checking MyKey System Status.....	41	See: Using Cruise Control.....	181
Checking the Wiper Blades.....	249	Cup Holders.....	137
Child Safety.....	17		
Child Safety Locks - Vehicles With:		<b>D</b>	
Mechanical Child Proof Locks.....	24	Data Recording.....	9
Left-Hand Side.....	24	Daytime Running Lamps.....	65
Right-Hand Side.....	24	Diesel Particulate Filter.....	143
Child Safety Locks - Vehicles With:		Regeneration.....	143
Remote Child Proof Locks.....	24	Digital Radio.....	301
Child Seat Positioning.....	20	General Information.....	301
Cigar Lighter.....	136	Using Digital Audio Broadcast and SYNC	
Cleaning the Alloy Wheels.....	258	with Touchscreen.....	302
Cleaning the Exterior.....	257	Using Digital Audio Broadcast on a	
Body Paintwork Preservation.....	257	Non-Touchscreen.....	301
Cleaning the Chrome Trim.....	257	Direction Indicators.....	69
Cleaning the Headlamps.....	257	Dog Guard.....	212
Cleaning the Rear Window.....	257	Installing behind the front seats.....	212
Cleaning the Interior.....	258	Installing behind the rear seats.....	213
Instrument Cluster Screens, LCD Screens		DPF	
and Radio Screens.....	258	See: Diesel Particulate Filter.....	143
Rear Windows.....	258	Drive Control.....	205
Safety Belts.....	258	Adaptive Steering.....	205
Cleaning the Windows and Wiper		Driver Select Suspension.....	205
Blades.....	257	Driver Airbag.....	27
Clearing All MyKeys.....	39	Driver Alert.....	189
Climate.....	388	Principle of Operation.....	189
Climate Control Voice Commands.....	390	Using Driver Alert.....	190
Climate Control.....	111	Driver Knee Airbag.....	29
Principle of Operation.....	111	Driving Aids.....	189
Climate Controlled Seats.....	133	Driving Hints.....	221
Cooled Seats.....	134	Driving Through Water.....	222
Cold Weather Precautions.....	222	DRL	
Collision Warning System.....	201	See: Daytime Running Lamps.....	65
PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION.....	201		
Coolant Check			
See: Engine Coolant Check.....	247		
Cornering Lamps.....	69		
Creating a MyKey.....	38		
Programming/Changing Configurable			
Settings.....	39		

# Index

## E

Economical Driving.....	221
Accessories.....	222
Anticipation.....	222
Efficient Speed.....	222
Electrical Systems.....	222
Gear Shifting.....	221
Tire Pressures.....	221
Electric Parking Brake.....	160
Applying the Electric Parking brake.....	161
Battery With No Charge.....	163
Parking On a Hill (Vehicles With a Manual Transmission) .....	161
Releasing the Electric Parking Brake.....	162
Electromagnetic Compatibility.....	408
End User License Agreement.....	409
SYNC End User License Agreement (EULA).....	409
Engine Block Heater.....	144
Using the Engine Block Heater.....	145
Engine Coolant Check.....	247
Adding Engine Coolant.....	247
Engine Immobilizer	
See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....	51
Engine Oil Check.....	246
Adding Engine Oil.....	247
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.0L EcoBoost™.....	245
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel.....	246
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.5L EcoBoost™.....	245
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.6L Diesel.....	246
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L Diesel.....	246
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	245
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.5L.....	245
Entertainment.....	366
A/V Inputs.....	373
AM/FM Radio.....	366
Bluetooth Audio.....	373
CD.....	368
SD Card Slot and USB Port.....	370
Supported Media Players, Formats and Metadata Information.....	373
EPB	
See: Electric Parking Brake.....	160

Event Data Recording	
See: Data Recording.....	9
Exterior Mirrors.....	73
Auto-Dimming Feature.....	75
Auto-Folding Mirrors.....	74
Blind Spot Monitor.....	75
Direction Indicator Mirrors.....	75
Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors.....	73
Heated Exterior Mirrors.....	75
Loose Mirror.....	74
Memory Mirrors.....	75
Power Exterior Mirrors.....	73
Power-Folding Mirrors.....	73
Reverse Mirror Dipping.....	74

## F

Fastening the Safety Belts.....	25
Using Safety Belts During Pregnancy.....	25
First Aid Kit.....	224
Flat Tire Inflation	
See: Temporary Mobility Kit.....	260
Floor Mats.....	222
Fog Lamps - Front	
See: Front Fog Lamps.....	67
Fog Lamps - Rear	
See: Rear Fog Lamps.....	67
Front Exterior Overview.....	11
Front Fog Lamps.....	67
Front Parking Aid.....	168
Front Sensing System.....	169
Obstacle Distance Indicator.....	170
Fuel and Refueling.....	148
Fuel Burning Heater	
See: Auxiliary Heater.....	122
Fuel Consumption Figures.....	291
Fuel Consumption.....	154
Calculating Fuel Economy.....	154
Filling the Fuel Tank.....	154
Fuel Filler Funnel Location.....	150
Fuel Quality - Diesel.....	149
Choosing the Right Fuel.....	149
Fuel Quality - Gasoline.....	149
Choosing the Right Fuel.....	149
Fuel Shutoff.....	224
Fuses.....	227

# Index

Fuse Specification Chart.....	227
Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel.....	233
Power Distribution Box.....	227

## G

Gauges.....	78
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge.....	80
Fuel Gauge.....	80
Information Display.....	79
Type 1 and 2.....	78
Type 3.....	79
General Information on Radio	
Frequencies.....	32
Global Opening and Closing.....	73
Closing the Windows.....	73
Opening the Windows.....	73

## H

Hazard Warning Flashers.....	224
Headlamp Exit Delay.....	65
Headlamp Leveling.....	67
Head Restraints.....	126
Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	127
Tilting Head Restraints .....	128
Heated Seats.....	133
Heated Steering Wheel.....	59
Heated Windows and Mirrors.....	121
Heated Exterior Mirror.....	122
Heated Rear Window.....	121
Heated Windshield.....	122
Heating	
See: Climate Control.....	111
Hill Start Assist.....	163
Switching the System On and Off.....	164
Using Hill Start Assist.....	163
Hints on Controlling the Interior	
Climate.....	119
Cooling the Interior Quickly.....	121
General Hints.....	119
Heating the Interior Quickly.....	120
Recommended Settings for Cooling .....	121
Recommended Settings for Heating.....	120
Side Window Defogging in Cold	
Weather.....	121
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock	
Brakes.....	160

Hood Lock	
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	237

## I

Ignition Switch.....	138
Inflatable Safety Belts.....	30
Rear Inflatable Safety Belt.....	30
Information Display Control.....	58
Information Display Control Features.....	59
Information Displays.....	86
General Information.....	86
Information.....	383
Calendar.....	384
Emergency Assistance.....	384
Notifications.....	383

# Index

Information Messages.....	96	Interior Mirror.....	75
Active City Stop.....	96	Auto-Dimming Mirror.....	75
Active Park.....	96	Introduction.....	7
Adaptive Cruise Control.....	97	<b>J</b>	
Airbag.....	97	Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	225
Alarm.....	98	To Connect the Booster Cables.....	225
All-Wheel Drive.....	98	To Start the Engine.....	226
Automatic Engine Shutdown.....	98	<b>K</b>	
Automatic High Beam Control.....	99	Keyless Entry.....	48
Auto Start-Stop.....	99	Disabled Passive Keys.....	50
Blind Spot Information and Cross Traffic		General Information.....	48
Alert System.....	100	Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the	
Climate Control.....	100	Key Blade.....	50
Diesel Messages.....	100	Locking Your Vehicle.....	49
Doors and Locks.....	101	Passive Key.....	49
Driver Alert.....	101	Unlocking Your Vehicle.....	49
Electronic Stability Control.....	102	Keyless Starting.....	138
Engine.....	102	Starting Your Vehicle.....	139
Fuel.....	102	Switching the Ignition On.....	139
Hill Start Assist.....	103	Keys and Remote Controls.....	32
Keys and Keyless Entry.....	103	<b>L</b>	
Lane Keeping System.....	104	Lane Keeping System.....	191
Maintenance.....	104	Lane Keeping Aid.....	193
MyKey.....	105	Lane Keeping Alert.....	191
Park Aid.....	106	Lighting Control.....	63
Park Brake.....	106	Headlamp Flasher.....	64
Power Steering.....	107	High Beams.....	63
Pre-Collision Warning System.....	107	Lighting.....	63
Seats.....	107	General Information.....	63
Starting System.....	108	Load Carriers	
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	108	See: Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....	210
Towing.....	108	Load Carrying.....	207
Traction Control.....	109	General Information.....	207
Transmission.....	109	Load Retaining Fixtures.....	211
Installing Child Seats.....	17	Installing the Load Bracket.....	211
Attaching a Child Seat with Top		Installing the Load Retaining Fixtures.....	211
Tethers.....	20		
Booster Seats.....	18		
Child Seats for Different Mass Groups.....	17		
ISOFIX Anchor Points.....	19		
Top Tether Anchor Points.....	19		
Instrument Cluster.....	78		
Instrument Lighting Dimmer.....	65		
Instrument Panel Overview - LHD.....	14		
Instrument Panel Overview - RHD.....	15		
Interior Lamps.....	70		
Front Interior Lamp.....	70		
Rear Interior Lamp.....	71		

# Index

Locking and Unlocking.....	44
Locking and Unlocking the Doors From	
Inside.....	45
Locking and Unlocking the Doors	
Individually with the Key Blade.....	45
Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the	
Key Blade.....	45
Power Door Locks.....	44
Remote Control.....	44
Locks.....	44
Luggage Anchor Points.....	207
4-door and 5-door.....	207
Hybrid.....	208
Wagon.....	207
Luggage Covers.....	209
Stowing the luggage cover - Estate without	
full size spare wheel.....	210
Lug Nuts	
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	268
Lug Nuts.....	276

## M

Maintenance.....	237
General Information.....	237
Manual Climate Control.....	112
Manual Liftgate.....	46
Closing the Liftgate.....	46
Opening the Liftgate.....	46
Manual Seats.....	128
Manual Transmission.....	155
Selecting Reverse Gear.....	155
Media Hub.....	304
Memory Function.....	131
Easy Entry and Exit Function.....	132
Linking a PreSet Position to Your Remote	
Control or Intelligent Access Key.....	132
Saving a PreSet Position.....	132
Message Center	
See: Information Displays.....	86
Mirrors	
See: Heated Windows and Mirrors.....	121
See: Windows and Mirrors.....	72
Mobile Communications	
Equipment.....	10

Moonroof.....	76
Bounce-Back.....	77
Opening and Closing the Moonroof.....	76
Venting the Moonroof.....	77
MyKey Troubleshooting.....	42
MyKey™.....	38
Principle of Operation.....	38

## N

Navigation.....	390
Destination Mode.....	390
Map Mode.....	396
Michelin Travel Guide.....	392
Navigation Map Updates.....	399
Navigation Voice Commands.....	399
Point of Interest (POI) Categories.....	392
Quick-touch Buttons.....	398
Setting Your Navigation Preferences.....	393

## O

Oil Check	
See: Engine Oil Check.....	246
Opening and Closing the Hood.....	237
Closing the Hood.....	238
Opening the Hood.....	237
Overhead Console.....	137

## P

Parking Aids.....	167
Principle of Operation.....	167
Passenger Airbag.....	28
.....	28
Switching the Passenger Airbag Off.....	28
Switching the Passenger Airbag On.....	29
Passive Anti- Theft System.....	51
Arming the Engine Immobilizer.....	51
Coded Keys.....	51
Disarming the Engine Immobilizer.....	51
Principle of Operation.....	51
PATS	
See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....	51

# Index

Phone.....	375	Remote Control.....	32
Making Calls.....	378	Changing the Remote Control Battery.....	34
Pairing Subsequent Cell Phones.....	377	Integrated Keyhead Transmitters .....	32
Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First		Intelligent Access Key.....	32
Time.....	376	Remote Start .....	35
Phone Menu Options.....	378	Using the Key Blade.....	33
Phone Settings.....	381	Removing a Headlamp.....	250
Phone Voice Commands.....	382	Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	258
Receiving Calls.....	378	Replacement Parts	
Text Messaging.....	379	Recommendation.....	10
Post-Crash Alert System.....	226	Collision Repairs.....	10
Power Door Locks		Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical	
See: Locking and Unlocking.....	44	Repairs.....	10
Power Liftgate.....	46	Warranty on Replacement Parts.....	10
Closing the Liftgate.....	48	Replacing a Lost Key or Remote	
Programming the Liftgate.....	48	Control.....	37
Power Seats - Vehicles With:		Roadside Emergencies.....	224
Multi-Contour Seats.....	129	Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....	210
Multi-Contour Front Seats With Active		Running-In	
Motion .....	130	See: Breaking-In.....	221
Power Lumbar.....	130	Running Out of Fuel.....	150
Power Seats - Vehicles Without:		Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel	
Multi-Contour Seats.....	128	Container.....	151
Power Lumbar.....	129	Filling a Portable Fuel Container.....	151
Power Windows.....	72		
Accessory Delay.....	72		
Bounce-Back.....	72		
One-Touch Down.....	72		
One-Touch Up.....	72		
Window Lock.....	72		
		<b>S</b>	
<b>R</b>		Safety Belt Height Adjustment.....	26
Rear Exterior Overview.....	12	Safety Belt Minder.....	26
Rear Fog Lamps.....	67	Turning the Safety Belt Minder Off.....	26
Rear Parking Aid.....	167	Safety Belts.....	25
Rear Sensing System.....	167	Safety Precautions.....	148
Rear Seat Armrest.....	134	Seats.....	126
Rear Under Floor Storage.....	208	Security.....	51
Rear View Camera.....	177	Settings.....	352
Using the Rear View Camera System.....	178	Clock.....	353
Rear View Camera		Display.....	353
See: Rear View Camera.....	177	Settings.....	357
Rear Window Wiper and Washers.....	62	Sound.....	354
Rear Window Washer.....	62	Vehicle.....	355
Rear Window Wiper.....	62	Side Airbags.....	29
Reduced Engine Performance.....	221	Side Curtain Airbags.....	29
Refueling.....	152	Side Sensing System.....	170
		Distance Indication.....	171
		Sitting in the Correct Position.....	126
		Snow Chains	
		See: Using Snow Chains.....	264



# Index

Speed Control	
See: Cruise Control.....	181
Speed Limiter.....	189
Principle of Operation.....	189
Using the System.....	189
Spinout Detection.....	226
Stability Control.....	166
Principle of Operation.....	166
Starter Switch	
See: Ignition Switch.....	138
Starting a Diesel Engine.....	143
Cold or Hot Engine.....	143
Failure to Start .....	143
Starting a Gasoline Engine.....	140
Automatic Shutdown.....	141
Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes.....	143
Important Ventilating Information.....	143
Switching Off the Vehicle When It Is	
Moving.....	142
Switching Off the Vehicle When it is	
Stationary.....	142
Vehicles with an Ignition Key.....	140
Vehicles with Keyless Start.....	140
Starting and Stopping the Engine.....	138
General Information.....	138
Steering Wheel Lock - Vehicles With:	
Keyless Entry and Push Button	
Start.....	139
Unlocking the Steering Wheel.....	140
Steering Wheel Lock - Vehicles Without:	
Keyless Entry and Push Button	
Start.....	139
Steering Wheel.....	56
Storage Compartments.....	137
Sunroof	
See: Moonroof.....	76
Sun Visors.....	76
Illuminated Vanity Mirror.....	76
Supplementary Restraints System.....	27
Principle of Operation.....	27
Switching Off the Engine.....	144
Vehicles With a Turbocharger.....	144
Symbols Glossary.....	7
SYNC™ 2.....	343
General Information.....	343
SYNC™ Applications and	
Services.....	320
In the Event of a Crash.....	322
Switching Emergency Assistance On and	
Off.....	321
SYNC AppLink.....	323
SYNC Emergency Assistance.....	321
SYNC™.....	305
General Information.....	305
SYNC™ Troubleshooting.....	333
<b>T</b>	
Tailgate	
See: Manual Liftgate.....	46
See: Power Liftgate.....	46
Technical Specifications	
See: Capacities and Specifications.....	277
Temporary Mobility Kit.....	260
Checking the Tire Pressure.....	263
General Information.....	260
Inflating the Tire.....	261
Using the Temporary Mobility Kit.....	260
Tire Care.....	263
Tire Inflation When Punctured	
See: Temporary Mobility Kit.....	260
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	264
Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure	
Monitoring System.....	265
How Temperature Affects the Tire	
Pressures.....	267
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset	
Procedure.....	267
Understanding the Tire Pressure Monitoring	
System.....	265
Tire Pressures.....	273
Tire Repair Kit	
See: Temporary Mobility Kit.....	260
Tires	
See: Wheels and Tires.....	260
Tow Ball.....	216
Driving with a Trailer.....	217
Maintenance.....	217
Swiveling the Tow Ball Arm.....	216
Towbar Dimensions.....	278
Sedan and 5-Door.....	279
Wagon.....	279

# Index

Towing a Trailer.....	215	Using Adaptive Cruise Control.....	182
When towing a trailer.....	215	Automatic Switch Off.....	186
Towing Points.....	217	Blocked Sensor.....	187
Front Towing Eye.....	218	Canceling the Set Speed.....	183
Rear Towing Eye.....	218	Changing the Set Speed.....	183
Towing Eye Locations.....	218	Detection Beam Issues.....	186
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels -		Following a Vehicle.....	184
Automatic Transmission.....	219	Hilly Condition Usage.....	186
Emergency Towing.....	220	Overriding the System.....	186
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels -		Resuming the Set Speed.....	184
Manual Transmission.....	219	Setting a Speed.....	183
Towing.....	215	Setting the Gap.....	185
Traction Control.....	165	Switching the System Off.....	184
Principle of Operation.....	165	Switching the System On.....	183
Traffic Sign Recognition.....	198	Switching to Normal Cruise Control.....	188
Principle of Operation.....	198	System Not Available.....	187
Using the System.....	199	Using Cruise Control.....	181
Trailer Sway Control.....	216	Switching Cruise Control Off.....	181
Transmission.....	155	Switching Cruise Control On.....	181
See: Transmission.....	155	Using MyKey With Remote Start	
		Systems.....	42
		Using Snow Chains.....	264
		Vehicles with Stability Control.....	264
		Using Stability Control.....	166
		Switching the System Off and On Using the	
		Information Display Controls.....	166
		Switching the System Off Using a	
		Switch.....	166
		Using SYNC™ With Your Media	
		Player.....	327
		Accessing Your USB Song Library.....	331
		Bluetooth Devices and System	
		Settings.....	333
		Connecting Your Media Player to the USB	
		Port.....	327
		Media Menu Features.....	331
		Media Voice Commands.....	328
		What's Playing?.....	328

## U

Under Hood Overview - 1.0L	
EcoBoost™.....	239
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L	
Duratorq-TDCi Diesel/1.6L	
Diesel.....	243
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L	
EcoBoost™.....	240
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L	
Diesel.....	244
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L	
EcoBoost™.....	241
Under Hood Overview - 2.5L.....	242
Unique Driving Characteristics.....	146
USB Port.....	304

# Index

---

Using SYNC™ With Your Phone.....	309
Accessing Features Through the Cell Phone	
Menu.....	314
Accessing Your Cell Phone Settings.....	317
Bluetooth Devices.....	318
Cell Phone Options During an Active	
Call.....	313
Cell Phone Voice Commands.....	310
Making a Call.....	312
Pairing a Cell Phone For the First	
Time.....	309
Pairing Subsequent Cell Phones.....	310
Receiving a Call.....	313
Text Messaging.....	315
Using Traction Control.....	165
Switching the System Off and On Using the	
Button.....	165
Switching the System Off and On Using the	
Information Display Controls.....	165
Using Voice Recognition.....	306
Helpful Hints.....	306
Initiating a Voice Session.....	307
System Interaction and Feedback.....	307
Using Winter Tires.....	264

## V

Vehicle Care.....	257
Vehicle Dimensions.....	277
4-Door.....	277
5-Door.....	277
Wagon.....	278
Vehicle Identification Number.....	281
Vehicle Identification Plate.....	280
Vehicle Interior Overview.....	13
Ventilation	
See: Climate Control.....	111
Vents	
See: Air Vents.....	111
VIN	
See: Vehicle Identification Number.....	281
Voice Control.....	58

# Index

## W

Warning Lamps and Indicators.....	81
Adaptive Cruise Control Lamp.....	81
Anti-Lock Braking System Warning Lamp.....	81
Automatic High Beam Lamp.....	81
Auto Start-stop Lamp.....	81
Battery Warning Lamp.....	81
Blind Spot Monitor Indicator.....	81
Brake System Warning Lamp.....	81
Cruise Control Indicator.....	82
Decklid Ajar Indicator.....	82
Direction Indicator.....	82
Door Ajar Indicator.....	82
Electric Park Brake Warning Lamp.....	82
Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Lamp.....	82
Engine Oil Warning Lamp.....	82
Fasten Safety Belt Warning Lamp.....	82
Front Airbag Warning Lamp.....	82
Front Fog Lamps Indicator.....	82
Frost Warning Lamp.....	83
Fuel Operated Heater Enabled Indicator.....	83
Fuel Operated Heater Operating Indicator.....	83
Glow Plug Indicator.....	83
Heads Up Display.....	83
High Beam Indicator.....	83
Hood Ajar Warning Lamp.....	83
Lane Keeping Aid Indicator.....	83
Liftgate Ajar Warning Lamp.....	83
Low Beam Malfunction Warning Lamp.....	83
Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp.....	83
Low Tire Pressure Warning Lamp.....	83
Parking Lamps Indicator.....	84
Powertrain Fault.....	84
Rear Fog Lamps Indicator.....	84
Service Engine Soon.....	84
Shift Indicator.....	84
Speed Limiter.....	84
Stability Control Off Indicator.....	85
Stability Control Warning Lamp.....	85
Traffic Sign Recognition Road Condition Indicator.....	85
Traffic Sign Recognition Speed Limit Indicator.....	85
Water-In-Fuel Warning Lamp.....	85
Warning Triangle.....	224
Washer Fluid Check.....	248
Washers See: Cleaning the Exterior.....	257
See: Wipers and Washers.....	60
Wheel Nuts See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	268
Wheels and Tires.....	260
General Information.....	260
Windows and Mirrors.....	72
Windshield Washers.....	61
Windshield Wipers.....	60
Intermittent Wipe.....	60
Speed Dependent Wipers.....	60
Winter Tires See: Using Winter Tires.....	264
Wipers and Washers.....	60



